



User Manual

10.7.16

Table of Contents

Part I OVERVIEW 10

1	Introduction	10
2	GST	10
3	License Agreement.....	10
4	Support.....	12
5	Login.....	13

Part II File 13

1	Backup.....	14
2	Data	16
	Recovery	16
	Cross Reference	17
	Cross Reference RmType	17
	Clear Credit Card Data	17
3	Utility.....	18
	Printer Set Up	18
	Set up Window Default Printer.....	19
	Runtime Set Up Tool	19
4	Change User Password.....	20
	PCI DSS Compliance	20
5	Exit	21

Part III Front Office 21

1	Guest Information.....	22
	Postcode Lookup	25
	Credit Card Validation	26
	Guest Reservation	27
	Guest Reservation - Quick	30
	Guest Reservation / Releasing Allotment	32
	Sole Use (Interconnecting Rooms) Reservation	33
	Guest Folios	34
	Guest Extras	35
	Advance Deposits	36
	Guest Deposit Plan	37
	Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Guest Special Request	37
	Attach/Remove Group Booking	38
	Guest Confirmation Letter	39
	Guest SMS	40
	Guest Registration Slip	42
	Changing & Deleting a Guest Reservation	43
	Search for Existing Guest Details	44
	Walk In's	45
	Day Bookings	45
	Guest Check In	46
	Guest Check Out	48
	Reinstate Checked In or Out Reservation	50
	Guest Account Invoice	51
	Guest Charges & Payments	52

Multiple Guests in Room Paying Separately.....	53
Transfer transaction folio to folio.....	55
Transfer Transaction to other Account.....	55
Transfer to Debtors	56
Transfer to Debtors Long Term Guest.....	57
Transfer to Debtors Reversal.....	58
Transfer to Debtors - Agent Commissions	59
Voiding or Reversing Guest Charges.....	60
Guest Mail & Notes	61
Merge Guest Accounts	63
Backpacker Bookings	64
2 Quick Availability.....	67
Events	68
Stop Sell	69
Peak Period	69
MLOS	70
Compulsory Days	70
Room Alloc	70
Allotment	70
Add Allotment.....	71
Release Allotment.....	74
Company Allotment.....	75
3 Room Allocation.....	76
Notes for a Day	78
Walk In's	78
Multiple Bookings	79
Room Maintenance	79
4 Housekeeping.....	80
Room Maintenance Report	82
Update Rooms	82
5 Registration Slips/Allocate Rooms.....	83
Pre Allocate Rooms	84
Arrival List	84
6 Group Information.....	85
Add Group Account	86
Add Group Reservation	89
Quick Allocation	92
Group Rooming List	93
Print Room List.....	94
Group Master Folios & Extras	95
Group Deposit/Comments	96
Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Special Requests	96
Running Sheet	97
Group Confirmation, Proforma Invoice & Registration	98
Group Check In	99
Group Charges & Payments	99
Group Invoice	101
Group Checkout	102
Remove a Guest from a Group Booking	103
Delete a Guest from a Group Booking	104
Group Booking Changes	104
Extending a Group Reservation.....	105
Group Booking Cancellation	105
7 Unallocated Booking.....	106
8 Cash Account.....	107
Clearing Cash Accounts	108

9	House Accounts.....	109
	Gift Vouchers	109
Part IV Back Office		111
1	Night Audit.....	111
2	Daily Update	113
3	Ledger.....	114
Part V Reports		114
1	Bank Report.....	114
2	Reconciliation Report.....	116
3	Reservation Report.....	117
	Reservation History	118
4	Transaction List.....	119
	Export	122
	Open Exported file in Excel.....	122
5	Summary.....	124
	Daily Information	124
	Daily Information Sheet.....	125
	Guest Special Requests.....	125
	Car Rego's.....	126
	Room Status.....	126
	Daily Summary	127
	Daily Arrivals & Departures.....	127
	Daily Statistics.....	128
	Weekly Summary	128
	In House Summary	129
	Occupancy Summary	129
6	Statistics.....	132
	Occupancy Statistics	132
	Company Statistics	133
	Marketing Statistics	135
	Govt Stats	136
7	Guest.....	137
	Guest Accounts	137
	Advance Deposits	142
	Guest Notes	143
	Mailing List	144
	Restaurant	146
	Travel Agent Commission	147
	Frequent Guests	148
8	Room.....	148
	Room Sales	149
	Average Length of Stay.....	150
	Room Revenue	150
	Room Yield Summary	151
	Rate Sales	152
9	Charts.....	153
	Revenue	153
	Occupancy	154
10	Internet Bookings.....	155
	Received	155

Warning	155
11 C/Card Access log	155

Part VI Debtors 156

1 Debtor Information.....	156
Add New	157
Payments	159
Post Charges	160
Reconcile Debtor Account Payments	161
Edit or Change a Debtor	162
Deleting a Debtor	162
Debtor Notes	163
OI Recovery	163
Transaction List from Debtor Account	164
Debtor History	164
2 Transaction List.....	165
Debtor Transaction Display	165
Debtor History Display	166
3 Commission Report.....	168
4 File List.....	169
5 Trial Balance	170
6 Sales Report.....	171
7 Statement Print.....	173
8 Month End.....	174
Month End Reconciliation Procedures	175
9 Travel Agent Information.....	176

Part VII Set Up 178

1 Package/Rate.....	178
Update In House	179
Seasons	179
Add/Edit Rates	180
Special Rates	181
Package Rate Maintenance	181
Repetitive Charge Maintenance	183
Update Exchange Rate	183
2 Room.....	184
Room Type Setup	184
Bed Configuration Codes	186
Room Facilities	186
Print	187
Call Limit	188
Add New Room	188
Sole Use Set Up	189
Change Room Details	190
Room On Maintenance	191
Deleting a Room	191
3 Conf Letter/SMS/Voucher.....	192
Confirmation Letter	192
SMS	193
Voucher	194
4 Pay Types/Discounts.....	195

Change Pay Types	195
Credit Card Surcharge	196
Discounts	197
5 Transaction Types.....	197
Department Maintenance	198
Transaction Types Maintenance	199
Editing Transaction Types	201
Deleting Transaction Types	201
Long Term Accommodation Transaction type	202
6 System Configuration.....	203
Reservation	204
Conf Letter	205
Daily Update	205
Other/Security	207
Modules	208
Vouchers	209
Reg Slip	209
Invoice	210
Housekeeping	211
Backpacker	212
Printing	212
Tour Booking	213
Account	213
Debtors	214
Tax/Currency	215
Email Set Up	216
System Counters	216
Name Set Up	216
System Set Up	217
7 Marketing Codes.....	217
Source Code Maintenance	218
Area Code Maintenance	219
Segment Code Maintenance	219
8 User Maintenance	220
9 Guest Special Request.....	223
10 Card Locks.....	223
Gate Cards	223
Kaba Locks	224

Part VIII Communication 225

1 PABX.....	225
Phone Report	225
Set Call Limit	226
PABX Setup	227
Change PABX Type.....	227
PABX Translation Table Setup.....	229
PABX Phone Cost Table.....	229
PABX Port Set UP.....	230
2 Internet (Data).....	231
3 MovieLink.....	231
4 Global Gossip.....	231
5 SMS Setup.....	231

Part IX User Mail 232

1	Address Book.....	232
	Add Address Book Entry	232
	Delete Address Book Entry	233
	Search For An Address Book Entry	234
2	User Mail.....	235
	Add User Mail	235
	Read User Mail	236
	Delete User Mail	236

Part X Conference 237

1	List	237
2	Information.....	237
	Conference Account	238
	Account Details.....	239
	Conference Activities	239
	Transactions.....	240
	Itinerary	240
	Tasks	241
	Charges/Payments	241
	Conference Reservation	242
	Conference Activities	243
	Conference Extras.....	243
3	Allocation.....	244
4	Setup.....	245
	Activity	246
	Location	247
	Package	248
	Conference Manager	249
5	Reports.....	251
	Itinerary	251
	Running Sheet	252
	Transaction	252
	Location Report	253

Part XI POS 254

Part XII Tours 254

Part XIII Owners 254

Part XIV External POS links 254

Part XV Help 254

1	Help Topic.....	254
2	How To.....	254
3	Remote Assistance.....	255
4	About Starfleet.....	255

Part XVI Appendix A (Suggested Night Audit Procedures) 256

1	End of Day Procedure	256
----------	-----------------------------------	------------

Night Audit	257
Run Night Audit.....	257
Daily Backup.....	257
Night Audit Selected Reports.....	257
Screen Arrivals.....	258
Screen Departures.....	258
Print Booking List.....	258
Print In-House Guest List.....	258
Print Registration Slips.....	259
2 Quick Reference Guide.....	259
Returning Guests	259
New Reservation	260
Check In	260
Check Out	260
Security (Advance) Deposits	261
Charges	261
Payments	262
Screen Color Legend	262

Part XVII Troubleshooting 263

1 OVERVIEW

1.1 Introduction

The Starfleet programs described here are the result of many years work and effort. Around 1984, the first Property Management System (PMS) and Tour Booking and Ticketing packages were written for a client in Central Australia. Now our software is in use with clients in all states of Australia, New Zealand, Papua - New Guinea, Vanuatu, Bali, Laos, Japan, South Africa, and Zambia.

In mid 2000 the decision was taken to convert our software to a fully Windows based system, and this documentation represents the current results of that decision. Most users from before that time are astonished at the ease of use and the features of the current software, compared to what they have been using.

Our software currently includes the following packages:

- Property Management System (PMS), comprising Front Office, Back Office, Reports, Accounts, Conference Manager, Tour Desk, PABX links, Channel Managers, Internet Data charging links, Owner Accounting module, POS links to third parties and a range of setup programs.
- Touch Screen based Point of Sale software with Stock Control, tightly integrated with our PMS system.
- Tour Booking and Ticketing with seat control.

This documentation covers the Property Management Software.

Starfleet Business Solutions, PO Box 6143, Hawthorn West, VIC 3122 ABN 37 617 580 733 Phone 03 9428 4333 Fax 03 8640 0446 E & O E Subject to change without notice.

1.2 GST

This version of our software has GST capabilities. GST rate and start date are user defined allowing the flexibility for possible changes in GST rate in the future. User can also designate which transaction type is to have GST applied and which is not. Currently, all revenue transaction types will have GST applicable by default.

Whenever a rate/transaction amount is entered, the system will calculate, display & store the amount of applicable GST for it. All rate/ transactions amounts displayed are GST inclusive. Throughout this manual the system uses the GST inclusive amount as the input amount, and computes the amount of GST included (if any).

1.3 License Agreement

Before installing this software package, you should read the terms and conditions of the following License Agreement. If you do not wish to comply with these terms, you must return the media and all accompanying material to Starfleet Business Solutions for a full refund of the price of purchase. For on going software support see the support section.

This legal document is an agreement between you, the end user, and Starfleet Business Solutions. Installing and/or using the software package constitute an acceptance on your part of the terms of this agreement. In this agreement, program refers to the original Starfleet Business Solutions software products and all copies thereof, whether whole or partial. For the purposes of this agreement, the program shall be considered as "running" when any portion of it is loaded into memory, whether real or virtual.

LICENSE TO USE

This license to use is granted to you as part of the purchase price of this Starfleet Business Solutions software product and is valid until such time as it is terminated by either yourself or Starfleet Business Solutions. You may terminate the agreement at any time by destroying all copies of the program and accompanying documentation belonging to yourself, or returning such to Starfleet Business Solutions.

In the event of your violating this agreement, Starfleet Business Solutions reserves the right of termination, at which time you will be required to return the program, all copies made and the accompanying documentation to Starfleet Business Solutions. You shall also be liable to Starfleet Business Solutions, in the event of a violation of this agreement, for any damages incurred as a result.

This license to use grants you the right to concurrently run this Starfleet Business Solutions software product as many times as specified in the documentation accompanying this package. You may make one backup copy for the sole purpose of protecting the program from corruption. The manual and any other documentation supplied with the program are copyright and may not be reproduced, transmitted or stored in any manner in a retrieval system, whether electrical, mechanical, optical, manual or otherwise, without the express written permission of Starfleet Business Solutions.

RESTRICTIONS

You may not attempt to disassemble, reverse engineer or de-compile the program; neither may you make any alterations. You may not place the program in a software library, hire or rent it out or grant sub-licenses, leases or any other rights to any other users. For other conditions relevant to this document please refer to our terms and conditions of sale, a copy of which will be supplied on request.

WARRANTY AND EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY

It is understood that it is your responsibility when selecting the program for purchase to ensure that it is suited to your particular requirements.

Starfleet Business Solutions will, within a period of thirty (30) days from the date of purchase, replace any media on which the program is provided which, under normal conditions of use, proves to be defective in materials or workmanship.

Starfleet Business Solutions does not guarantee error-free or uninterrupted operation of the program. Under no circumstances shall Starfleet Business Solutions be liable for any form of loss or damage of any type, whether direct or indirect, including loss of data, profits and/or savings, arising from the use of the program.

Software supplied, and not created by Starfleet Business Solutions, or where Starfleet Business Solutions rely on other suppliers and manufacturers, is only warranted to the extent of that product's End User License and/or Warranty.

Starfleet Business Solutions also reserves the right to request an on site hardware maintenance agreement be sought by you, from an approved hardware support company, should this be deemed appropriate for stable operation of computer equipment.

Starfleet Business Solutions are not liable for any on site problems such as power variations or failures thereof or equipment located in situations beyond its specifications for reliable operation, or any services provided by third parties such as telephone connections, or the quality thereof.

SOFTWARE SUPPORT

Support is available only for software products created by Starfleet Business Solutions, subject to the above conditions, and payment made in advance for the quoted sum for the appropriate software purchased by you. Support is available ONLY if you have a support agreement. On site visits and travel related expenses are excluded from this agreement and are charged at our current charge out rates.

Standard telephone support for software products created by Starfleet Business Solutions is available during business hours, 9.00am to 5.30pm EST. Extended telephone support is also available, including 24-hour support, 7 days a week.

Support agreements are quoted for periods of 12 months and begin from the agreed date. If payment for the quoted sum is not received by the due date, Starfleet Business Solutions reserves the right to charge for any support on a time and materials basis. Included in all support agreements is the supply of standard patches and standard updated programs, including documentation, if available.

Support of software products not created by Starfleet Business Solutions, hardware and on site attendance are not included. Any requests for alterations to the purchased program or support for products not created or manufactured by Starfleet Business Solutions are charged on a time and materials basis, and are not covered by the support agreement.

Starfleet Business Solutions reserves the right to request additional training for software products purchased from Starfleet Business Solutions if it is deemed your knowledge of these programs is inadequate. **Important:** Support calls cannot exceed 50% of the cost of the support agreement, and if so, any excess time will be charged at the current applicable rate for that excess.

Paid Support Agreements or part thereof, are **Non-Refundable**. Support Agreements can be transferred to a new owner/operator at no charge. The new owner will be required to sign the existing Support Agreement. Clearing of old data for new owners is subject to additional charges.

GENERAL

Some provisions of this agreement may be unlawful or void under some legal jurisdictions such as state, territory, province or country. Those portions which shall be unlawful, void or otherwise unenforceable in the legal jurisdiction in which you acquired this Starfleet Business Solutions software product shall be severed from this agreement, while not affecting the validity or enforceability of the remaining portions. It is agreed that this Agreement and all matters arising out of it or relating to it shall be construed and governed by the laws of the State of Victoria, Australia.

Starfleet Business Solutions, PO Box 6143, Hawthorn West, VIC 3122 ABN 37 617 580 733 Phone 03 9428 4333 Fax 03 8640 0446 E & O E Subject to change without notice.

1.4 Support

After the 30 day initial support period given with on site installation, an ongoing Software Support Agreement is available for software products created by Starfleet Business Solutions. User installation does not have the 30 day initial support but instead incurs training costs if requested from date of installation. This is also subject to the above conditions of the STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT, and further that payment has been made in full for the quoted sum for the appropriate software module(s) purchased by you, and also any other installation, training or related costs.

The standard telephone support agreement for a software product created by Starfleet Business Solutions is available during business hours, 9.00am to 5.30pm Australian EST. This includes telephone support, and standard software upgrades and patches when available. Extended telephone support agreements are also available, including 24-hour support, 7 days a week.

Support agreements are quoted for periods of 12 months and begin from the agreed date. If payment for the quoted sum is not received by the due date any support agreement automatically is terminated at the option of Starfleet Business Solutions. Clients not on support are liable for an extra initial charge to go back onto a support agreement. Also, Starfleet Business Solutions reserves the right to charge for any support on a time and materials basis for clients not on support or to decline to offer support. Included in all support agreements is the supply of standard patches and updated programs, including documentation, if available.

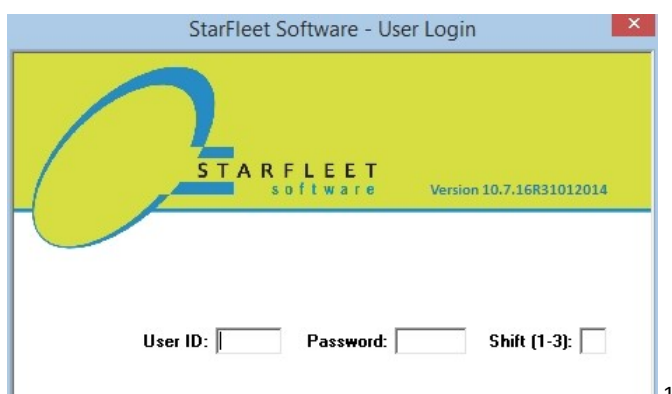
Support of software or hardware products not created by Starfleet Business Solutions, hardware and on site attendance are not included. Any requests for custom alterations to the purchased program or support for products not created or manufactured by Starfleet Business Solutions are charged on a time and materials basis, and are not covered by the support agreement, and are done on a best effort basis.

Starfleet Business Solutions reserves the right to request additional training for software products purchased from Starfleet Business Solutions if it is deemed your knowledge of these programs is inadequate. Starfleet Business Solutions also reserves the right to request an on site hardware maintenance agreement be sought by you, from an approved hardware support company, to ensure that the hardware does not compromise the reliability of the whole system to function efficiently.

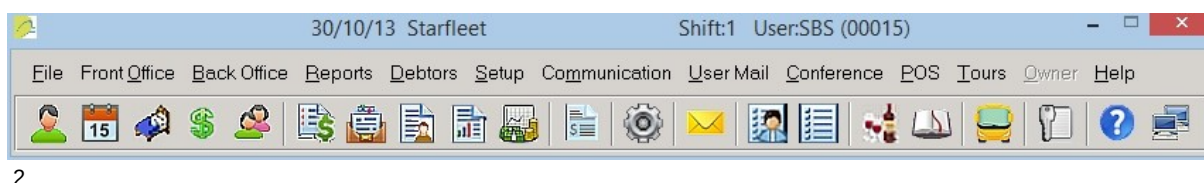
1.5 Login

Double click on the Starfleet icon from the desktop to open the log in screen. Enter your User ID and Password, then <tab> once to get to the Shift field. Then enter the number 1 for the morning shift, the number 2 for the afternoon shift, or 3 for the night shift. Smaller properties often do not need to have different shifts, and in this case, Shift 1 can always be entered.

Also see the [Transaction List](#)^[119] section for further information about shifts, User ID and reconciliation of each shift.



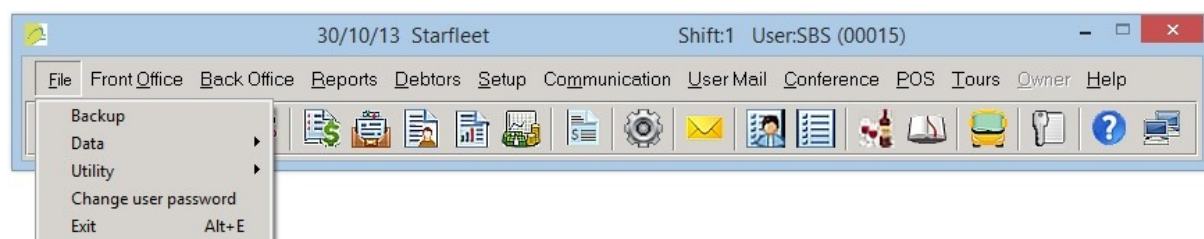
After you login, the following menu appears.



Select the appropriate menu option with a single click on the mouse to the one you want. You can mouse over the icons to see what each of them does.

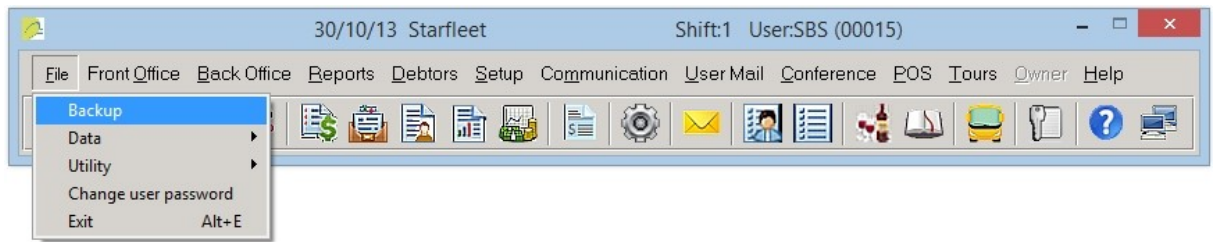
The most commonly used screen will most likely be the Room Allocation screen. This displays the calendar of bookings in a spreadsheet style format. Refer to [Room Allocation](#)^[76] for detailed information.

2 File



The file menu has the above sub menus.

2.1 Backup



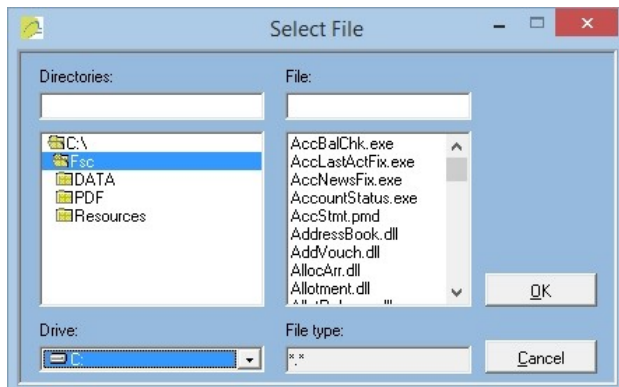
4

Follow the steps shown in the diagrams below to do a backup.



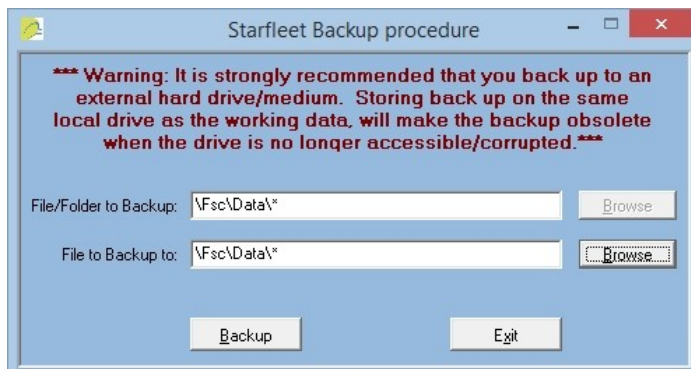
5

Enter the file or folder to backup. Alternatively click on the browse button and the window below will be displayed.



6

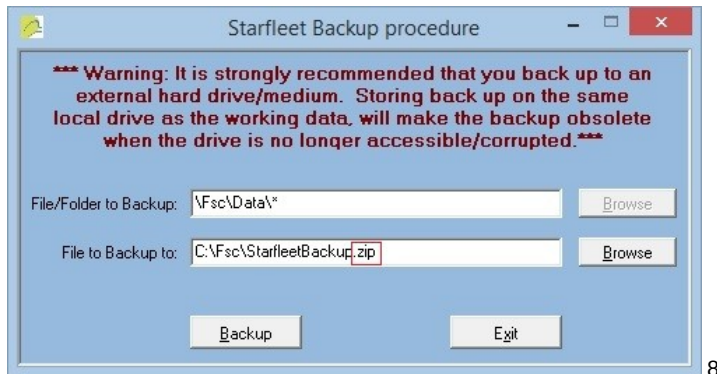
Double click on the DATA folder as shown in the diagram above. Make sure the right drive has been selected. Then click on the OK button. The window below will be displayed.



7

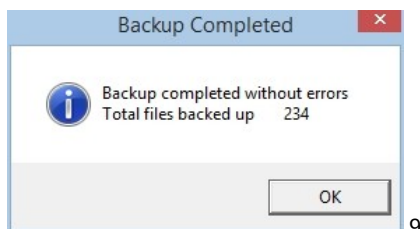
Enter the file to backup to. Browse to select the file path if the external HDD, USB memory stick or re-writable CD has already been configured. If not configured setup first. We recommend backing up to an external HDD, USB memory stick or re-writable CD drive for a external backup. It is strongly recommended that you use more than one device to back up to in case of hardware failure.

Then type in DATA.zip or the date eg 290311.zip. Alternatively name the file for the day of the week.



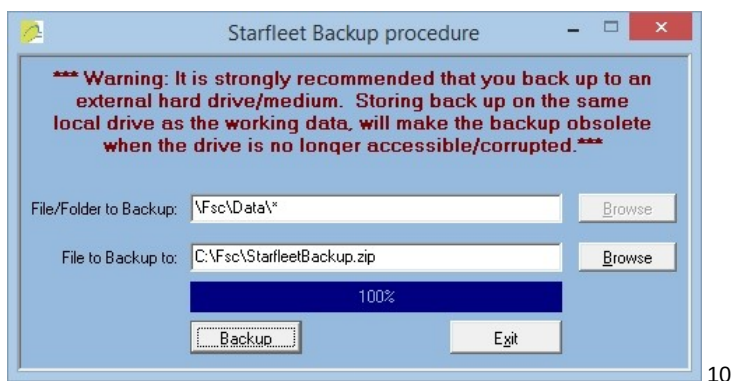
NOTE: .zip must be on the end of the File to Backup to or the backup will not work and generate an error message.

Then click on the Backup button. When backup is complete the message below will be displayed.



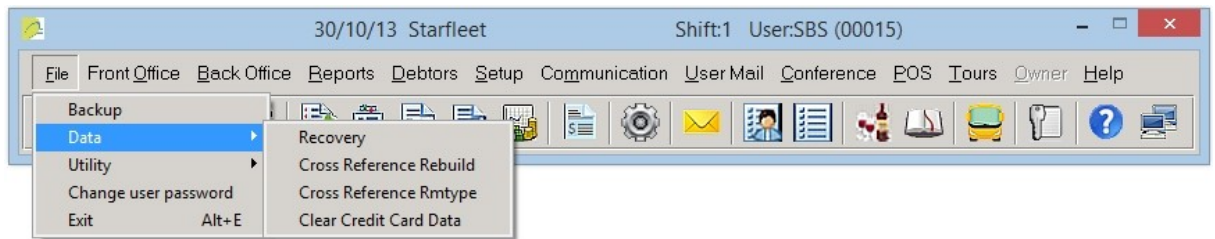
If Back Up is not completed without errors as above refer to [Troubleshooting](#) ²⁶³ -> Back Up Errors for the error explanation.

Click Ok to continue. As you can see, when backup is completed, the blue line will show 100%.



Click on Exit to exit from Backup.

2.2 Data



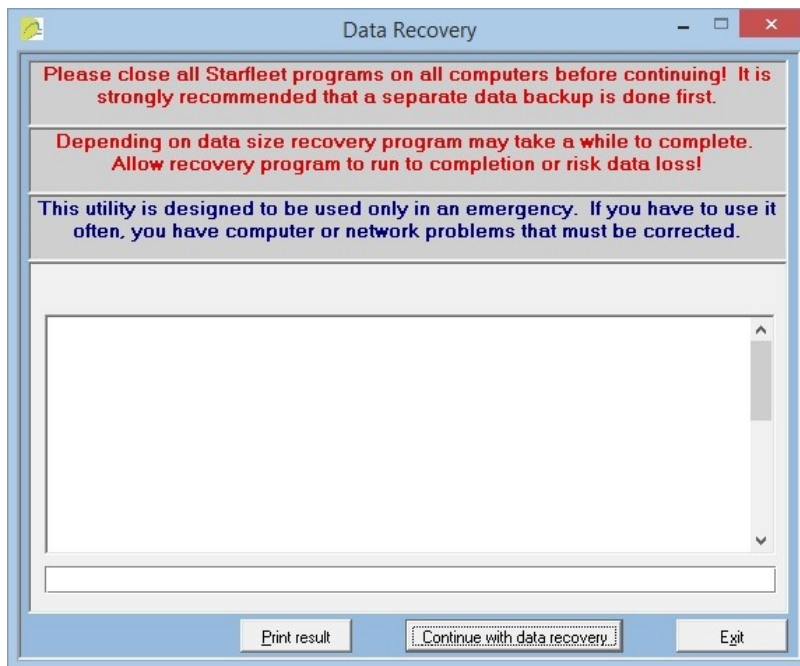
11

The data menu has four sub menus. For more information about them refer to the following topics.

2.2.1 Recovery

To access this feature, click on the **File -> Data -> Recovery**. The window below will be displayed.

Click on Continue to run the Data Recovery. Please ensure ALL users are logged out of Starfleet before proceeding. This process must be allowed to complete, **DO NOT INTERRUPT**. Should any of the data files be shown in red with an error message contact Starfleet.

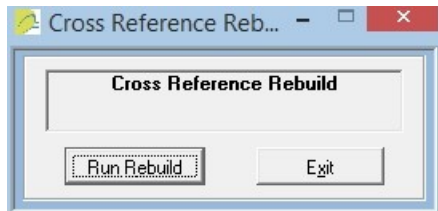


12

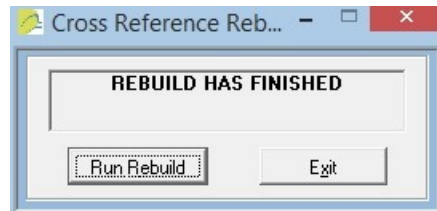
2.2.2 Cross Reference

If unable to find a guest name when there are multiple entries of the same surname in Guest Information, run Cross Reference Rebuild.

To access this menu, got to File -> Data -> Rebuild -> Cross Reference.



20



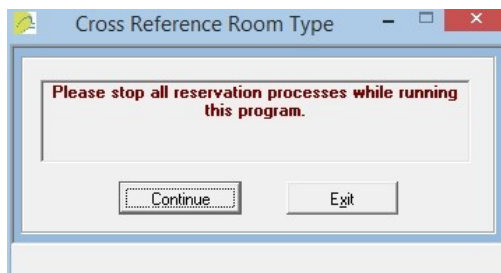
21

Select **Run Rebuild**, the message will be displayed once the rebuild is complete.

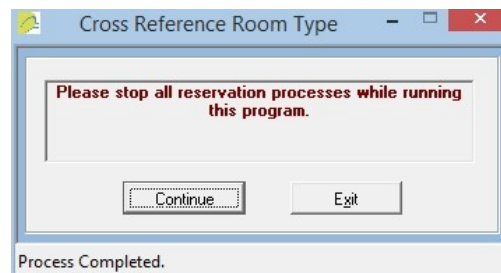
Click on the Exit button to exit program.

2.2.3 Cross Reference RmType

If changing the Room Type of a room to another type this Cross Reference must be run to ensure all reservations with the room number are updated with the new Room Type. Please ensure ALL Users stop processing reservations until Process Complete.



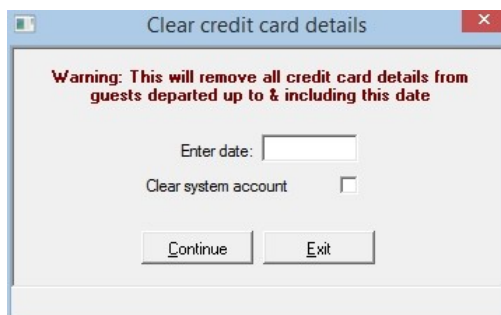
13



14

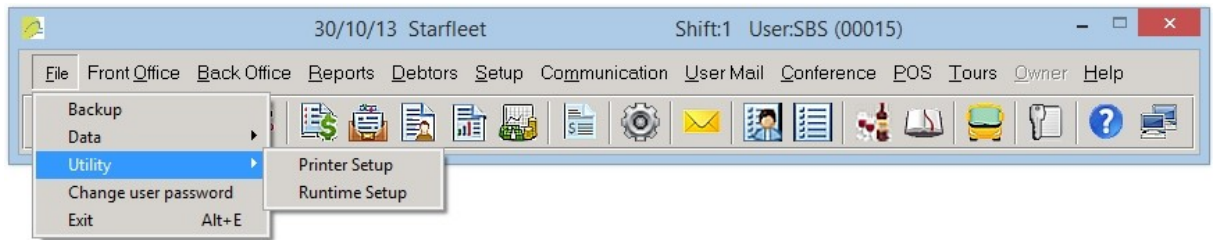
2.2.4 Clear Credit Card Data

Credit Card details previous to a certain date can be deleted. Enter the date you wish to clear these details up to and including. Select the Clear system account to delete Credit Card details from system accounts such as **POS** accounts and **RestG** accounts.



24

2.3 Utility

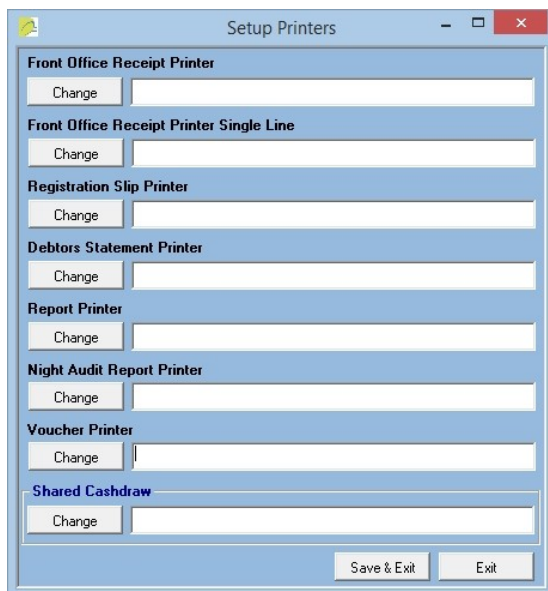


25

2.3.1 Printer Set Up

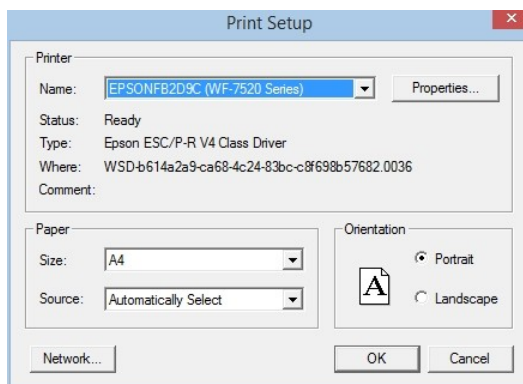
This allows you to set printers to carry out different tasks. There are up to six options that can be changed. Click on Change.

The Windows print setup / selection window below will be displayed.



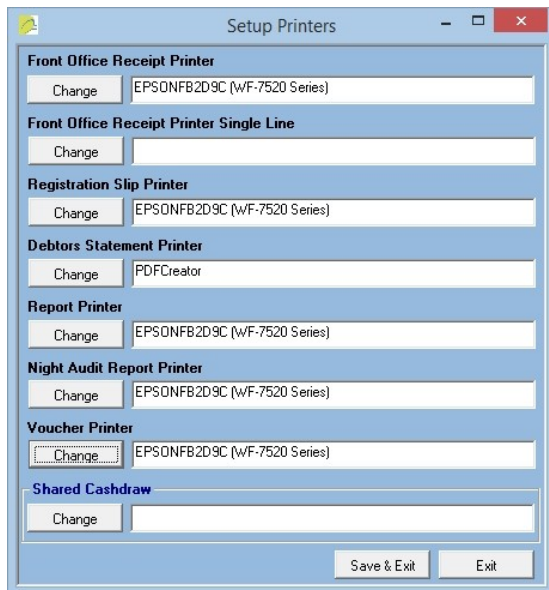
26

Select the printer name in the drop down arrow. Then click the **OK** button.



27

As an example, the printer for the Debtors Statement is different from the other printer selections. Click **Save & Exit** after making the changes. Click **Exit** to exit this window without saving changes.



28

2.3.1.1 Set up Window Default Printer

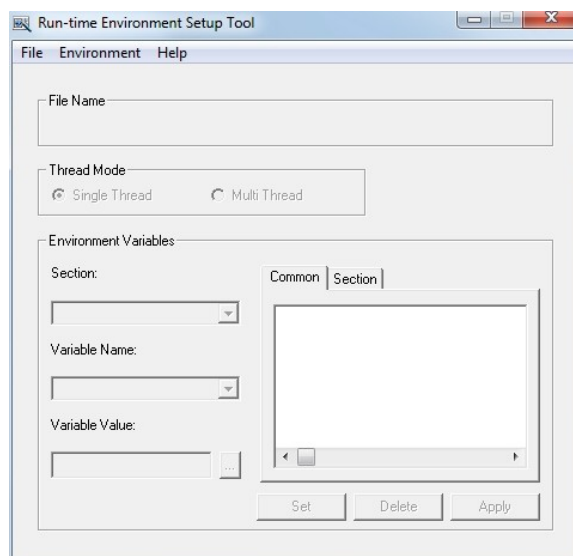
NOTE: Some of the Starfleet reports will use the windows default printer irrespective of the printer settings. In Windows:

1. Click on Start on the toolbar (at the bottom left hand side of the screen).
2. Click on Devices & Printers.
3. Then click on Printers and Faxes.
4. Then right click on the printer that you want to set as the default printer.
5. Then click on set as default printer.

Note: The above might be slightly different depending on the version of Windows you are using.

2.3.2 Runtime Set Up Tool

DO NOT ACCESS WITHOUT SUPPORT HELP.... STARFLEET WILL TALK YOU THROUGH CHANGES IF REQUIRED.



29

2.4 Change User Password



30

Refer to the section [Other/Security](#)²⁰⁷ to select to operate Starfleet as fully PCI DSS Compliant. In this case, it is recommended that passwords are changed every 90 days for full compliance. This allows the user to change their password that has previously been generated by an administrator level user. This system generated password can then be changed by the user to a password they wish to use at any time. It must be alpha-numeric and at least 7 characters in length, and contain both letters and numbers.

2.4.1 PCI DSS Compliance

If you store, process, or transmit credit card payments from your customers, you, as a merchant, are responsible for the security of that information. To ensure consumers payment card data is protected and secure the **Payment Card Industry Security Standards Council** maintains the PCI Data Security Standards (This is known as **PCI DSS**). It should be noted that failure to comply with the standards could lead to a security breach resulting in significant fines as well as suspension of facilities. See www.pcisecuritystandards.org for more information on this subject.

PCI DSS password requirements:

This option causes Starfleet to enforce a higher level of security for PCI DSS requirements.

All user login's are recorded in the active users list.

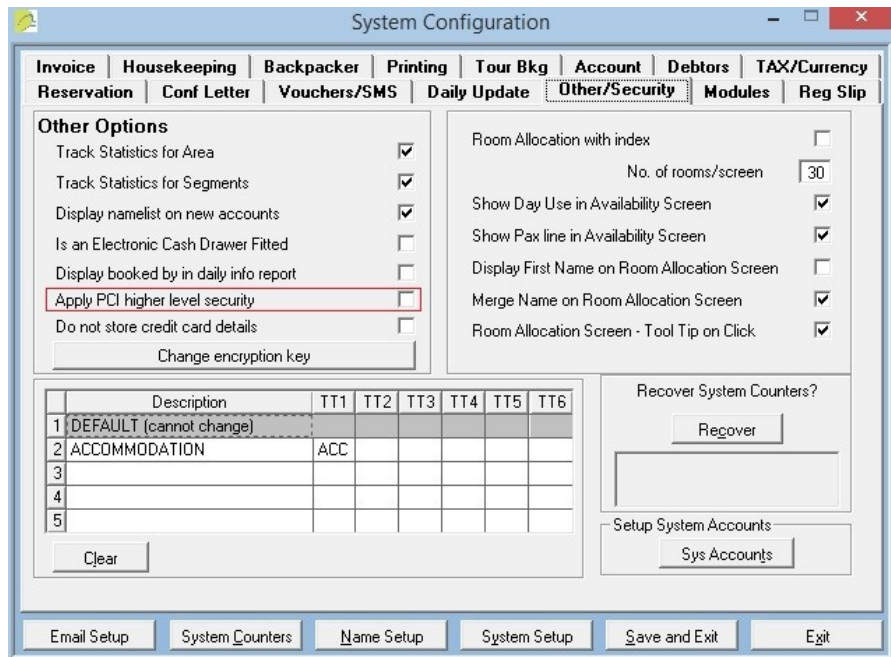
Passwords must be at least 7 characters in length and contain both letters and numbers.

Passwords must be changed every 90 days and the new password must be different from the previous 4 passwords.

The user is rejected after 6 consecutive failed login attempts.

Disabled users can be reactivated by an Admin level user.

To use Starfleet Software as PCI DSS compliant tick the option Apply PCI higher level security. Refer to the screen for [Other/Security](#)²⁰⁷

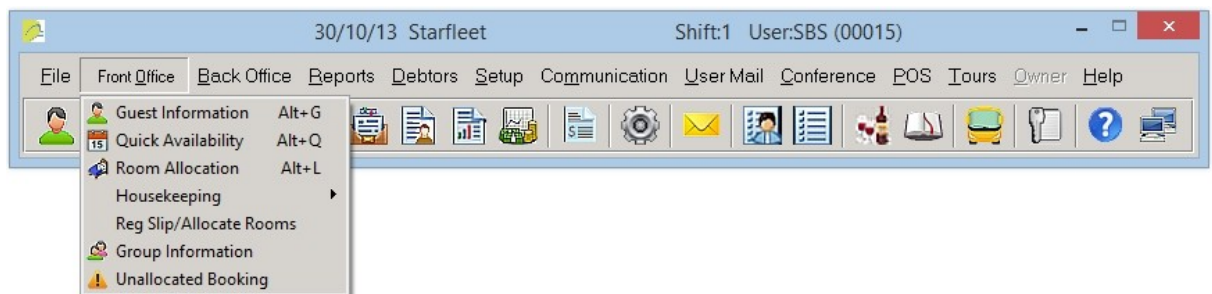


31

2.5 Exit

This menu exits the Starfleet program.

3 Front Office



32

The Front Office has the following sub menus:

- Guest Information
- Quick Availability
- Room Allocation
- Housekeeping
- Reg Slip/Allocate Rooms
- Group Information
- Unallocated Booking

3.1 Guest Information

33

34

The Guest Information screen is where all guest information is captured. On this screen, there are options to allow you to add, change, delete or duplicate the guest details. Notes, mail and credit card details can also be added. There are other guest information screens (accessed by the buttons across the bottom) where you can make reservations, view guest transactions, arrive, depart guests and post charges and payments.

Next to the suburb and postcode fields are the postcode lookup icons. Depending on the country selected in the country field the suburb, state and postcode can be selected from the postcode lookup screen. For more information click on this [postcode lookup](#) link, or click on the postcode icon next to the suburb or postcode fields.

Guest Information

The system generates the Guest Account numbers automatically. Multiple reservations can be made for an existing Guest Account. This will create a new reservation number for each new reservation and attach it to the existing account number. When a returning guest makes a new reservation type their surname in the Surname field. A list of names will drop down. Click on the name you are searching for. This eliminates duplicating guest details and creating multiple guest accounts for regular guest bookings. Select Book Room to enter a new reservation on the guest account.

Room

Use the arrow buttons to go forward or back to display the Guest Information for current In House guests by room number.

Balance

Any outstanding balance on this account is displayed automatically for an existing reservation. This balance will not be transferred to a new reservation.

Surname, Title & First Name

Displays the guest name. Enter in if new guest booking.

Last activity

The date this account was last altered is displayed automatically for an existing account, and as this a new account nothing will be displayed.

User

The system stores the last person to modify and to create a guest's account. Therefore, m12c12 was created by user number 12, and last modified by user number 12.

A/R

Enter the Accounts Receivable (Debtors) code. As you key in the alphabetical A/R code, a list of Debtors will be displayed for you to select from. When a valid Debtor account code is selected, the system will ask if you would like the address in the Group account updated to correspond with the address in the Debtor account. Select **Yes** to update the address or **No** to fill in the details manually.

If a Debtor account is entered, any comments associated with the Debtor account will be displayed at the bottom of the screen. Comments on Debtor accounts are a useful way of storing and displaying information such as rates to be charged, or any other special notes.

Company name

Enter the Guest's Company Name if applicable. Otherwise leave blank and press **<tab>** to move to the next prompt. It is recommended that a company name is entered, where applicable, for statistical reporting and company searches. There is also the option on Room Allocation screen to display reservations by Name or Company. For a casual booking this field can also be used to enter the Guest ID number such as passport number or YHA number to enable searches by this number.

Address 1

Enter the Guest or Company address line1.

Address 2

Enter the Guest or Company address line2.

Suburb, State\Region, Postcode

Enter the Guest suburb, State and Postcode, or double click on the icon next to the suburb or postcode fields to display the postcode lookup window. Depending on the country selected in the country field the suburb, state and postcode can be selected from the postcode lookup screen. For more information click on this [postcode lookup](#)^[25] link.

Pay method

Press **<tab>** for 'Cash' , or select the down arrow key to enter an alternate payment type.

Commission

Click on the down arrow to select from a list of commission % for the amount you wish to apply to the account. If the reservation is linked to a Debtor account then the commission applied on the Debtor Information will apply to the reservation and no further entry is required. There are two options where the commission will show. One is on the guest account, the other is if the balance is transferred to a Debtor account. The setup in **System Configuration -> Debtors** will determine where the commission is displayed. Refer to [Debtors](#)^[214].

If the commission is to be applied on the guest account the 'DAILY UPDATE' will post an accommodation charge and then post a commission depending on the commission associated with the code entered in the account. E.g. if the account has a commission of 10.00% the transactions posted on the guest account by the Daily Update will be:

DATE	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT	BALANCE
28/01/10	3 ACCOMMODATION	35.00	135.00
28/01/10	O COMMISSION	3.50	121.50

When a Commission is applied on an account where the balance is to be transferred to a Debtor account then the Commission amount is setup in the Debtor Information, refer to **Debtors -> Debtor Information** -> [Add New](#)^[157]. Refer to **Setup -> Pay Types/Discounts -> Discounts**^[197] to add new % amount.

Contact

Enter a contact name or a card number, if this client is a discount card holder (some properties use this as a means of indication that some of their guest's have a privilege card). This field can also be used for comments or any other useful information, as it is displayed when performing a name search.

Phone

Enter a contact telephone number. Up to three phone numbers can be entered.

Mobile

Enter mobile / cell number to send SMS confirmation.

OK to receive SMS

Tick this check box if the guest wishes to receive a confirmation by SMS message.

Fax

Enter a contact fax number.

FF No

This has been used for a Privilege Card number.

Email

Enter an email address.

Credit Card

Click on the Credit Card button to enter the guest's credit card number. This field is only applicable if you entered a credit card, (for example VISA) as the payment method. When there are details saved there is an orange tick to show there are details here.

Car

Enter up to three guest car registration numbers.

Comments

Enter any comments you would like displayed on this account other than those to be entered when making a reservation. Remember comments entered here will be displayed whenever future reservations are made using this account. (eg: prefers Courtyard Room, Lights on prior to arrival, etc).

Status

This field is used to state whether this account is a Normal, Bad, Exclude and VIP. If a B-Bad Account, when entering the guest name in a booking then a warning will alert you that they are a Bad account. You can then decide if you wish to continue with the reservation or refuse the booking. E-Exclude Account, then do not send this guest any mail outs. These status's, including VIP can be selected or omitted when using the Guest Mailing List, see [Mailing List](#)^[144].

News

If setup, select the Newspaper your guest has requested. See [Daily Update](#)^[205]

Statistics:**Stays**

Number of times the guest has stayed at the property.

Nights

Total number of nights guest has stayed at the property.

Days use

Number of times the guest has used the property for day use.

Cancellation

Number of times the guest has made a booking then canceled.

No show

Number of times the guest has made a booking and then not showed up.

Last rate

Last reservation rate applied to the guest.

Total spend

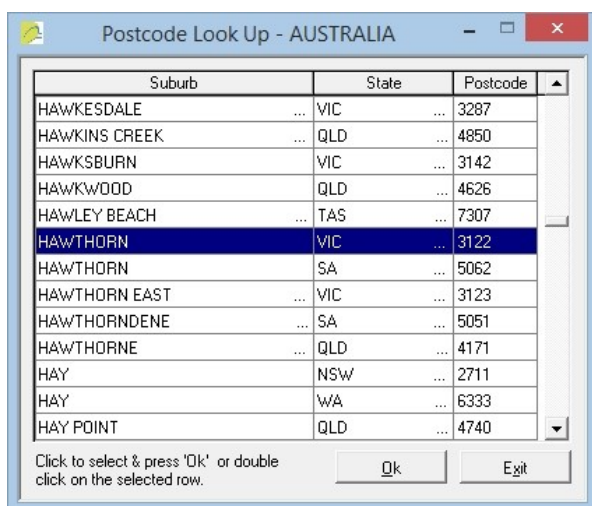
Total revenue spent by the guest for all reservations.

Room revenue

Total accommodation revenue spent by the guest for all reservations.

3.1.1 Postcode Lookup

The postcode lookup window depends on the country. There are three different countries: Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. This window below displays the Australian postcodes. If the country selected is South Africa, then the South African postcodes will be displayed.



35

Type in the suburb or select the suburb and click the ok button. The suburb, state and postcode will be entered in the form as displayed following.

Address 1: 29 GREENSWAY DRIVE	Contact:	Credit Card ☐
Address 2:	Phone(s): 9988 5623	
Country: AUSTRALIA		Car(s): UTY 589
Suburb: HAWTHORN	Fax:	
State/Region: VIC	FF No:	
Postcode: 3122	E-mail: helen@email.com	

36

3.1.2 Credit Card Validation

To validate a Guest's credit card number click on the Credit Card button. There is the option to store two Credit Card details, Primary and Secondary. The guest name will be default, this can be edited to your selection of name.

Guest Information

Account : 0000564   Room:     **Balance:**

Surname: HARRISON Title: MS First Name: HELEN   Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: Pay Method: VISA/MC  User: m15c15

Company: Commission: 0.00% 

Address 1: 29 GREENSWAY DRIVE Contact:

Address 2: Phone(s): 9988 5623  

This will open the following window. Enter the credit card details and select the card type ie. VISA and then click on **Check No.**

If the card number is invalid then a warning will be displayed. If the card number is a valid number then the last window will be displayed.

Credit Card Details

☒ Primary ☐ Secondary

Use Card Reader:

Card No:

Card Type: ▼

Expiry Date: /

Name On Card:



*****Please note that this Validation only validates the card number NOT the Expiry date*****

3.1.3 Guest Reservation

The new Guest account is complete when all details have been entered. Before leaving this screen, to create a reservation or reservations attached to this Guest Account, proceed as below.

To make a new reservation, click on the **Book Room** button on the completed Guest Information screen. This brings up a blank reservation screen. If there are multiple guests in the room who will each be responsible for the account refer to [Multiple Guests in Room Paying Separately](#)^[53] on how to set up the reservation.

You will notice across the top of the screen that there are five tabs. In this section only the Reservation tab is covered. Refer to [Guest Folios](#)^[34], [Guest Extras](#)^[35], [Guest Deposit Plan](#)^[37], [Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Guest Special Request](#)^[37] for further information.

The following screen layout displays a completed guest reservation.

HINT: using the <tab> button on your keyboard will take you to the next required field to enter information. If a required field is not completed you will be prompted before saving the reservation.

41

Reservation

The system generates the reservation number automatically.

Arrival

Enter the arrival date in 'DDMMYY' format. You may also double click on the field where you would enter the date and a calendar will pop up and you can select the date by using the calendar.

When entering the number of nights, departure dates and room type, the room availability screen will appear so you can see which rooms are available for the dates requested. Any days that have been marked as 'Event', 'Stop sell' or 'Peak period' will show an 'E', 'S' or 'P' respectively above the day and date line.

Nights

At this prompt you can enter the number of nights a Guest is staying and the departure date will be calculated automatically and entered into the next field. You can also <tab> past this field and enter the departure date. If number is not entered then the arrival and departure dates will remain the same. This will make the reservation a '**Day Booking**'. The system will recognize this and a prompt will appear asking 'Is this a Day Booking?'. Select Yes or No.

NOTE: A Day Booking when arrived and departed will disappear from the Room Allocation screen. This is because the reservation has not been in house overnight. Refer to [Day Bookings](#) ^[45]

Depart

Enter the departure date in '**DDMMYY**' format. You can double click on the field where you would enter the date and a calendar will pop up and you can select the date by using the calendar, then click on accept or exit. If the period of stay includes a Stop sell and/or Peak period, the system will prompt you to confirm the dates entered.

Room type

Enter room type from the list of room types displayed including conference room types.

Adults

Enter the number of adults. If the number exceeds the maximum allowed number, a prompt message is given.

Children

Enter the number of children (if any). Press <enter> for the default value of zero.

Infants

Enter the number of infants (if any). Number of infants will need to be manually selected to enter.

Package

If a package code is entered the system will automatically calculate the rate based on the number of adults, children and infant entered in the reservation.

If the package you select is a non-repetitive package. (ie: different transactions are posted automatically on the days you specified when the package was created). The system will check to ensure the total number of room nights on the reservation, is equal to the number of room nights specified in the package setup.

If the number of nights entered for this reservation is out of the range of the package, you will be prompted to re-enter the departure date.

Rate

The rate entered is the GST inclusive amount. The system calculates the rate depending on room type, the number of adults, and the number of children. If rates include GST then in a property which provides predominantly long term (28 days or more) accommodation, this rate depends on the Guest's length of stay, as a long-term rate will have a different GST rate (please refer to [Tax/Currency](#) ^[215] in System Configuration). This depends on rates being entered for the current season in the [Package/Rate](#) ^[178] option on the SETUP menu. At this point you have 3 options;

1. Enter the desired room rate to over ride the rate displayed.
2. Press <enter> to accept the rate displayed.

If your property is providing predominantly long-term accommodation, please make sure you enter a correct long-term rate (which includes the reduced GST) for bookings that are 28 days or more. Refer to [Long Term Accom Transaction type](#) ^[202] to setup.

Booked by

The logged on operators initials will automatically default.

Comment

Enter any comments regarding the reservation that are applicable.

Note: The Booked by or Comment line can be displayed on the housekeeping report.

ETA

Enter the estimated Time of Arrival if known. This is a free field type either 24hr clock or am/pm times.

ETD

Enter the estimated Time of Departure if known. This is a free field type either 24hr clock or am/pm times.

If standard check in and check out times are set in the 'System Configuration' then these times will be displayed at the ETA and ETD prompt respectively, then you can just press **<enter>** to accept them or modify them for different times. See [Reservation](#) ²⁰⁴

Room #

Use this field to allocate a room to this reservation. A list of available rooms and their attributes will be displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Do Not Move

Check the box if you want this reservation to stay in a particular room allocated. This will show up on room allocation as light blue and will disable the Change room and Swap room functions.

Unconfirmed

Check the box if you have requested a Advance Deposit and haven't received it. This will show up on room allocation as pink and allow you to easily see what bookings need to be followed up for confirmation.

Room preferences

Enter room preferences to designate whether this room is going to be a Male/Female/Neither room (M/F). This is usually used at Backpacker properties. This is an option System Configuration. See [Backpacker](#) ²¹²

Source

Select the appropriate Source for this reservation.

Area

If enabled, select the appropriate Area for this reservation.

Segment

If enabled, select the appropriate Segment for this reservation.

Reservation Maintenance

If you need to change any details in a reservation simply go to the account details and to the reservation window and double click on the reservation you are needing to change. You may change details on a reservation prior to arrival, however an Arrival date can not be changed to a date prior to the system date if the reservation has already been checked in. Or go to the guest name on the Room Allocation screen, right click on the name then select Reservation.

Pre-authorized

If you are using the Starfleet POS module, tick this option to allow the guest to charge back to their room from POS. Enter in the pre-authorized amount.

Bed Config

Refer to [Bed Configuration Codes](#) ¹⁸⁶. This will allow for a selection of bedding configuration to be selected, i.e. 1 King or 2 Singles.

Availability

Click to display the total number of room types available.

Release Allot

Refer to [Guest Reservation / Releasing Allotment](#)^[32].

Attach/Remove

Refer to [Attach/Remove Group Booking](#)^[38].

Calc Total

Use to calculate the total to be charged.

Update rates

Use to Update current In House rate when there is a Season or Rate change. See [Seasons](#)^[179] and **Package Rate** -> [Update In House](#)^[179]

Duplicate

Duplicates the reservation for a regular returning guest. Will keep the same information, no of guests, rate, Source, Area and Segment codes, as the current reservation is being duplicated, edit the arrival and departure dates.

Booking Confirmation slip

If booking slip option is enabled in system configuration, the system will ask user whether they want a booking slip printed upon saving reservation details. See [Printing](#)^[212]

For a Walk In click refer to this link [Walk In's](#)^[78]

For Multiple Bookings refer to this link [Multiple Bookings](#)^[79]

To review any changes made to a Reservation refer to [Reservation History](#)^[118]

3.1.4 Guest Reservation - Quick

A new guest reservation can be created directly on the Room Allocation screen. Right click in a blank cell on the date and the room type required. Select Book Room.



122

In this reservation screen enter all the relevant details by using the <tab> button on the keyboard. This information can be updated and edited on arrival. When entering the guest surname a drop down screen will display the surnames of previous guests. If the guest has stayed previously click on their name to select. Their account number, address and contact details will then display so they do not need to be re entered, select Save. This will keep all returning reservations on the same guest account. This option can be used for new guests where a new guest account will be created. For Walk In's click on Check In and the reservation will be saved and checked in.

Book Room

Reservation details

Travel Agent

No. Bkgs: 1 Sole Use ☐ Rm Type: 1-KING SPA Allotment Bkg ☐

Ignore Room Type/Availability ☐ Allocate next available room ☒ Starting Room #: 02 Do not move ☐

Arrival: 30/10/2013 Night(s): 1 Departure:

Adults: 1 Children: Infants:

Rate Cd: Rate: H/L Rate:

☐ First night disc. ☐ Every night disc.

Booked By: SBS Voucher:

Comment: Source:

ETA: 03.00PM ETD: 10.00AM Area:

Arr Method: Dep Method: Seg:

☐ Unconfirmed ☐ Pre-Authorized 1,000.00

Guest detail

Surname: Title: First Name: ?

A/R: Coms: Pay Method: Credit Card ☐

Company: Contact: Phone 1: Mobile: ☐ Ok to receive SMS

Address 1: Email: Car: Use acc: Create new acc ☒

Address 2: Country: Suburb: State/Region: Postcode:

Release Allot

Calc Total

Check In

Save

Cancel

122a

When a new reservation is made for a returning guest if there are any notes there will be the orange note icon highlighted.

Guest detail

Surname: TAYLOR Title: MR First Name: TOM ?

A/R: Coms: 0.00% Pay Method: CASH Credit Card ☐

Company: Contact: Phone 1: Mobile: ☒ Ok to receive SMS

Address 1: Email: Car: Use acc: 0000209 Create new acc ☐

Address 2: Country: Suburb: State/Region: Postcode:

Release Allot

Calc Total

Check In

Save

Cancel

122b

Click on the icon to display notes.

Guest Notes/Mail

Starfleet Business Solutions

P.O. Box 6143 Hawthorn West 3122

sales@starfleet-software.com.au

Ph:+61 3 9428 4333 Fax:+61 3 8640 0446

Notes

Mail

Phone Calls

Account#: 209 Name: TAYLOR MR TOM

Display by: ☒ All notes ☐ Diary Date ☐ Reservation 0

Line	Note	Diary	Date
1	Prefers room facing courtyard.	31/10/2013	31/10/2013
2	*****	31/10/2013	31/10/2013

Add

Print

Delete

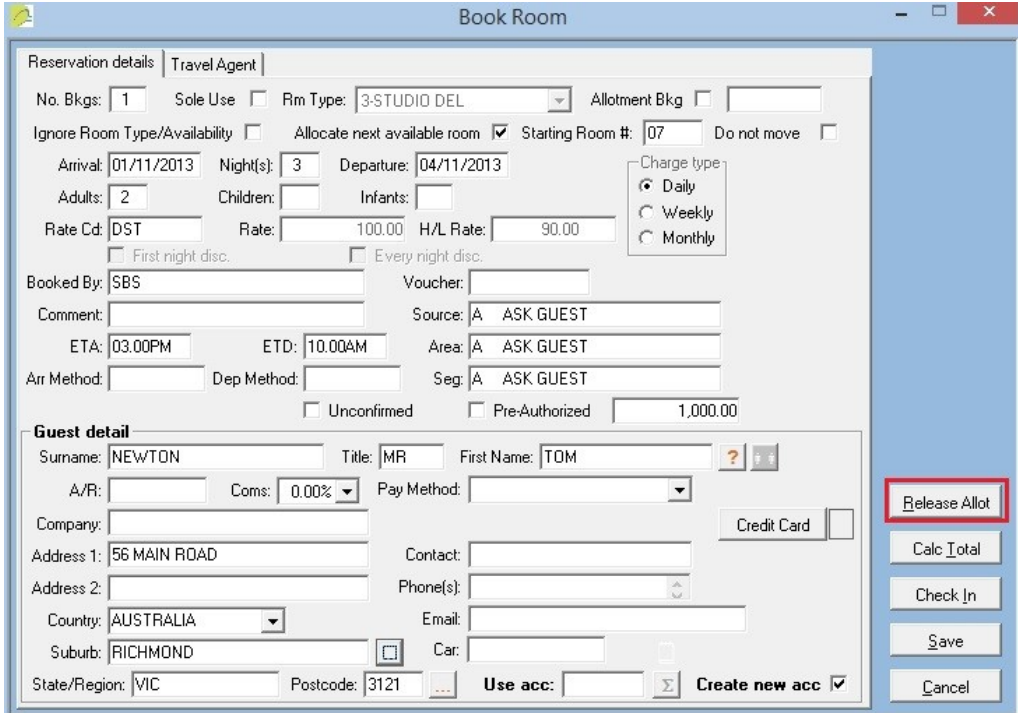
Exit

122c

3.1.5 Guest Reservation / Releasing Allotment

If entering Allotments for Company or Web Booking you may wish to put all room availability on Allotment. Therefore when there is a direct or walk in booking all the availability will be on 'Allotment'. By using the Release Allotment option when entering the booking the room can be 'released' from an Allotment. If more than one room is required to be released from Allotment, in the case of a group refer to [Allotment](#) ⁷⁰ on how to release a block of rooms.

NOTE: The following screen is when selecting Book Room on the Room Allocation screen. See previous screen for **Release Allot** button when booking room in Guest Information.

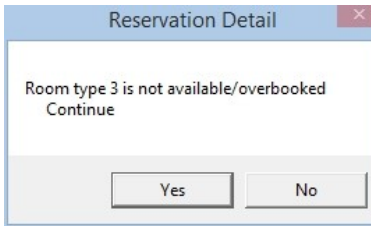


The 'Book Room' window contains the following fields and controls:

- Reservation details:**
 - No. Bkgs: 1, Sole Use: ☐, Rm Type: 3-STUDIO DEL, Allotment Bkg: ☐
 - Ignore Room Type/Availability: ☐, Allocate next available room: ☒, Starting Room #: 07, Do not move: ☐
 - Arrival: 01/11/2013, Night(s): 3, Departure: 04/11/2013
 - Adults: 2, Children: ☐, Infants: ☐
 - Rate Cd: DST, Rate: 100.00, H/L Rate: 90.00
 - Charge type: ☒ Daily, ☐ Weekly, ☐ Monthly
 - First night disc.: ☐, Every night disc.: ☐
 - Booked By: SBS, Voucher:
 - Comment: , Source: A ASK GUEST
 - ETA: 03:00PM, ETD: 10:00AM, Area: A ASK GUEST
 - Arr Method: , Dep Method: , Seg: A ASK GUEST
 - Unconfirmed: ☐, Pre-Authorized: ☐, 1,000.00
- Guest detail:**
 - Surname: NEWTON, Title: MR, First Name: TOM
 - A/R: , Coms: 0.00%, Pay Method:
 - Company:
 - Address 1: 56 MAIN ROAD, Contact:
 - Address 2: , Phone(s):
 - Country: AUSTRALIA, Email:
 - Suburb: RICHMOND, Car:
 - State/Region: VIC, Postcode: 3121, Use acc: , Create new acc: ☒
- Buttons (right side):** Release Allot (highlighted), Calc Total, Check In, Save, Cancel

41b

Enter the reservation and guest details. When **Save** is selected there will be a prompt that the Room type is not available/overbooked.



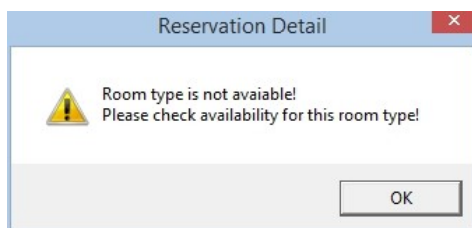
The 'Reservation Detail' dialog box contains the following text and controls:

- Room type 3 is not available/overbooked Continue
- Buttons: Yes, No

41c

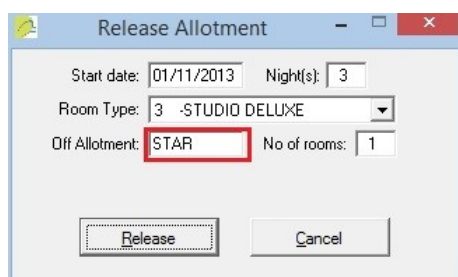
Select No to Continue and then click on the **Release Allot** button. (If selecting Yes and there is no availability the reservation will save and this will then overbook the room type).

There is an option to prevent over booking a room type, refer to the [Reservation](#) ²⁰⁴ tab in System Configuration, tick '**Do not allow over booking a room type**'. The following prompt then displays. This will force the user to release the room type before continuing.



41cc

When the next screen displays enter the arrival date, number of nights required for the reservation. The room type will display. Click in the Off Allotment box. If there is more than one Allotment there will be a list displaying for you to select which Allotment you are going to release the room from, select the number of rooms to be released. Click Release.



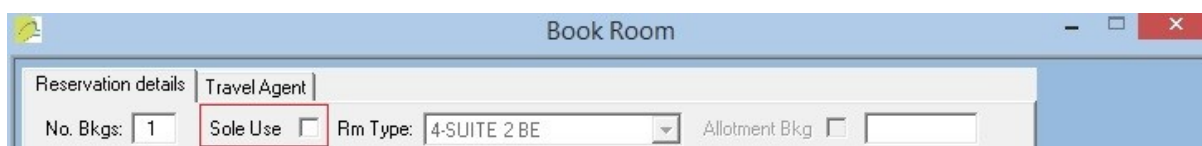
41d

The reservation is now completed and saved.

3.1.6 Sole Use (Interconnecting Rooms) Reservation

Adjoining rooms that are interconnecting can be set up to be booked as one reservation. The same reservation details, guest account and reservation number are displayed on both rooms. Details can be updated or added on either room. This eliminates the need to have two separate reservations for one booking. Manual charges and payments can be entered on either room. The same applies with printing a guest account, arriving and departing the guests. Refer to [Sole Use Set Up](#)¹⁸⁹.

When making the reservation the 'Master Room' is selected. The option 'Sole Use' must be ticked, this will attach the second room that is linked to the 'Master Room'. If this is not selected at first when creating the reservation the option can be ticked after to attach the interconnecting room. This interconnecting room must be available.



41a

3.1.7 Guest Folios

Every Guest account has five folios available. If folios are not selected, all charges go to folio 1 by default, and the other folios are not used.

Folio	Description	Trans1	Trans2	Trans3	Trans4	Trans5	Trans6	Rm%
1	DEFAULT *							
2	ACCOMMODATION	ACC						
3								
4								
5								

42

By entering a description in other folio names, these folios can be activated. For example, you could have Accommodation in folio two, and all other charges in folio three, called EXTRAS. This would apply if the Guest was able to charge the accommodation component to a company, but had to pay all other charges as extras.

By entering a transaction type in the six transaction type columns forces that transaction type to be automatically allocated to that folio. These columns are called 'Trans1' through 'Trans6'.

With the above example, accommodation could be put as a default transaction type in folio one transaction column1, and other transaction types like Telephone, Mini bar, Dinner etc could be put in the transaction types for folio three.

If a folio is removed during a Guest's stay or after their departure, any transactions posted to the deleted folios will be automatically transferred to folio one, which cannot be altered.

If a transaction code is moved or removed within folio setup, any transactions posted to the corresponding folio are automatically transferred to the new folio, and if this transaction type is not present, to the default folio.

You also have the ability to split the accommodation charges between folios. The last column on the table 'Rm%', allows you to enter a percentage of the accommodation charges to each folio. If no percentages are entered, it will default to 100% and charge to the default folio one.

3.1.8 Guest Extras

Predetermined extras can be put to a Guest's account if required. These are then charged to the Guest's account with the Nightly Audit room charges. These entries can be any valid revenue transaction. Guest Extras are can also be used in Group accounts and Conference accounts if using these modules. The entries are made in Start (the day) and Sequence (the order) format.

Update Reservation [HARRISON, MS HELEN]

Acc#: 0000564 Res#: 0000596 Booked: 30/10/2013 Changed: 30/10/2013 Status: Not Arrived

Reservation detail | Folio | Extras | Deposit plan/Comments | Housekeeping/Travel Agent |

Arr: 30/10/2013

No	Start	Seq	Tran	Qty	Total Amt	GST	Comments	Folio	Print	Sign
1	1	1	MIS	2	20.00	1.82	MISCELLANEOUS	1	Y	
2	1	2	MAS	1	65.00	5.91	MASSAGE 1 HOUR	1	Y	
3	2	1								
4										
5										
6										
7										
8										
9										
10										

Type Description

- CAN CANCELLATION FEE
- COA COFFEE/TEA
- CON CONFERENCE
- DIN DINNER
- HOR HORSE RIDING
- LUN LUNCH
- MAS MASSAGE 1 HOUR
- MEE MEETING
- MIS MISCELLANEOUS

Total: 85.00 Remove

Do not change entry that has been posted (lowlighted entries)

Attach/Remove Calc Total Update rates Duplicate Save Availability Release Allot Delete Exit

43

No

This is the line number of the extra, and is set in the system.

Start

This is the starting day of the extra, and is applied to the start day of the reservation to give the date on which that entry is charged automatically during the Night Audit.

Seq

Within the above start number, this gives the sequence of the entries on the nominated start day. If there were several entries on the one day, then the earliest would come first. For example, morning tea would be entered before lunch.

Tran

Transaction type to be charged to the Guest's account. This can be any valid transaction type.

Qty

Number of times that entry applies to. For example, for a small conference of 10 persons having morning tea, the quantity would be 10.

Amount

Total charge amount to be put to the Guest's account. Includes GST.

GST

Automatically displays amount of GST included in Guest's account. GST amount cannot be manually entered.

Comments

Transaction description shows automatically here, and can be over typed if desired.

Print

Automatically, each entry will print unless this is not required. (Default is to print).

On completion of entering extras, you can go to any of the other tabs (Reservation detail, Folio, Deposit Plan), or select the Save button to save.

3.1.9 Advance Deposits

When a deposit or full payment is required before arrival this is an **Advance Deposit**. This transaction is part of the **Advance Deposit Ledger**. In the Starfleet system there are three transactions in this Ledger, ADV - Advance Deposit, ADR - Advance Deposit Refund, ADX - Advance Cancellation Fee. The Advance Deposit will be in the ADV Ledger until the guest arrives and the first Night Audit has been run. Technically, Advance Deposits (also known as Security Deposits) are not the property's money and are held in trust until the Guest's arrival.

Once Accommodation has then been charged on the Guest Account, at Night Audit, this amount is then 'absorbed' in to Accommodation revenue from the Advance Deposit Ledger. If a reversal or cancellation is to be made before arrival then the transaction MUST be either ADR - Advance Deposit Refund or ADX - Ad Cancellation Fee. This will then 'balance out' the Advance Deposit Ledger. Do not post as Payments on Guest Accounts before arrival as the Guest Account Balances will be incorrect. To view the Advance Deposits held in Starfleet refer to in **Reports -> Guest -> [Advance Deposits](#)** ¹⁴².

When an Advance Deposit is posted to a guest account use the transaction code ADV - ADV DEPOSIT, select the payment type, enter the amount and select Apply.

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	ADV DEPOSIT	V	V	-110.00	0.00

44

If an Advance Deposit is to be part refunded with a Cancellation Fee applied use the ADR - ADV DEPOSIT REFUND transaction type. Enter the amount to refund, minus the cancellation fee amount. Enter the cancellation fee amount in the AD Cancel Fee field. This will then apply the refund and cancellation in one process.

An Advance Deposit Cancellation Fee is posted by using the ADX transaction type - AD Cancellation fee. This reverses the Advance Deposit.

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	ADV DEPOSIT	V	V	-110.00	0.00
30/10/2013	ADV DEPOSIT REFUND	V	V	100.00	0.00
30/10/2013	AD CANCELLATION FEE			10.00	0.91

45

3.1.10 Guest Deposit Plan

With some properties (usually in seasonal areas such as ski areas), a payment plan for that Guest's booking is entered, and updated whenever a payment is received. This is so that all money due is known to have been received before the Guest arrives.

With this, you would enter the date received and amount of receipt, and the cheque or voucher number. Additional comment lines are available for printing on custom booking slip comments.

Update Reservation [HARRISON, MS HELEN]

Acc#: 0000564 Res#: 0000596 Booked: 30/10/2013 Changed: 30/10/2013 Status: Not Arrived

Reservation detail | Folio | Extras | Deposit plan/Comments | Housekeeping/Travel Agent

Security Deposit Payment Plan:

No	Date	Amount	Voucher
1			
2			
3			

Booking slip additional comments:

LINE 1

LINE 2

Confirmation Dates:

Confirmation 1:

Confirmation 2:

Confirmation 3:

Attach/Remove Calc Total Update rates Duplicate Save Availability Release Allot Delete Exit

46

3.1.11 Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Guest Special Request

Housekeeping

If a special housekeeping setup is required, for say a lower rate for reduced servicing, then change this screen to reflect the major and minor cleaning requirements for this reservation. You can also select the option to say if the room is to be cleaned on the weekend. If there is no special setup then the default will apply. Refer to Setup->System Configuration->[Housekeeping](#)^[211] to set default setting.

Travel Agent

If this booking is from a travel agent, all you have to do is select the appropriate travel agent code. See Accounts->Travel Agent Information to setup the Travel Agent. Click the Agent Code: to select the Travel Agent for this reservation. Refer to [Travel Agent Information](#)^[176] in Accounts for setup information.

Guest Special Requests

If a guest requests to have wine or flowers on arrival the details can be entered here. The codes must first be setup, refer to [Guest Special Request](#)^[223] in System Configuration. A report can be printed to display the requests required, refer to Reports -> Summary Reports -> [Guest Special Requests](#)^[125].

47

Note: If the Travel Agent is not setup, finish the booking then go to **Debtors** -> [Travel Agent Information](#) [176] on the menu bar, setup the travel agent code and information then go back to the reservation and update the booking so the information is cross referenced in your records.

3.1.12 Attach/Remove Group Booking

To attach a Guest to a Group Account click on the Attach/Remove button. The following screen will display.

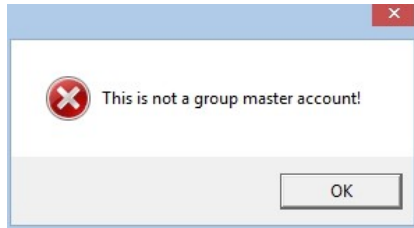
48

Enter the Group Account number you wish to attach the Guest to and the following screen will display. Click OK to proceed, the Guest's reservation is now attached to the Group selected.

49

50

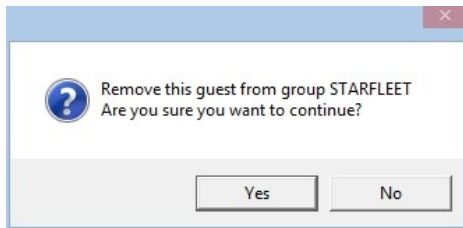
If the Group account number entered is a invalid account the following error screen will display.



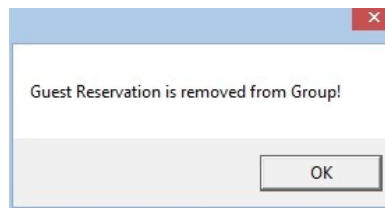
51

Remove a Guest's Reservation from a Group Booking

To Remove a Guest from a Group Account click on the Attach/Remove button. The following screen will display, click Yes and the Guest will be removed from the Group.



52

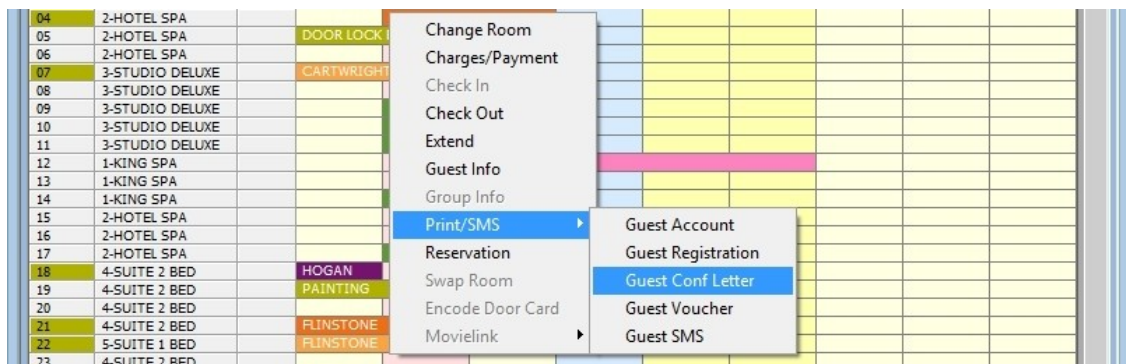


53

Click here to see [Remove a Guest from a Group Booking](#)¹⁰³ in Group Information.

3.1.13 Guest Confirmation Letter

To email or print a confirmation letter, right click on the reservation in the room allocation screen then select Print and Guest Conf Letter. If there is more than one confirmation letter setup the code will display, select the desired one.



54

The confirmation letter can then be emailed or printed. Refer to **Setup -> System Configuration -> Conf Letter**²⁰⁵ to setup. To setup a standard email message (other than the default) please also refer to the section in **Setup -> System Configuration -> Email Setup**. The email address will be picked up if entered in the Guest Information screen and the confirmation letter will be automatically attached as a PDF before sending from your default email. Click on the preferred Confirmation Letter to send, there can be more than one of these created. The Confirmation Letter will display, this can be edited at this stage before sending.

Code	Description
Confirm1	Confirmation Letter
Welcome1	Welcome Letter 1

Selected Code:

Email Print Exit

54a

The Confirmation letter can be individually edited before printing or emailing.
****Please note 'DO NOT REMOVE' text****

Booking Details

Arrival: 28/03/2014 ETA: 03.00PM
 Departure: 10/04/2014 ETD: 10.00AM
 Guest: 2 Adults 0 Children Total: \$ 704.00 (incl. GST)
 Room Type: 1 X KING SPA REF: (Acc/Res.0000012/0000635)
 Package: BED & BREAKFAST
 Deposit:

***** DO NOT REMOVE the line "</Insert BookingDetails above/>"*****

28/03/2014
 MR TOM GREEN
 12 FRED STREET
 ABBEYWOOD QLD 4613
 Dear MR TOM GREEN
 Thank you for your booking which I'm happy to confirm as below.
 </Insert BookingDetails above/> - ***Do not remove/change this line***
 Please note that all cancellations must be done 48 hours prior to arrival. Otherwise cancellation fees may apply. Should you have further enquiries or wish to alter your reservation please contact us on +61 3 9428 4333. Your reference number will assist in finding your reservation quickly.

Email Address: Email Print Exit

54b

The name at the bottom of your confirmation letter defaults to the user that is logged in at the time. If you need to change the user name or add a new one see the section on [User Maintenance](#)²²⁰ in the setup menu and add or change the password information (You must be an admin user to do this). You can setup a password for each person or just the company name.

3.1.14 Guest SMS

An SMS message can be sent to the guest to confirm arrival time. On the Guest Information screen select the option **Ok to receive SMS**. There must be a mobile / cell number entered in the Guest Information Mobile phone number field for this option to work. **Please contact Starfleet to set up your account before using this option.**



Country: Phone 2:
 Suburb: Mobile: ☐ Ok to receive SMS
 State/Region: Fax: FF No:
 Postcode: E-mail:

55a

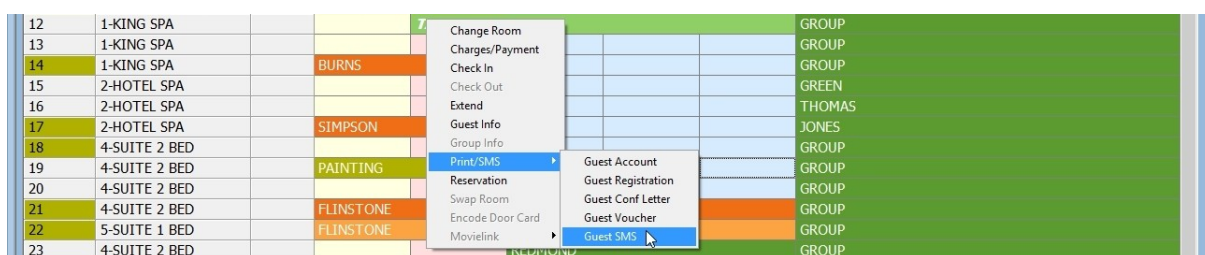
Click on the Reservations tab and select SMS.



Proforma Inv
SMS
Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

55b

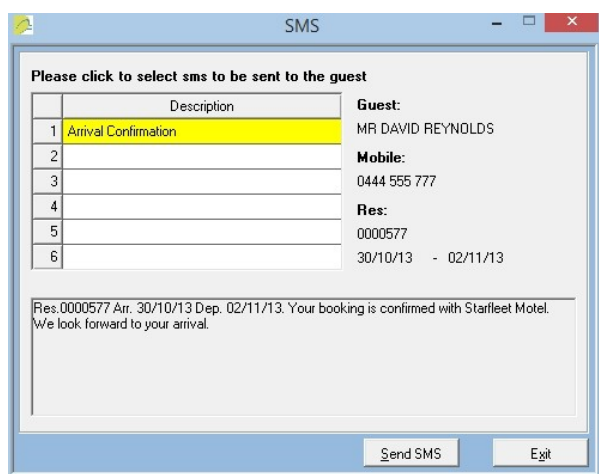
Or right click on the Guest name, go to Guest SMS



12	1-KING SPA				GROUP
13	1-KING SPA				GROUP
14	1-KING SPA	BURNS			GROUP
15	2-HOTEL SPA				GREEN
16	2-HOTEL SPA				THOMAS
17	2-HOTEL SPA	SIMPSON			JONES
18	4-SUITE 2 BED				GROUP
19	4-SUITE 2 BED	PAINTING			GROUP
20	4-SUITE 2 BED				GROUP
21	4-SUITE 2 BED	FLINSTONE			GROUP
22	5-SUITE 1 BED	FLINSTONE			GROUP
23	4-SUITE 2 BED				GROUP

55c

A list of SMS messages will display, select the relevant SMS to send if there is more than one set up.



SMS

Please click to select sms to be sent to the guest

	Description
1	Arrival Confirmation
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

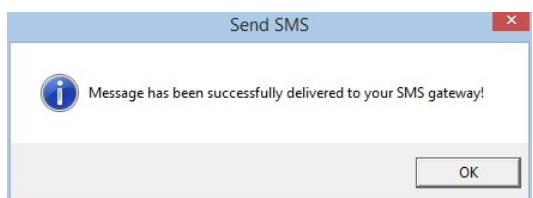
Guest: MR DAVID REYNOLDS
Mobile: 0444 555 777
Res: 0000577
 30/10/13 - 02/11/13

Res:0000577 Arr: 30/10/13 Dep: 02/11/13. Your booking is confirmed with Starfleet Motel. We look forward to your arrival.

Send SMS Exit

55d

A confirmation prompt to show the SMS has been sent successfully will display.



Send SMS

Message has been successfully delivered to your SMS gateway!

OK

55e

Enter your SMS account details in Communication -> [SMS Setup](#)²³¹. **Contact Starfleet for details to set up your account.**
 Set up the SMS message template text in Set Up -> Conf Letter/SMS/Voucher -> [SMS](#)¹⁹³.

3.1.15 Guest Registration Slip

To print an individual registration slip, right click on the reservation in the room allocation screen, select **Print -> Guest Registration**. Or to print for all arrivals on a particular day select **Front Office -> Reg Slip/Allocate Rooms**. Select the date of arrival and the option of **One slip per room**, **One slip per guest** or **One slip per group**. A Blank Reg slip can also be printed to keep on hand.

There are three setup options for the Guest Registration slip, Standard (as shown below), Standard with Terms and Standard Long, refer to Set up -> System Configuration -> [Reg Slip](#)²⁰⁹ for setup.

Print Registration ...

Print slips for all arrivals on:

30/10/2013

☒ One slip per room
☐ One slip per guest
☐ One slip per group
 (For group bookings, print slip for the master reservation only)
☐ Blank Reg slip 1

Print Exit

56

Check In 30/10/13	 Starfleet Business Solutions P.O. Box 6143 Hawthorn West 3122 info@starfleet-software.com.au Ph:+61 3 9428 4333 Fax:+61 3 8640 0446	Booking # 0000564/0000596	Room 04
Check Out 01/11/13		Guests 2	Room Rate 110.00
Guest Name and Address HARRISON,MS HELEN 29 GREENSWAY DRIVE HAWTHORN VIC 3122		Company Name and Address 	
Telephone # 9988 5623		Company Telephone # 	
Account Instructions ☐ C/CARD EXPIRY / ☐ COMPANY ☐ CASH ☐ CHEQUE ☐ VOUCHER		Other 	Car Reg No UTY 589
Comments 		Email helen@email.com	Signature
		Date/...../.....	

THIS PROPERTY WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR VALUABLES LEFT IN ROOMS OR CAR PARK.

57

3.1.16 Changing & Deleting a Guest Reservation

Select the Guest's account that you wish to change. Then select the Reservations button. Double click on the reservation line you want to change. The following screen will be displayed. Select any of the tabs you want, and add or amend any details as required. Click on the Save button to save.

58

Deleting a Guest Reservation

If you wish to delete a reservation, select the desired reservation as described above. Then click on the delete button to delete.

ONLY reservations that have NO transactions, or have a ZERO balance, can be deleted. If a reservation is 'arrived' it cannot be deleted. The following Delete Status will appear over the reservation screen, select the status and add comment or user initials, this must be completed to delete the reservation. The reservation status will then be marked as Deleted.

59

Extending a Guest Reservation

Select the desired guest, and reservation as previously described.

Double click on the departure date, and amend the date. Please note that the departure date cannot be less than the arrival date. Or right click on the Guest name on the Room Allocation screen, select the Extend option, enter the new departure date and Continue. The reservation will now be extended to the required date.

Note: If the reservation is for a non-repetitive package (ie: different transactions are posted automatically on the days you specified when the package was created) the system will not allow an extension. This reservation will need to have the rate changed first or have the arrival date changed as well to add up to the correct amount of nights for this package.

Allocating a Room

Select the Guest's reservation as previously described. This applies irrespective of whether a room was previously allocated or not. Click once on the room desired from the list, and the 'Room #' will be updated, then save the reservation.

3.1.17 Search for Existing Guest Details

Open a new Guest Information screen. Next to the Account box is a yellow coloured icon. Click on this to display the following screen. Select the search by option from Name, Company, Arrival Date, Departure Date or Contact/ID. If you do not select anything, name is the default. Then either leave Select Status unselected, or select the desired option.

If selecting by Name or Company, only key in the first couple of letters. This gives a range so that if you miss-spell the name you can still see it on the screen. This also allows for the possibility that the name is phonetically different to what you think it is. Then select Start Search.

An alphabetical list of the Guest names, starting from the first one that meets the search criteria, will be displayed, (see following screen 61). The list consists of the Booking Name, an Account Number, Group Account Number, a Contact/ID, the Arrival Date, the Departure Date, the Room Number, the status of the reservation and the Company Name.

60

Note: you can click on the column headings to sort that column in ascending order.

If the reservation you are looking for is on the screen, double click on the Guest's name to show the Guest information screen.

Merge Acc refer to [Merge Guest Accounts](#)

63

Booking Name	Acc No	Group	Contact ID	Arrival	Departure	Room	S.	Company
ABC ELECTRICAL	0000440							ABC ELECT...
ANDERSON MR/S NEIL	0000027			11/07/2005	16/07/2005	2003	C	HOME HAR...
ANDERSON MR/S PAUL	0000143			11/07/2005	16/07/2005	5004	C	
ANDERSON MS PAMELA	0000244			04/08/2008	05/08/2008	1004	C	
ANDREWS MR M	0000128			14/07/2005	17/07/2005	2001	C	
ARMSTRONG MR DARREN	0000264			31/08/2008	02/09/2008	1005	C	
BAGHDATIS MARCOS	0000365	0000351	JOE WILSO...	31/01/2009	02/02/2009	4007	C	RICHMOND...
BAULLIEU MR TED	0000368		SUE JAME...	28/01/2009	30/01/2009	2004	C	
BEAN MR	0000282	0000267		05/09/2008	07/09/2008	2006	C	
BEAN MR	0000282			29/01/2009	01/02/2009	3012	C	
BEAN MR	0000282			29/01/2011	02/02/2011		D	
BEAN MR	0000282			30/03/2011	02/04/2011	14	C	
BEAN MR	0000282			01/09/2011	03/09/2011		D	
BEAN MR	0000282			28/01/2013	30/01/2013	22	C	
BECKHAM MR DAVID	0000348			29/08/2008	31/08/2008	1001	C	
BECKHAM MR DAVID	0000348			30/01/2009	03/02/2009	2006	C	
BENNETT MR A	0000283	0000267		05/09/2008	07/09/2008	2007	C	SARAH & J...
BLACK MR D	0000138			16/07/2005	18/07/2005	1005	C	
BLACK MR THOMAS	0000246			05/08/2008	09/08/2008	6009	C	WEBBOOKI...
BLACK MS SHARON	0000023			11/07/2005	17/07/2005	4003	C	

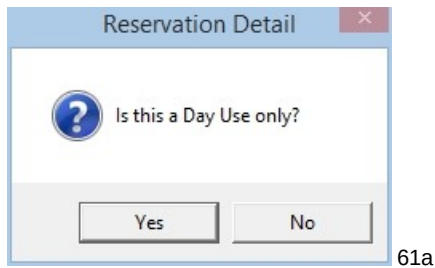
61

3.1.18 Walk In's

Refer to following section **Room Allocation**, [Walk In's](#)^[45] for information.

3.1.19 Day Bookings

A reservation can be entered for a 'Day Booking'. This is a reservation that is only required for day use. Enter the reservation details as normal refer to [Guest Reservation](#)^[27]. The arrival and departure dates will be the same with 0 in the room nights field. The following prompt will display to confirm **Yes** for Day Use only.



61a

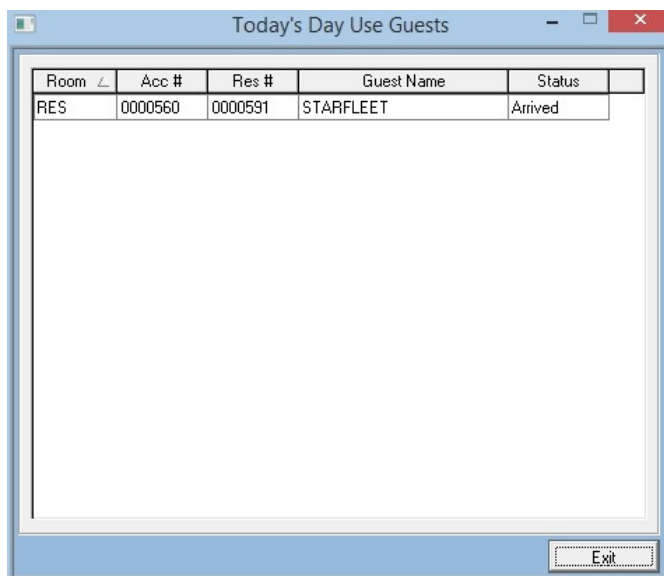
This Day Booking will display on the Room allocation screen with a ~ in front of the guest name **~STARFLEET**. Arrive this day booking the same as the usual reservation. When departing the day booking this will then 'disappear' from the room allocation screen (this then allows another booking to be made on the same day). The guest and reservation details can be found by searching using the Guest Information screen, refer to [Search for Existing Guest Details](#)^[44] or by entering the guest surname in a Guest Information screen.

NOTE: If there is already a reservation in the room arriving later in the day, a new Day Booking can not be entered. A reservation can be made on the room after a Day Booking has departed.

Use the Day Use button on the Room Allocation screen to display **'Today's Day Use Guests'**.



61b



61c

3.1.20 Guest Check In

On the Room Allocation screen find the guest reservation, right click and select the option **Check In**.



62

Use the Check In screen to edit or add any guest details such as address, email, phone numbers, Credit Card details. Click on **Check In** and the guest will now be **Arrived**.

The screenshot shows the 'Check In' window with the following fields and values:

- Room #: 01, Sole Use: ☐
- Account: 0000550
- Arrival: 30/10/2013, Night(s): 3
- Source: A
- Departure: 02/11/2013, Rate Cd: BB1
- Area: A
- Pkg Rate: 200.00
- Seg: A
- First night disc.: ☐ Every night disc.: ☐ Pre-Authorized: 1,000.00
- Booked By: SBS
- Comment:
- Voucher:
- Preferences: ☒ Neither, ☐ Male, ☐ Female
- Surname: REYNOLDS, Title: MR, First Name: DAVID
- A/R:
- State/Prov: WA, Postal: 6714
- Company:
- Phone 1:
- Credit Card: ☐
- Address 1: 65 KIRKWOOD DRIVE
- Mobile:
- Ok to receive SMS: ☐
- Address 2:
- Email:
- Country: AUSTRALIA
- FF No:
- City/Suburb: GAP RIDGE
- Car:

62a

Alternatively go to the Guest information screen, and select the desired Guest by entering the Guest's account number, or searching for the Guest surname. Then select the Arrivals button. This gives you the screen shown below.

Account : 0000550 Room: Balance: 600.00-

Surname: REYNOLDS Title: MR First Name: DAVID Last Activity: 26/10/2013

A/R: Pay Method: User: m15c15

Reservation

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P
0000577	30/10/2013	02/11/2013	200.00	18.18	BBT	KING SPA	2			01	Not Arrived	SB

Available Rooms:

01	13
----	----

Select room to check in: 01 Pre-Authorized ☐ Check In Calc Total

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

63

Important: All reservations 'Not Arrived' attached to this account number will be displayed, so be sure to select the correct one (It will then be highlighted in yellow).

When a reservation is selected, you are presented with a choice of room numbers that are currently vacant and correspond to the room type in the reservation. If any of the rooms are dirty, it will be displayed in low light and the first attribute will also be displayed above the room number.

Click on the room number you want. If a room has previously been allocated to this reservation, the system will display this room number in the 'Select room to check in:' box, as well as displaying other available rooms in the bottom window. Click on the Check in button to check the Guest in.

Or if an arrival today you can select the blue button marked **Today's Arrivals** and the following screen will appear. Double Click on the reservation you would like to check in to bring up the details. Then Click on the Check In button which will check the guest in.

Arriving Guests For Today

No	Name	Room	ETA	Comment
1	BURNS MR GEORGE	14	03.00PM	
2	HOOD MR ROBIN	10	03.00PM	
3	JONES BILL	02	03.00PM	
4	KIDMAN MS NICOLE	28	03.00PM	
5	REYNOLDS MR DAVID	01	03.00PM	
6	SIMPSON MR HOMER	17	03.00PM	
7	SKYWALKER MR LUKE	09	03.00PM	
8	TUCK FRIAR	11	03.00PM	

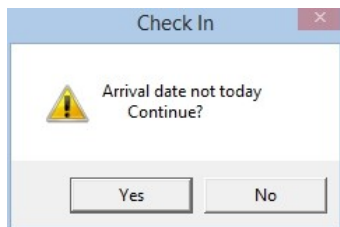
Please click to select/de-select guests from the check in list OR double click to go to the guest's account.

Check All In Exit

64

If you attempt to use a room which is currently occupied a message will prompt you to enter another room. The system will also alert you if the room you are using is not clean. Select Yes on the prompt to continue.

If you have selected the wrong reservation (ie: one which has an arrival date greater than today) the program displays a warning message and prompts you whether to continue or not.



65

If a reservation has been mistakenly checked in it can be reinstated back to 'Not Arrived' status. Refer to following section [Reinstate Checked In or Out Reservation](#)⁵⁰

For a GROUP check in refer to [Group Check In](#)⁹⁹ This allows you to check in ALL group members at the ONE time (If they are arriving at the one time).

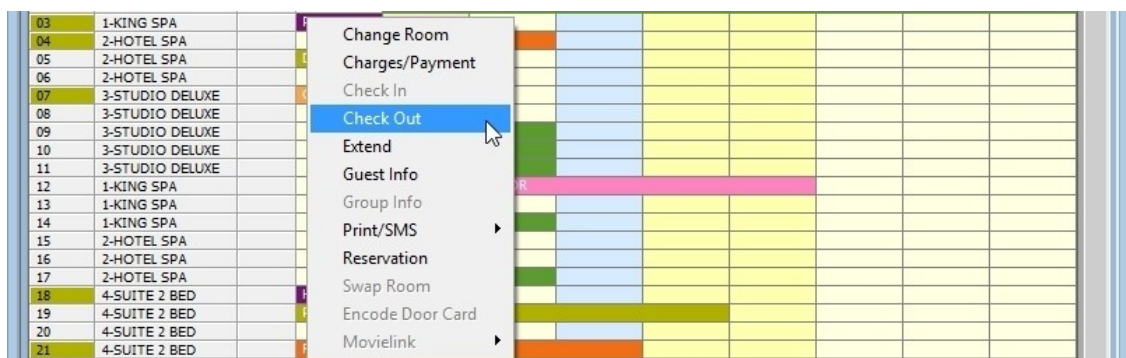
For Backpackers fast check in refer to [Backpacker Bookings](#)⁶⁴

3.1.21 Guest Check Out

From the check out window you can:

- Print invoices without checking out if required (see following Guest Account Invoice).
- Print invoices for individual folios, or all folios (see following Guest Account Invoice).
- Select which transactions to print on the invoice.
- Print invoices for checked out reservations.
- Make Payments and enter charges on Guest accounts.
- Amend availability and reservation files if departure dates are incorrect.
- Display the individual folio transactions, or all transactions in the folios.
- Get a Balance Query on what is owing after ALL Night Audit charges.
- Post a Daily Update, which will charge the accommodation charges for this Guest only. This is used when a Guest wants to settle their account the night before and Night Audit has not been run. Accommodation will not charge again at Night Audit.

On the Room Allocation screen find the guest reservation, right click and select the option **Check Out**.



66

Alternatively go to the Guest information screen, and select the desired Guest by entering the Guest's account number. Select the Departures button by clicking on it. Both options give you the next screen.

Process any payment due or transfer the balance to a debtor if required. Once the account balance is zero click on the Check Out button. There is an option to check out guest with balance owing, this will apply to ALL reservations. See Set up -> System Configuration -> [Reservation](#)²⁰⁴ and untick the option "Force Payment before Check Out". If a Guest Account is required this can be printed or emailed before or after checking the guest out.

Guest Check Out

Account: 0000559 Room: [] Balance: 990.00

Surname: JACKSON Title: MR First Name: KEVIN Last Activity: 29/10/2013

A/R: QAN Pay Method: CHG BACK User: m15c15

☐ Not Arrived ☒ Inhouse ☐ Checked Out ☐ Deleted

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	Rate Cd	Room	Status	Room Type
0000587	27/10/2013	30/10/2013	330.00	PENT4	28	Arrived	PENTHOUSE

Room balance: 990.00 **Status:** Arrived **Transaction:** Folio: 1

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
27/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
28/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
29/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00

Pay Type: [] Amount: 0.00 GST: 0.00

Comments: []

☐ All folios ☐ Folio 1 ☐ Folio 2 ☐ Folio 3 ☐ Folio 4 ☐ Folio 5

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals **Departures** Charges/Pmt Exit

66a

Note that if a guest is departing early, you will get a warning that today's date is not the same as the Guest's departure date. If you choose to proceed, the departure date will be adjusted to today, and the guest checked out.

In the Departures screen click on the blue tab Today's Departures, this will show you all today's Departing Guests. The highlighted yellow guests can be checked out with the Check All Out button as the accounts all have a zero balance. The remaining guests have a balance therefore payment will need to be taken for the account balance.

Departing Guests For Today

☒ List by name ☐ List by room no.

No	Name	Room	ETD	Room Bal	Comment
1	HOGAN MR MICK	18	10.00AM	0.00	
2	JACKSON MR KEVIN	28	10.00AM	990.00	
3	PARKER MR STEVEN	03	10.00AM	0.00	

Please click to select/de-select guests from the check out list OR double click to go to the guest's account

Check All Out Exit

67

If a reservation has been mistakenly checked out it can be reinstated back to Arrived status. Refer to following section [Reinstate Checked In or Out Reservation](#)⁵⁰

For a **Group** check out refer to [Group Checkout](#)^[102] This allows you to check out ALL group members at the same time.

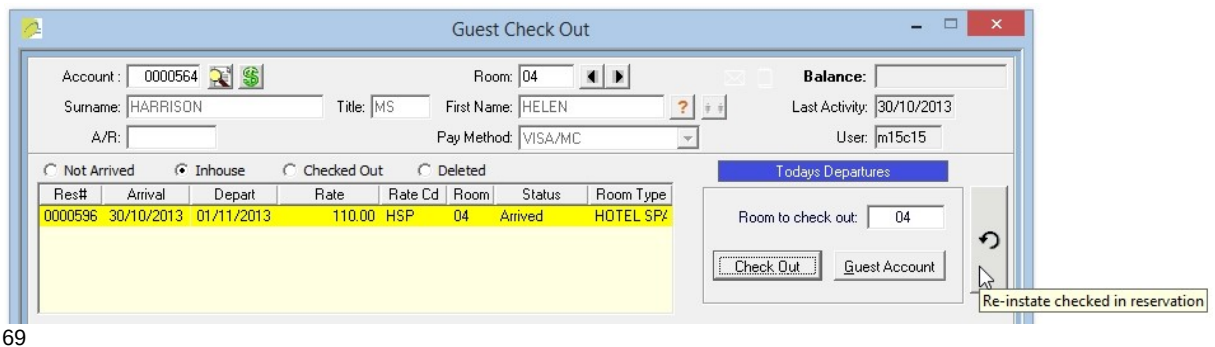
For **Backpackers** fast check out refer to [Backpacker Bookings](#)^[64]

3.1.22 Reinstate Checked In or Out Reservation

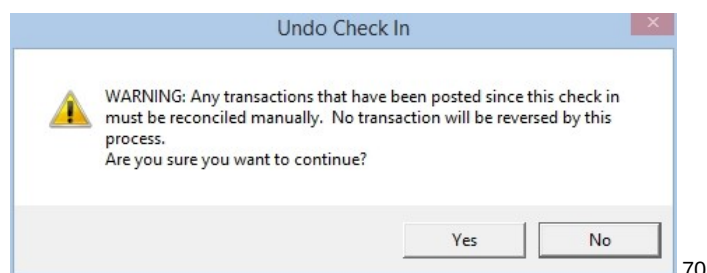
If a reservation has been mistakenly arrived or departed the status can be reverted back. Or if a guest has been departed but then decides they would like to stay on for another day or two then the reservation can be changed back to arrived. This eliminates having to create another reservation. The same if the incorrect reservation has been arrived the status can be changed back to Not Arrived.

NOTE: THIS CAN ONLY BE DONE ON THE DAY OF DEPARTURE OR ARRIVAL. A PREVIOUS DAYS DEPARTURE OR ARRIVAL CAN NOT BE CHANGED.

To re-instate a checked in or out reservation, go to the Departure button in the Guest Information. Select the In House or Checked Out button above the reservation line to display the reservations, select the reservation to be re-instated, click on the back arrow icon beside the guest account button.



Reinstating an Arrived reservation back to Not Arrived will display a Undo Check In prompt. If there have been any transactions posted to the account whilst in Arrived status then the transactions must be voided or reversed manually. Changing the reservation status will not automatically do this.



Reinstate the Check Out reservation back to Arrived if the guest decides to continue their stay, this will eliminate creating a new reservation.

Account #: 0000557 Room: [] Balance: []

Surname: PARKER Title: MR First Name: STEVEN Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: WOTIF Pay Method: [] User: m15c15

☐ Not Arrived ☐ Inhouse ☒ Checked Out ☐ Deleted

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	Rate Cd	Room	Status	Room Type
0000585	27/10/2013	30/10/2013	90.00	KSP	03	Check Out	KING SPA

Room to check out: 03

Check Out Guest Account

Re-instate checked out reservation

71

3.1.23 Guest Account Invoice

Click the **Guest Account** button to print an invoice. The following window will be displayed. If the accommodation is being transferred to debtors and the guest is paying for any extras, highlight the transactions the guest is NOT paying for. These transactions will be excluded from the account when printed. An account can then be printed with the guests charges and payments.

Reservation: 0000587

Include transactions from Res#:

Date	TType	Description	Folio	Amount	GST
27/10/2013	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	2	330.00	30.00
28/10/2013	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	2	330.00	30.00
29/10/2013	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	2	330.00	30.00
30/10/2013	PAY	PAYMENT VISA/MC	1	990.00	0.00

Folio Selection: ☒ 1 - Default ☒ 2 - ACCOMMODA

Summarize By: ☒ Trans Type ☐ Folio ☐ Date

Summarize up to: []

Transaction to summarize: ☐ ACC

Total Includes GST: 0.00

Please click & highlight any transactions to be excluded from the guest invoice

☐ Highlight All

Guest/Group Name On Invoice: MR KEVIN JACKSON

☒ Print Guest/Group Address

Date Selection: Start: [] End: [] OK

Send email Print 1 copy Print 2 copies Exit

72

From this window you can select to:

- Print invoices without checking out if required.
- Print invoices for individual folios, or all folios.
- Select which transactions to print on the invoice.
- Print invoices for checked out reservations.
- All Transactions on the invoice.
- Print Guest Account by Date range, refer to [Transfer to Debtors Long Term Guest](#)
- You also have the option to print any of the names attached to the reservation and if the address is to be printed also. (ie If more than one guest are sharing the room, you can print a separate invoice for each of the guests.) Select the drop down box for Guest/Group Name On Invoice).
- Print the Debtor details with the guest name on the invoice, see **Guest/Group Name On Invoice** to select the required information.
- Option to Email or to Print 1 or 2 copies of the Guest Account.

3.1.24 Guest Charges & Payments

This option can be selected from the Room Allocation screen and right clicking on the guest, the Departures window or search for the desired guest from the Guest Information screen. You can enter the room number, the Guest's account number, or search for the Guest. Then select the 'Charges/Pmt' button.

Highlight the reservation (if it is the only one, and you selected the room, it will be already highlighted). Click on the box marked 'Transaction', and select the transaction type you are going to use.

TIP: As you type, the list below will scroll with each letter typed. Once the correct transaction type is highlighted you can then tab to the folio box. Alternately, you can scroll through the transaction types using the mouse and click on the transaction you require.

Guest Charges/Payment

Account: 0000559 Room: 28 Balance: 990.00

Surname: JACKSON Title: MR First Name: KEVIN Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: QAN Pay Method: CHG BACK User: m15c15

Reservation

☒ Current ☐ All Today's Arrivals

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P
0000587	27/10/2013	30/10/2013	330.00	30.00	PENT4	PENTHOUSE	5			28	Arrived	SB

Room balance: 990.00 **Status:** Arrived

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
27/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
28/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
29/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00

Transaction: PAY - PAYMENT **Folio:** 1

Pay Type: CON - CONFERENCE
DIN - DINNER
GIF - GIFT VOUCHER
HOR - HORSE RIDING
LUN - LUNCH
MAS - MASSAGE 1 HOUR
MEE - MEETING
MIS - MISCELLANEOUS
PAY - PAYMENT

Amount: 0.00

Comments:

☒ All folios ☐ Folio 1 ☐ Folio 2 ☐ Folio 3 ☐ Folio 4 ☐ Folio 5

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

73

If you are using folios, select the folio, refer to [Guest Folios](#)³⁴. If you are not using folios, tab to the next step.

If it is a payment, select the payment type from the 'Pay type' box. Click on the 'Amount' box, and enter the amount. The GST cannot be entered, as it shows the amount of GST included in that transaction.

Click on the 'Comments:' box, and enter any comments (if required).

If these entries are ok, select the 'Apply' button, and the transaction will be applied to the account. The folio number will be automatically selected.

3.1.24.1 Multiple Guests in Room Paying Separately

On the Guest Information screen, click on the button as shown below, 'Display/hide other names'. Enter in each individual guest name who will be accommodated in the room. Select Save at the bottom of the screen when finished. The button will then display an orange color to indicate there is more than one guest.

73a

In the Reservation screen select the tab for Folios. Enter the individual guest names as in the following screen. Click in the Trans1 – Trans6 fields to allocate the transaction types to each guest along with the percentage of the accommodation they will each be responsible for. If it is Accommodation then the transaction type does not need to be entered as the Rm% column will know that ACC transaction applies.

73b

The charges will then display as follows. The tab for All Folios will display all transactions (below left). Click on the Folio number (below right) to display the charges for the individual guest. When posting a payment first select the correct Folio.

73c

73d

Payments

When posting a payment to the guest account, ensure the correct folio is first selected. If an account is requested then this will display that the payment has been made against the correct guest charges. Click on the Folio box to make the selection.

Guest Charges/Payment

Account: 0000564 Room: 04 Balance: 110.00

Surname: HARRISON Title: MS First Name: HELEN Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: Pay Method: VISA/MC User: m15c15

Reservation

Current All Today's Arrivals

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P
0000596	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	110.00	10.00	HSP	HOTEL SPA	2			04	Arrived	SB

Folio balance: 55.00 **Status:** Arrived **Transaction:** PAY - PAYMENT **Folio:** 1

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			55.00	5.00

Pay Type: Amount: 0.00 GST: Comments:

1 - Default
2 - HELEN HARRISON
3 - SUSAN SMITH

All folios Folio 1 Folio 2 Folio 3 Folio 4 Folio 5

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

73e

Printing the guest account in the Folio Selection, select the guest. Guest/Group Name On Invoice, select the guest name.

Print Guest Account

Reservation: 0000596

Include transactions from Res#:

Date	TType	Description	Folio	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	PAY	PAYMENT VISA/MC	3	55.00	0.00
30/10/2013	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	3	55.00	5.00

Folio Selection:
☐ 1 - Default
☐ 2 - HELEN HARRISON
☒ 3 - SUSAN SMITH

Summarize By:
☐ Trans Type
☒ Folio
☐ Date

Folio to summarize:
☐ Folio 1
☐ Folio 2
☐ Folio 3

Summarize up to:

Date Selection:
 Start: End: OK

Total Includes GST: 0.00

Please click & highlight any transactions to be excluded from the guest invoice

☐ Highlight All

Guest/Group Name On Invoice:
 MS SUSAN SMITH
 MS HELEN HARRISON
 MS SUSAN SMITH

Send email Print 1 copy Print 2 copies Exit

73f

3.1.24.2 Transfer transaction folio to folio

Click on the Transactions button in the Guest Information screen. This will bring up the following screen then click on the **Folio Detail** icon, to bring up the detailed folio where you can transfer the charges from one folio to another.

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000592	26/10/2013	0002299	ADV	ADV DEPOSIT ...	VISA/MC	V	18	560.00	0.00
0000592	26/10/2013	0002302	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			18	140.00	12.73
0000592	27/10/2013	0002305	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			18	140.00	12.73
0000592	28/10/2013	0002309	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			18	140.00	12.73
0000592	29/10/2013	0002326	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			18	140.00	12.73
0000592	30/10/2013	0002354	BRK	BREAKFAST ...	Bacon & Eggs			12.00	1.09
0000592	30/10/2013	0002355	BRK	BREAKFAST ...	Pancakes			9.00	0.82
0000592	30/10/2013	0002356	BRK	BREAKFAST ...	Toast			1.00	0.09
0000592	30/10/2013	0002357	RBC	RESTAURANT/...	Hot chocolate			3.00	0.27
0000592	30/10/2013	0002358	RBC	RESTAURANT/...	Latte			4.00	0.36

74

FOLIO TRANSFER SCREEN FOR SAME ACCOUNT DIFFERENT FOLIO

This would be used if company is paying for Accommodation and guest paying all other charges or similar.

Transactions	Res #	Folio
26/10/2013 0002299 ADV ADV DEPOSIT VISA/MC	18	560.00
26/10/2013 0002302 ACC ACCOMMODATION	18	140.00
27/10/2013 0002305 ACC ACCOMMODATION	18	140.00
28/10/2013 0002309 ACC ACCOMMODATION	18	140.00
29/10/2013 0002326 ACC ACCOMMODATION	18	140.00
30/10/2013 0002354 BRK BREAKFAST Bacon & Eggs		12.00
30/10/2013 0002355 BRK BREAKFAST Pancakes		9.00
30/10/2013 0002356 BRK BREAKFAST Toast		1.00
30/10/2013 0002357 RBC RESTAURANT/BAR Hot chocolate		3.00
30/10/2013 0002358 RBC RESTAURANT/BAR Latte		4.00

75

3.1.24.3 Transfer Transaction to other Account

This option allows for the transfer of charges and/or payments from one reservation to another reservation on the same account, or from one Guest account to another Guest account, or from one room number to another room number.

To begin the transfer, select the transaction from those shown on the Guest account, and highlight it. In the transaction type box, select your transaction type **TRA - Transfer Transaction**, and then tab to get to the 'Transfer To' box. Enter the reservation number you want to transfer this entry to. Then <tab> to the Account field, this will be updated with the correct Guest account to transfer the transaction provided the Res# entered is correct. **Only enter the room number if the Guest is currently in house.** If the room is occupied then the charge will go to that room reservation. If the guest has departed then the Res# must be entered. To complete this, click on the 'Apply' button.

Guest Charges/Payment

Account: 0000561 Room: 18 Balance: 29.00

Surname: HOGAN Title: MR First Name: MICK Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: Pay Method: User: m15c15

Reservation

Current All Today's Arrivals

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P
0000592	26/10/2013	30/10/2013	140.00	12.73	SUITE2	SUITE 2 BE	2	1		18	Arrived	SB

Room balance: 29.00 **Status:** Arrived **Transaction:** TRA - TRANSFER TRANS

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	BREAKFAST			12.00	
30/10/2013	BREAKFAST			9.00	
30/10/2013	BREAKFAST			1.00	
30/10/2013	RESTAURANT/BAR			3.00	
30/10/2013	RESTAURANT/BAR			4.00	

Transfer to: Room: or Res #: 00000000 Account: 00000000

Select all

All folios Folio 1 Folio 2 Folio 3 Folio 4 Folio 5

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

76

3.1.24.4 Transfer to Debtors

It is usual to transfer company accounts, travel agents and wholesalers to Debtors by using the transaction type "XFR - XFER TO DEBTORS".

This sometimes is done without first allowing for any discount or commission that may be applicable.

Any discount or commission applicable can be taken off the Guest's account before doing a transfer to Debtors unless management specifies otherwise. NETT or GROSS amounts owed by Debtors can be transferred. Please refer to following sections [Transfer to Debtors - Agent Commissions](#)⁵⁹ and [Debtors](#)²¹⁴ for specific setup information.

Guest Charges/Payment

Account: 0000559 Room: 28 Balance: 0.00

Surname: JACKSON Title: MR First Name: KEVIN Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: QAN Pay Method: CHG BACK User: m15c15

Reservation

Current All Today's Arrivals

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P
0000587	27/10/2013	30/10/2013	330.00	30.00	PENT4	PENTHOUSE	5			28	Arrived	SB

Room balance: 0.00 **Status:** Arrived **Transaction:** XFR - XFER TO DEBTORS Folio: 1

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
27/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
28/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
29/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
30/10/2013	XFER TO DEBTORS			-990.00	0.00

Amount: 990.00- GST: 0.00

Comments:

Voucher: Q2367

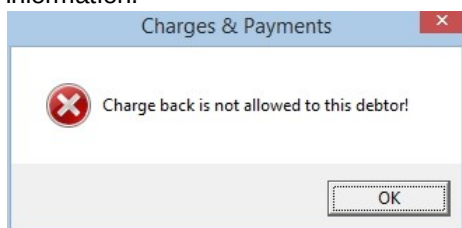
All folios Folio 1 Folio 2 Folio 3 Folio 4 Folio 5

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

77

If this following prompt appears this is because Charge Backs are not allowed on this Debtor. Refer to: Debtors -> Debtor Information -> [Add New](#)¹⁵⁷ where this option has been selected on the Debtor Information.



77a

The following Guest Transactions screen displays the **XFR - XFER TO DEBTOR** transaction on the Guest Transaction screen. The guest account now has a zero balance and can be checked out.

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000587	27/10/2013	0002306	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	28/10/2013	0002311	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	29/10/2013	0002328	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	30/10/2013	0002359	XFR	XFER TO DEBT...			28	990.00	0.00

78

3.1.24.5 Transfer to Debtors Long Term Guest

A guest account balance can be transferred to debtors weekly or monthly if the guest is In House long term. This is some times required by the company paying for the account or the property providing the accommodation.

In the guest account invoice go to the Date Selection at the bottom of the account screen. Enter the Start and End date required and OK. This will produce a specific Guest Account Tax Invoice number. When this account has been printed then transfer the the balance of this account to debtors.

Scr 78a

The 'Tax Invoice' number will then be specific to the Guest Account when printed.

Starfleet Business Solutions
P.O. Box 6143 Hawthorn West 3122
sales@starfleet-software.com.au
Ph:+61 3 9428 4333 Fax:+61 3 8640 0446

GUEST ACCOUNT
Tax Invoice 000059741548
ABN 12 345 678 999

Guest/Group Name On Invoice
BILL JONES
☒ Print Guest/Group Address

Date Selection
Start: 01/10/2013 End: 31/10/2013 OK

Buttons: Send email, Print 1 copy, Print 2 copies, Exit

Guest Details:
Date: 30/10/2013
Room: 02
Account: 0000126
Reservation: 0000597
Arrival: 30/10/2013
Departure: 29/12/2013
Guests: 1
Voucher

Guest Name:
BILL JONES
JONES TRANSPORT

3.1.24.6 Transfer to Debtors Reversal

If an amount has been transferred in error or to an incorrect debtor, and needs to be corrected this must be rectified from the guest account. Select the same transaction, **XFR - XFER TO DEBTORS**, with a minus before the amount, so the original transfer to Debtors is effectively reversed.

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
27/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
28/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
29/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			330.00	30.00
30/10/2013	XFER TO DEBTORS			-990.00	0.00

79

When selecting **Apply** the following screen will display, select **Yes** to confirm is a reverse entry. The charge amount will then reverse back to the Guest Account. Then transfer the correct amount to Debtors.

NOTE: if the error being corrected is due to transferring to an incorrect debtor, then the debtor code MUST be the same as the first transfer to debtors when reversing. Once the invoice amount is reversed then the debtor code MUST be changed to the correct debtor.

A XFER TO THE DEBTORS ACCOUNT CAN NOT BE VOIDED, A REVERSAL OF THE ORIGINAL ENTRY MUST BE DONE.

79a

When reversing an amount back from Debtors the incorrect transfer and the reversal amount **MUST** be reconciled. Refer to the **Debtor Information** -> [Reconcile Debtor Account Payments](#)¹⁶¹. The incorrect **XFR** will appear in the lower portion of the screen, the reversal amount will show in the upper portion of the screen. Reconcile these two transaction just as if they were a payment and a charge. This will balance the two and won't affect your daily banking or revenue. This prevents them from appearing on the Debtor's statement.

This following screen shows the **XFR - XFER TO DEBTORS** and the reversal **XFR - XFER TO DEBTORS**. The transfer to debtors has a -minus, the reversal does not.

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000587	27/10/2013	0002306	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	28/10/2013	0002311	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	29/10/2013	0002328	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			28	330.00	30.00
0000587	30/10/2013	0002359	XFR	XFER TO DEBT...			28	-990.00	0.00
0000587	30/10/2013	0002361	XFR	XFER TO DEBT...			28	990.00	0.00

80

3.1.24.7 Transfer to Debtors - Agent Commissions

There are two options that can be used to setup the XFR - Transfer to Debtors with or without Agent Commissions.

Transfer Nett and Commission amounts to Debtors

Option 1: Transfer the gross amount (includes Commission) from the guest account to the debtor. There will be two totals shown, one is the nett amount and the other is the commission amount. Go to **Setup - > System Configuration -> Debtors** ²¹⁴, tick the option '**Transfer the nett and comm amounts to debtors**'. If there is a commission amount selected for the debtor this is then calculated once the amount has been transferred to the debtor account. This option will not show any commission amount on the guest account.

Date	Refno	Voucher	Inv Amt	Inv Comm	Nett Inv	P	Amt Paid	Comm Paid	Disc App	Tot Paid	Description	
31/10/12	0000542		890.00	-89.00	801.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	HARRISON	1
31/01/13	0000570		720.00	-72.00	648.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	DUCK	2
30/10/13	0000587	Q2367	990.00	-99.00	891.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	JACKSON	3

81

Transfer Nett amount only to Debtors

Option 2: Transfer the Nett amount to Debtors. This will show the commission amount on the guest account so only the nett amount is transferred to the debtor. Go to Setup -> System Configuration -> Debtor, check the option '**Transfer the nett and comm amounts to debtors**' is NOT selected.

When Night Audit has been run the guest account will then show an entry for COM – COMMISSION. The balance on the Guest account will also only be the nett amount to be transferred to the debtor account.

Date	Refno	Voucher	Inv Amt	Inv Comm	Nett Inv	P	Amt Paid	Comm Paid	Disc App	Tot Paid	Description	
03/04/12	0000499		3,405.00	0.00	3,405.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	STARFLEET	1
03/04/12	0000499		1,437.50	0.00	1,437.50	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	STARFLEET	2
01/11/12	0000526	STAR00...	1,530.00	0.00	1,530.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	STARFLEET	3
01/11/12	0000546		2,430.00	0.00	2,430.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	STARFLEET	4
01/02/13	0000564		2,800.00	0.00	2,800.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	STARFLEET	5

81a

3.1.24.8 Voiding or Reversing Guest Charges

The purpose of this option is to enable a Guest's account to have an entry removed so it is no longer displayed on an invoice. For security purposes, transactions voided will still be displayed in the Guest's transactions and can be viewed in the Transaction List. Entries can only be voided if entered on the current date. An entry made on a previous day must be reversed.

For example, a Breakfast charge was contested by a Guest on check out, said that he definitely didn't have Breakfast. To void this entry go to the charges and payments screen in the guest account select VID - VOID ENTRY code from the drop down box, highlight the item you wish to void by clicking on it once - then enter a reason as to why you are voiding the entry. Select APPLY and the entry is now voided. You void the charge (say it's room 21) and check the Guest out. After he has gone you check the dockets and realize that the charge was for a Guest in room 12 and a typing error has been made. The transaction can then be manually entered on the correct account/room.

The screenshot shows the 'Room balance' screen with a balance of 645.00 and status 'Arrived'. The 'Transaction' dropdown is set to 'VID - VOID ENTRY'. A table lists transactions for 28/10/2013, 29/10/2013, and 30/10/2013. The 30/10/2013 entry for 'BREAKFAST' is highlighted. The 'Comments' field contains 'WRONG ROOM CHARGED'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Bal Query', 'Daily Update', 'Apply', and 'Cancel'.

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
28/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			310.00	28.18
29/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION			310.00	28.18
30/10/2013	BREAKFAST			25.00	2.27

82

The voided transaction can still be seen on the Transactions screen, but with the transaction number showing "Void". These transactions can also be hidden by selection the "Hide void transactions" option on the Transactions screen. All the transactions on the Guest account are displayed on screen. The 'Trans#' is the number associated with each individual transaction. As mentioned above, the entry will always remain. The balance will be amended

The screenshot shows the 'Guest Transactions' screen for account 0000347, Room 21, and guest FRED & WILMA. The balance is 620.00. The 'Transactions' table shows three entries: two for accommodation and one for breakfast. The breakfast entry is marked as 'Void'. A checkbox labeled 'Hide void transactions' is visible.

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000588	28/10/2013	0002310	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			21	310.00	28.18
0000588	29/10/2013	0002327	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...			21	310.00	28.18
0000588	30/10/2013	Void	BRK	BREAKFAST	WRONG ROOM CHAR...		21	25.00	2.27

83

Reversing Guest Charges

If a transaction has been posted on a previous day this can not be voided. The transaction must be reversed. This needs a minus (-) before the amount is if you are reversing an entry. Always use the same transaction type to reverse the entry. This will then reverse the revenue from the correct category. If the transaction is setup to be a credit (with a minus on it) automatically, then you do not need to add the minus sign.

3.1.25 Guest Mail & Notes

This option provides a facility for anyone to send mail or leave messages to any Guest. When a Guest has mail, the envelope icon to the right of the room number box becomes highlighted. The guest notes works along the same lines as guest mail. When there have been notes entered for a guest, the note pad icon next to the envelope will be highlighted.

84

Guest Notes

In the Guest Information screen, select the **Notes/Mail** button. Then select the **Notes** tab. (This is the default selection).

To enter a new note, select the button marked **Add**. Select a reservation number to attach the note to or leave as zero for all reservations, and also select a diary date for the note. You then enter the text and **Save**.

Messages are displayed with a row of **** separating each note. By clicking on the different options you are able to search for guest notes in a number of ways. You can display all notes for the guest (default), by the diary date of the notes, or by a reservation number of the guest. A daily Guest Notes report for all guests can also be printed by going to Reports -> Guest -> [Guest Notes](#) ¹⁴³

To delete a note, simply click on all the lines of the note to highlight them, then click on the **Delete** button. To print the notes, click on the **Print** button once.

85

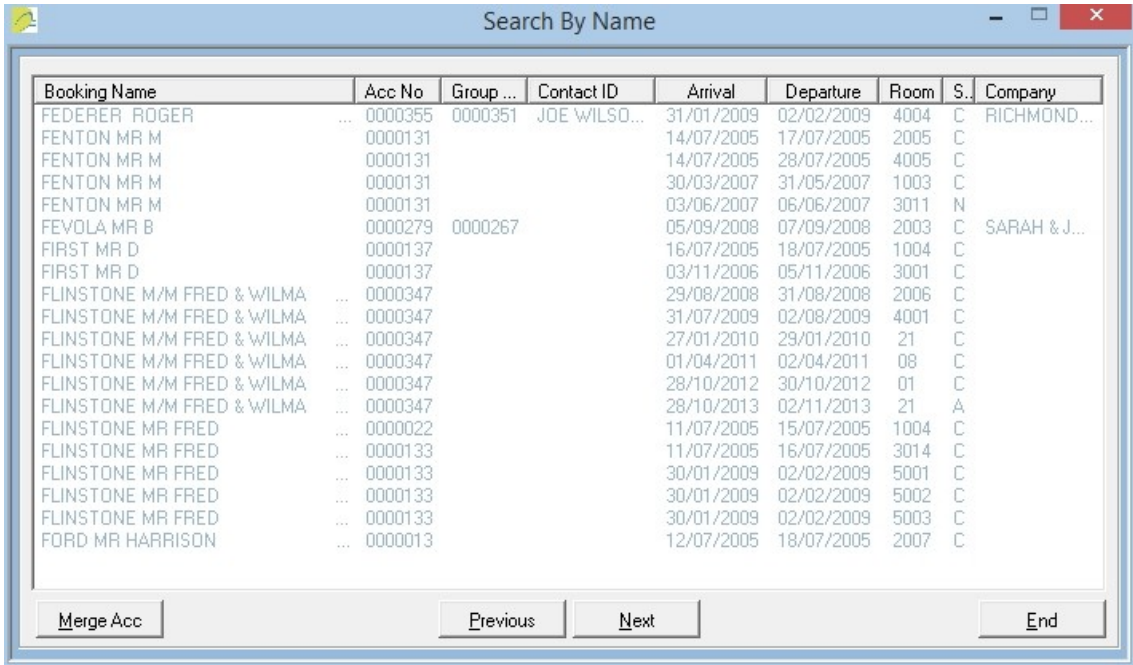
In the Guest Information screen, select the **Notes/Mail** button. Then select the **Mail** tab.

Until the mail is printed, the system will notify you of the presence of mail in an account each time the account is accessed, either in Reservations, Charges & Payments, Check In, Check Out or Guest.

86

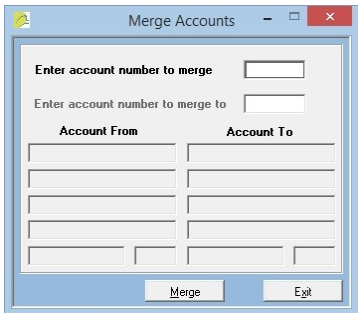
3.1.26 Merge Guest Accounts

When a returning Guest has more than one account it can be confusing which one to use to make a new reservation. These multiple accounts can be 'merged' into one existing account you wish to keep. This function is found in Search for Guests, refer to [Search for Existing Guest Details](#)⁴⁴. Select the Merge Acc button on he lower left of the screen. .

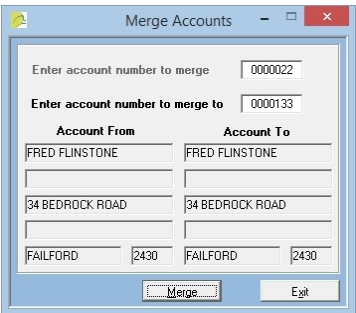


87

Enter the account number that will be merged and enter. Then enter the account number of the account to merge to. The details of the accounts will be displayed.



88



88a

Once Merge has been selected a warning prompt will display. This action once completed can not be reversed.



89

3.1.27 Backpacker Bookings

This facility is only available if the All Backpacker flag in System Configuration is enabled. To set this go to the Setup -> System Configuration -> [Backpacker](#)^[212]. Fewer details need to be entered when creating a Guest account for a Backpacker booking.

The Room Allocation screen can be displayed with an Index down the right hand side of the screen. Because Backpackers sell by bed and not room this creates more 'room' entries than the usual Motel or Hotel. By using the Index rooms can be accessed quicker by clicking onto one of the number groups that would include the bed number.

90

To enter a new booking, right click on a blank cell for the bed number and date of arrival, select the option Book Room.

90a

The following screen will display. In here enter all the relevant information required, i.e. Reservation and Guest details. Select save if the booking is for a future date. If the guest is a walk in then Check In can be selected to arrive the guest.

Book Room

Reservation details | Travel Agent

No. Bkgs: 1 Sole Use ☐ Rm Type: 4-6 BED Allotment Bkg ☐

Ignore Room Type/Availability ☐ Allocate next available room ☒ Starting Room #: 002A Do not move ☐

Arrival: 30/10/2013 Night(s): 1 Departure:

Adults: 1 Children: Infants:

Rate Cd: Rate: H/L Rate:

☐ First night disc. ☐ Every night disc.

Booked By: SBS Voucher:

Comment: Source:

ETA: 01.00PM ETD: 10.00AM Area:

Arr Method: Dep Method: Seg:

☐ Unconfirmed ☐ Pre-Authorized 0.00

Guest detail

Surname: Title: First Name:

A/R: Coms: Pay Method:

Passport: Contact:

Address 1: Phone 1:

Address 2: Mobile: ☐ Ok to receive SMS

Country:

Suburb: Email:

State/Region: Postcode: Car:

Use acc: Create new acc ☒

Buttons: Release Allot, Calc Total, Check In, Save, Cancel

91

Arrivals

The Backpacker option has a fast check, this will allow you to post charges and receive payment straight away from the guest. As you can see, only the bare minimum of information is required. To check in a guest with an existing booking, right click on the guest name on the Room Allocation screen. Go to Check In, check details are correct and make any changes required. Select Check In, select to Post Charges Only or Post Charges & Payment.

Check In

Room #: 001C Sole Use ☐ Account: 0000700

Arrival: 30/10/2013 Night(s): 5 Source: A

Departure: 04/11/2013 Rate Cd: 4BED Area: A

Rate: 27.00 High/Low: 27.00 Seg: A

☐ First night disc. ☐ Every night disc. ☐ Pre-Authorized 0.00

Booked By: SBS

Comment:

Voucher:

Preferences: ☐ Neither ☐ Male ☒ Female

Charge type: ☒ Daily ☐ Weekly ☐ Monthly

Surname: FAHEY Title: MS First Name: KATE

A/R: BPT State/Prov: Postal:

Company: BACKPACKER TOURS Phone 1:

Address 1: Mobile:

Address 2: Email:

Country: FF No:

City/Suburb: Car:

Buttons: Check In, Cancel

92

Backpacker Charges

Charges	Amount
ACCOMMODATION	135.00

Total Deposit Amt 0.00 **Grand Total including GST** 135.00

Passport A/R BPT Voucher BPT11889

Advance deposit held 0.00 **Transfer Accom Amt to debtor** 135.00

Total Payment Due 0.00

Total 'CASH' Amt due (Incl. Deposit)

Total 'Other' Amt due 0.00 ☐ **Use adv deposit held**

Other Pay Type

93

Departures

To depart the guest, right click on the guest name on the Room Allocation screen. Select Check Out, following screen will display. If there is a balance owing to be paid select the Pay Type, Post Trans & Chk Out. A receipt will be printed by selecting Print Receipt before checking out.

Backpacker Fast Check Out

Room: 006B Guest: AMELIA BAXTER A/C Bal: 189.00

Please click to select/de-select deposits to be refunded

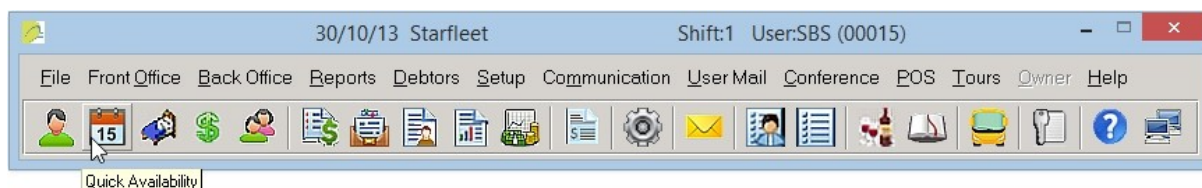
Date	T Type	Description	Amount
------	--------	-------------	--------

Total Deposits to be refunded: 0.00

Check Out Charges	Amount
Other charges	189.00
Total Charges	189.00
Total 'CASH' payment	189.00
Total 'Other' payment	0.00
Pay Type	

94

3.2 Quick Availability



95

Quick Availability is selected from the Front Office menu. Quick Availability displays a summary of the current room types over any 2 week period. Also displayed is the number of arrivals, stays and departures (both in rooms and people), Allotments, occupancy percentage and out of order rooms.

		Quick Availability															
		30/10/2013 T															
		Wed	Thu	Fri	SAT	SUN	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	SAT	SUN	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu
		30	31	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14
		E															
1	KING SPA		3	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
2	HOTEL SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
3	STUDIO DELUXE		1	2	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4	SUITE 2 BED		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
5	SUITE 1 BED		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
6	PENTHOUSE						1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
7	RESTAURANT	C	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
8	CONFERENCE	C	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Day Use			1														
Allotment			2	5	8	9	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11
Available Rooms			13	13	16	16	17	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
Arrivals (Rm)			9	1													
(Pax)			12	1													
Stays (Rm)			3	10	5	3	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
(Pax)			6	16	10	4	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Depart (Rm)			3	2	6	2	1	1									
(Pax)			10	2	7	6	2	1									
Occupied (%)			46	43	21	11	7	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Out of order			2	1	1	1											

96

This defaults to the current date when selected from the Front Office menu, and displays the screen shown above. To go ahead or back 2 weeks at a time, click the forward or back buttons on the top left corner of the window. To select a different date, double click in the date window, and select a new date. This shows a pop up calendar. If you click once, you can edit the date directly. To get back to Today's date click on the T Button. Click on the Events button will take you to the following options. Once there is information entered in these this will display under the date line on the Quick Availability screen.

Events

Enter upcoming local Events in your area.

Stop Sell

The Stop Sell will open a window which stop sell date can be set (refer to Stop Sell).

Peak Period

Opens a window where the Peak Period can be added or removed (refer to Peak Period).

MLOS

Opens a window where the minimum length of stay can be set (refer to MLOS).

Room Alloc

This button links directly to the Room Allocation program, which is detailed in the room allocation heading.

Refresh

The Refresh button is used to refresh the information displayed on the screen with the most up to date data.

Allotment

Takes you directly to the Allotment window.

Print

Click on the print button.

Exit

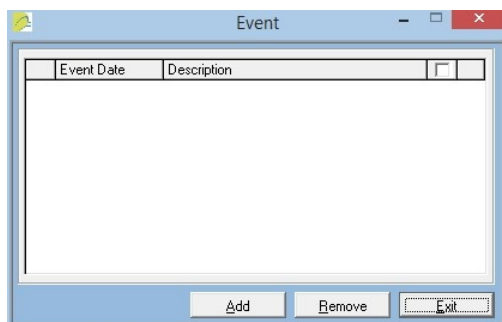
Click exit to exit the menu.

To Book a Room

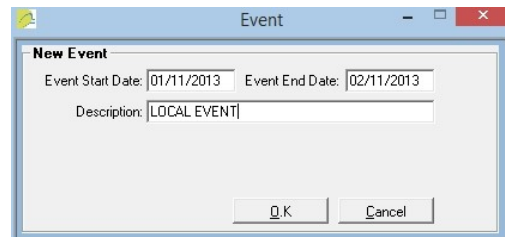
Double click on the room type on the table and the Book Room screen will be displayed. A reservation can be entered with out a room number allocated.

3.2.1 Events

Event dates and descriptions can be entered to alert staff of local events to advise guests. See Room Allocation for information on displaying the description.

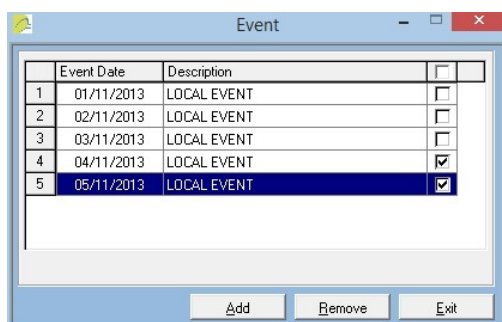


97

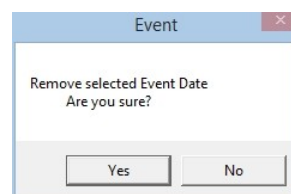


98

Remove Event date entries: tick in the box to select the dates to remove and select Remove. A prompt will appear to confirm Yes or No. This option also applies to [Stop Sell](#)^[69], [Peak Period](#)^[69] and [MLOS](#)^[70].



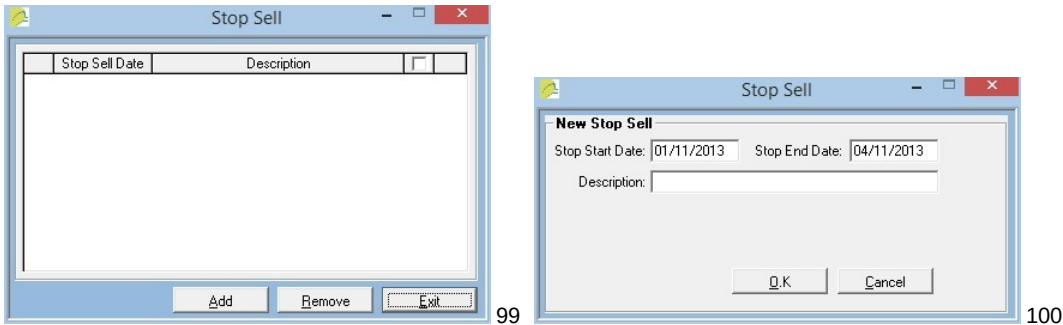
98a



98b

3.2.2 Stop Sell

Stop Sell and Peak Period are indicators to alert your staff that the reservation they are entering falls on a restricted period. For example, you may have a special event in your locality over a long weekend. You could then enter this period as a Peak period to show that you want to remind staff of this. This could minimize the possibility of taking of a 1 night booking when you want only continuous bookings over this period. (See also Minimum Length Of Stay).

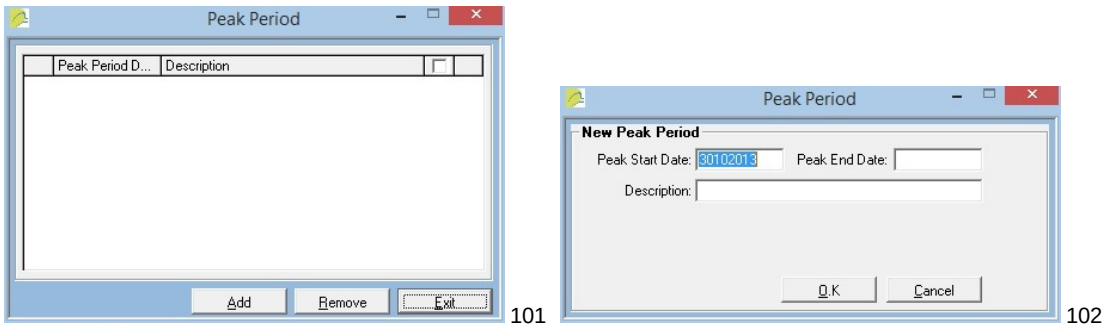


Having entered a Stop Sell, then these dates will then be marked by 'S' or 'SP' accordingly if the same date is chosen for both stop sell and peak period. Examples of both are below. The respective screens appear when you select the Peak Period or Stop Sell buttons in the Room Availability screen. Click the 'Add' button to add a new Stop Sell period, or if you wish to delete an entry, click on that entry to select it (the entry will be highlighted), then click on the 'Remove' button. The screen on the right is displayed when you click the 'Add' button. Enter the new Stop Sell date and description and click OK to add it.

3.2.3 Peak Period

Stop Sell and Peak Period are indicators to alert your staff that the reservation they are entering falls on a restricted period. For example, you may have a special event in your locality over a long weekend. You could then enter this period as a Peak period to show that you want to remind staff of this. This could minimize the possibility of taking of a 1 night booking when you want only continuous bookings over this period. (See also Minimum Length Of Stay).

Having entered a Peak Period, then these dates will then be marked by 'P' accordingly, or 'SP' if the same date is chosen for both Peak Period or Stop Sell.



Click the 'Add' button to add a new Peak Period or if you wish to delete an entry, click on that entry to select it (the entry will be highlighted), then click on the 'Remove' button. The screen on the right is displayed when you click the 'Add' button. Enter the new Stop Peak Period date and description and click OK to add it.

3.2.4 MLOS

Minimum Length Of Stay is an indicator to alert your staff that the reservation they are entering falls on a restricted period. For example, you may have a special event in your locality over a long weekend. You could then enter this period as a Minimum Length Of Stay period to show that you want to remind staff of this. This could minimize the possibility of taking of a 1 night booking when you want only continuous bookings. In the Quick Availability screen, select the MLOS button and the following screen will appear.

	Start Date	Min Nights	Description
1	01/11/2013	2	LOCAL EVENT

103

104

Click the 'Add' button to add a new Minimum Length of Stay period or, if you wish to delete an entry, click on that entry to select it (the entry will be highlighted), then click on the 'Remove' button. The screen on the right is displayed when you click the 'Add' button.

3.2.5 Compulsory Days

This option can be used by properties when minimum consecutive nights are required when booking, i.e. Friday and Saturday nights or Sunday to Thursday inclusive.

	Start Date	End Date	Description	Start Day	En
--	------------	----------	-------------	-----------	----

104a

104b

3.2.6 Room Alloc

Refer to [Room Allocation](#) ⁷⁶ for information.

3.2.7 Allotment

Allotments will allocate a number of rooms by room type for either Web Bookings or Group and Company bookings. Once these rooms have been allocated Starfleet 'knows' these are to be held for the client so these number of rooms can only be booked for the client.

Click on the Quick Availability screen to access the Allotment button (this is located at the bottom right hand side of the screen), this will display the following screen. Then click in the client code and type the first few characters of the client debtor code. These details will appear in a drop down screen, select the client. These will first need to be setup in Debtors Information. Refer to [Debtor Information](#) ¹⁵⁶ for instructions.

Add Allotment

Start date: 01/11/2013 Night(s): 365 End Date: 01/11/2014 Release day: 00

Room Type	Tot Rm	No Req
1 -KING SPA	6	
2 -HOTEL SPA	6	
3 -STUDIO DELUXE	5	
4 -SUITE 2 BED	6	
5 -SUITE 1 BED	4	
6 -PENTHOUSE	1	
7 -RESTAURANT	1	
8 -CONFERENCE	1	

Release Previous Days Only ☒ Auto extend ☐

Not enough rooms available on the following days. Allotment added upto max rooms available

Date	Room Type	Rooms Requested	Allotments Added
07/11/2013	1	3	2
07/11/2013	3	3	2
01/11/2013	6	1	0
02/11/2013	6	1	0
07/11/2013	6	1	0

Save Exit

107

The Allotment screen will now display the total number of rooms on Allotment for this client.

Allotment

Client Code: STAR Phone: +61 3 9428 4333 Contact:
 Client Name: STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS Fax: +61 3 86400446 E-Mail: sales@starfleet-software.com.au

Available allotment **Bookings made**

Date: 31/10/2013

Room Type	31	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
1 KING SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
2 HOTEL SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	6	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
3 STUDIO DELU		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4 SUITE 2 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
5 SUITE 1 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
6 PENTHOUSE				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
7 RESTAURANT																					
8 CONFERENCE																					

Total allotment made:

1 KING SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
2 HOTEL SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	6	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
3 STUDIO DELU		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4 SUITE 2 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
5 SUITE 1 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
6 PENTHOUSE				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
7 RESTAURANT																					
8 CONFERENCE																					

Double click on the cell to update the allotments

Release day: 0 Previous Days Only ☒ Auto extend ☐

Add Release Exit

108

Go back to the Quick Availability screen and double click on the Allotment line to open the Allotment information.

The Allotment screen will also show dates highlighted Red when overbooked. This will indicate the number of rooms on Allotment are not available, these rooms must be released from the Allotment.

Allotment

Client Code: Phone: +61 3 9428 4333 Contact:
 Client Name: STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS Fax: +61 3 86400446 E-Mail: sales@starfleet-software.com.au

Available allotment | Bookings made

Date: 01/11/2013

		Fri	SAT	SUN	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	SAT	SUN	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	SAT	SUN	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu
Room Type		01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
1 KING SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
2 HOTEL SPA		3	3	3	3	3	3	6	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
3 STUDIO DELU		3	3	3	3	3	3	5	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4 SUITE 2 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
5 SUITE 1 BED		2	2	2	2	2	2	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
6 PENTHOUSE				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
7 RESTAURANT																						
8 CONFERENCE																						

Release day:
 Previous Days Only ☒
 Auto extend ☐

111a

3.2.7.2 Release Allotment

Release - PART

Click on Allotment button to display Allotment screen (see Screen 72). Select the client details, same as Add Allotment. Click on the Release button to display the following screen. Select Part Option, enter the dates to be released, select the room type (or All), enter the number of rooms to be reduced.

Release Allotment

Option

☐ All
☒ Part

Part Release Option

Start date: 01/11/2013 Night(s):
 End date: 02/11/2013
 Room Type:
 Reduced by: rooms
 Enter number to reduce by. Zero will remove the allotment.

112

Release - ALL

To release All of an allotment follow the above steps to selecting the All Option. Click on Continue and the following prompt will ask to select Yes or No. Date range can not be selected with this option. Releasing All will release ALL ALLOTMENTS.

Release Allotment

Option

☒ All
☐ Part

Part Release Option

Start date: 01/11/2013 Night(s):
 End date: 02/11/2013
 Room Type:
 Reduced by: rooms
 Enter number to reduce by. Zero will remove the allotment.

113

Release Allotment

Release all allotments for this client
 Are you sure?

114

3.2.7.3 Company Allotment

Allotments can (for example) be made for a Company that will require regular bookings. The allotment is created in the same way as the above Web Booking allotments. The difference with these type of allotments is the booking is being created in the Front Office, not through a website link or Channel Manager. Once again there must be Debtor Information created for the Company.

When the group confirms the rooms required then go to the group information icon and create a group booking, refer to: [Group Information](#) ⁸⁵.

When the booking is created tick the Allotment Bkg in the reservation screen and type the Debtor Information code in the blank field. This will then link the bookings made to the Company allotment.

New Master Reservation [STARFLEET]

Acc#: [] Res#: [] Booked: 31/10/2013 Changed: 31/10/2013 Status: []

Reservation detail | Folio | Extras | Deposit plan/Comments | Housekeeping/Travel Agent | Running Sheet

Arrival: 31/10/2013 Night(s): 1 Source: []

Departure: [] Total Rooms: [] Area: []

Adults: [] Children: [] Infants: [] FOC: [] Charge type: ☒ Daily ☐ Weekly ☐ Monthly

Twin share: [] Single: [] Triple: [] Voucher: []

Rate Cd: [] Rate: [] High/Low Rate: []

Booked By: SBS

Comment: []

ETA: 03.00PM ETD: 10.00AM

Arr Method: [] Dep Method: []

Allotment Bkg ☒ STAR

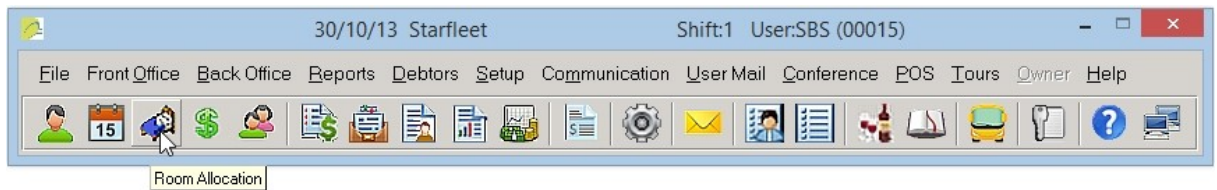
	Rm Type	Booked	Used
1	KING SPA	0	0
2	HOTEL SPA	0	0
3	STUDIO DELUXE	0	0
4	SUITE 2 BED	0	0
5	SUITE 1 BED	0	0
6	PENTHOUSE	0	0
7	RESTAURANT	0	0
8	CONFERENCE	0	0

Room Availability Room Allotment

Release Allot Calc Total Update rates Rooming List Save Delete Exit

115

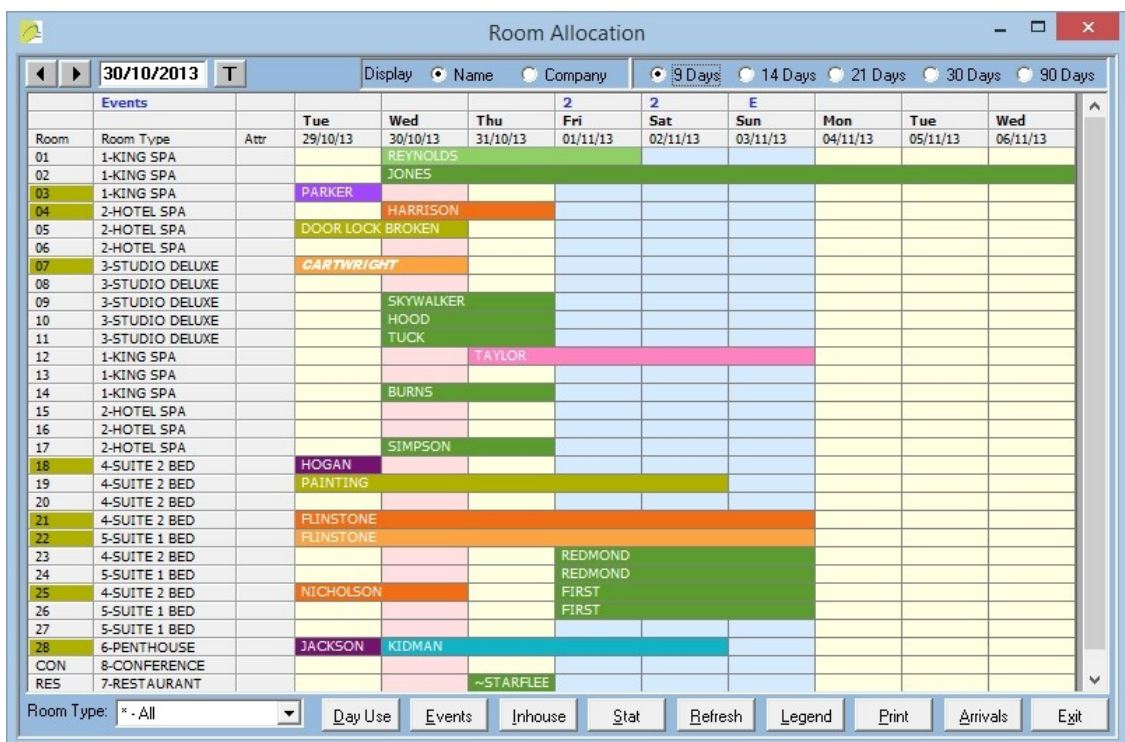
3.3 Room Allocation



116

Select 'Room Allocation' from the 'Front Office' Menu. The screen will default to today's date. To change this, double click on the date window, and select a new date.

If you have NOT given the Guest reservation a room number, there will be NO entry shown here!

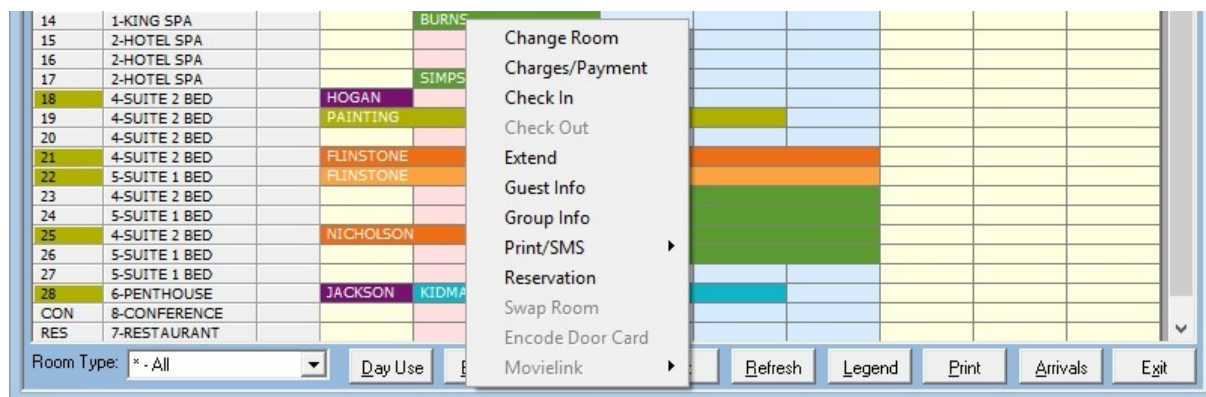


117

Click the left or right arrows next to date to go forward or back a week

- Click on the **T** Button to get back to Today's Date.
- You can also select one Room Type or All to display.
- Select the Day Use button to display the Day Use Guests for the day, see [Day Bookings](#) ^[45].
- Click on the **Inhouse Guest** button to show a list of current In house Guests.
- Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the information displayed on the screen with the most up to date data.
- Click on the **Legend** to see what the colors are assigned to.
- Click on **Print** to print the screen.
- Click on the **Arrivals** button to show of list of the days arrivals. Guests can also be arrived with this option. Refer to [Guest Check In](#) ^[46]
- Hover the mouse or click on any Guest name for Tool Tip details.
- You can also double click on the room number and go directly to room maintenance for that room. From here you can place a room on maintenance. Refer to [Room Maintenance](#) ^[79]
- If the screen is too small resize by clicking on the lower right hand corner and dragging to suitable size. The screen will remain at this size when opening again.

Right click on any In House, not yet arrived or departed guest for the following quick access.



117c

Change Room: Enter the new room number in the **to** field and click on the **ok** button. If a different room type a prompt will display to confirm.

Charges/Payments: Go to the Charges/Payments screen.

Check In: Select to Check In guest. If arrived this won't be highlighted.

Check Out: Select to Check Out guest. If departed this won't be highlighted.

Extend: Select to Extend reservation by entering the numbers of nights.

Guest Info: Select to go to Guest Information screen.

Group Info: Select to go to Group Info, will only be highlighted if guest is part of a Group booking.

Print/SMS: Select to print Guest Account, Guest Registration, Confirmation Letter and Guest Voucher or send SMS.

Reservation: Select to go to reservation screen to edit details.

Swap Room: This is only available if the guests are arriving and departing on the same days. Encode Door Card and Movie links are only available with the relevant modules.

Refer to [Unallocated Booking](#)¹⁰⁶ if there is the following warning on the Room Allocation screen.



117b

To display statistics on today's date, click on the **Stat** button located at the bottom of the Room Allocation Screen.. The following screen will be displayed. The statistics shown apply **ONLY** to the Room Allocation date.

Room Allocation										
30/10/2013 T		Rooms Available	Rooms Occupied	On Maintenance	Arrivals	Not Arrived	Departures	Not Departed		
		14 50%	12 43%	2 7%	9	8	3	3		
Events		Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed
Room	Room Type	Attr	29/10/13	30/10/13	31/10/13	01/11/13	02/11/13	03/11/13	04/11/13	05/11/13

118

Room Allocation summary

Click on the date range views of **9 Days**, **14 Days**, **21 Days**, **30 Days** and **90 Days** to view a summary of the Room Allocation screen.

3.3.1 Notes for a Day

In either Room Allocation or Quick Availability you are able to write a note for any day that is displayed. All you have to do is double click on the day you wish to write a note for and the following screen will be displayed. If notes exist for the day, they are displayed on this screen. To add a note, click on the Add button and enter as many lines of text you need to. To delete or update a note, click on the lines you need and click either Update or Delete.

Line	Note	Date
1	LOCAL EVENT	30/10/2013

120

If there are notes for the day entered the 'day' will be displayed as orange.

121

3.3.2 Walk In's

Refer to [Guest Reservation - Quick](#) ³⁰ on how to enter quick reservation.

If the room is still occupied i.e the previous guest has not checked out yet then you will be presented with the orange warning box at the top of the screen advising you that the previous guest has not checked out yet. Select another room or check out the current guest if they have departed.

123

3.3.3 Multiple Bookings

To enter multiple bookings for the one person or one company quickly. Refer to: [Guest Reservation - Quick](#)^[30] Insert the number of bookings you want to make in the top left hand corner. If more than one room type is to be booked tick the Ignore Room Type/Availability option. This will book the next vacant rooms available no matter what room type they are.

124

Enter the booking details as you would with any other booking and Save. Each booking will have it's own account and reservation number. **All bookings will have the same name and address details when the booking is created.** To change the guest name and address details on each reservation go to each Guest Information and update details. These bookings are **NOT** linked to a Group Master account. If a Group booking is required refer to [Group Information](#)^[85].

3.3.4 Room Maintenance

125

To place a room on maintenance, double click on the room number in the Room Allocation screen. Rooms are placed on and taken off maintenance automatically, according to the start and end dates entered. All maintenance rooms are displayed on the Housekeeping Report.

To put a room out to maintenance, you must enter the following:-

- **Maintenance Description:** Enter a description of the maintenance required in this room. (Max 30 characters)
- **Start date:** Enter the date the maintenance period begins, in DDMMYYYY format.
- **End date:** Enter the date the maintenance period ends, in DDMMYYYY format.

This will take the room out of availability for the dates that have been entered. This room will show as out of order in the Allocation Screen. Rooms on Maintenance are not calculated into Occupancy Statistic as being occupied. To print a report by Current or History refer to [Room Maintenance Report](#)^[82]. To delete, change or edit room refer to [Room](#)^[184] in [Set Up](#)^[178]

3.4 Housekeeping

Housekeeping is selected in the Front Office menu options.

126

You have the choice of displaying a range of rooms or all the rooms. Leave the starting room number and finishing room number field blank to display all. You also have the choice to select which wing you wish to print. Leaving this blank will display all the rooms.

Select **Weekly** to display the following report. This option will display each day for the following week. If there is a Room Description entered in the Room set up, this will display over the Room Type, (i.e. the room may be a Family Room but the description might be Magnolia Room).

Room	Pax	Comments	Clean Type
WEDNESDAY 30/10/2013			
03 - KING SPA	2		C - Check Out
28 - PENTHOUSE	5		C - Check Out
18 - SUITE 2 BED	3		C - Check Out
07 - STUDIO DELUXE	1		M - Major
25 - SUITE 2 BED	1		D - Daily
21 - SUITE 2 BED	4		D - Daily
THURSDAY 31/10/2013			
07 - STUDIO DELUXE	1		C - Check Out
25 - SUITE 2 BED	1		C - Check Out
14 - KING SPA	1		D - Daily
17 - HOTEL SPA	1		D - Daily
09 - STUDIO DELUXE	1		D - Daily
10 - STUDIO DELUXE	1		D - Daily
11 - STUDIO DELUXE	1		D - Daily

127

Selecting **Continue** will display the following daily report. The Print Option -> Brief will not display the Rate when the report is printed.

Housekeeping

Room	Guest Name	A/C #	Packa...	Adult	Ch + ...	Arrival	Departure	C	Wing	Rate	A/C
01	Next: 03.00PM-REYNOLDS	550		2		30/10/2...	02/11/2...	C			
02								C			
03	PARKER MR STEVEN	557	KSP	2		27/10/2...	30/10/2...	D		90.00	
04	HARRISON MS HELEN	564	HSP	2		30/10/2...	01/11/2...	D		110.00	
05	SMITH MS SUSAN										
06	**DOOR LOCK BROKEN					29/10/2...	31/10/2...	C			
07								C			
08	CARTWRIGHT MRS LINDA	558	DST	1		26/10/2...	31/10/2...	D		80.00	
09								C			
10	Next: 03.00PM-SKYWALKER	554		1		30/10/2...	01/11/2...	C			
11	Next: 03.00PM-HOOD	555		1		30/10/2...	01/11/2...	C			
12	Next: 03.00PM-TUCK	556		1		30/10/2...	01/11/2...	C			
13								C			
14								C			
15	Next: 03.00PM-BURNS	552		1		30/10/2...	01/11/2...	C			
16								C			

Display Options

☒ In-House ☐ Full Listing

Print Options

☐ Detail ☒ Brief ☐ Double Space

Newspaper

Update Rms

Print

Exit

128

Newspaper

If your guests can order a newspaper select the drop down option on the Guest Information screen to choose the requested newspaper.

Comment:

Status:

News:

Statistics

Stays

Nights

Day Use

Cancellation

No Show

Last Rate

Total Spend

Room Revenue

Book Room

Duplicate Acc

New

Save

Delete

Notes/Mail

Account

Reservations

Transactions

Arrivals

Departures

Charges/Pmt

Exit

129a

The selected newspapers will display in the Newspaper Report to be printed.

Newspaper Report

Newspaper Report For : 30/10/2013

Room #	Newspaper	Room #	Newspaper	Room #	Newspaper	Room #	Newspaper	Room #	Newspaper
01		21	THE SUN						
02		22							
03		23							
04		24							
05		25	FINANCIAL R						
06		26							
07		27							
08		28							
09		CON							
10		RES							
11									
12									
13									
14									
15									
16									
17									
18									
19									
20									

THE AGE

0

THE SUN

1

WEEKLY TIMES

0

FINANCIAL REVIE

1

0

Print

Exit

129

Refer to System Configuration->Daily Update ([Daily Update](#))²⁰⁵ to setup Newspaper information. **Update Rms** refer to [Update Rooms](#)⁸²

3.4.1 Room Maintenance Report

Click on the **Maint Report** button and the following window will display.

130

In this window we have the option to print either a Current or History report by Date Range or Room Range. Click on Print for a hard copy.

131

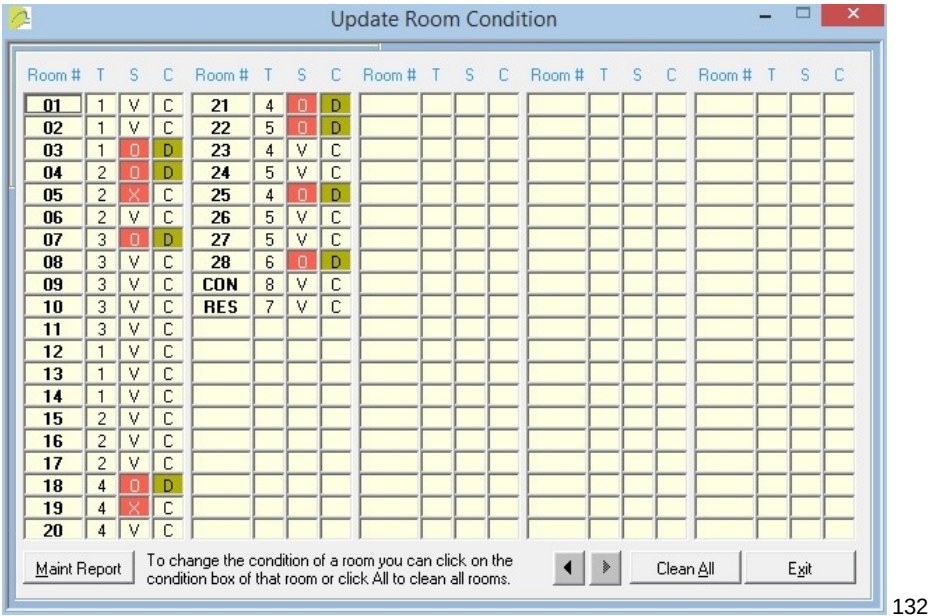
3.4.2 Update Rooms

This Screen enables you to change the status of individual or multiple rooms.

All room numbers, their type, status, and condition are displayed on the screen, when the 'Update Rooms' button is selected.

Double click on the condition ('C column') of the room you wish to change the condition. Click on 'Clean All' to clean all.

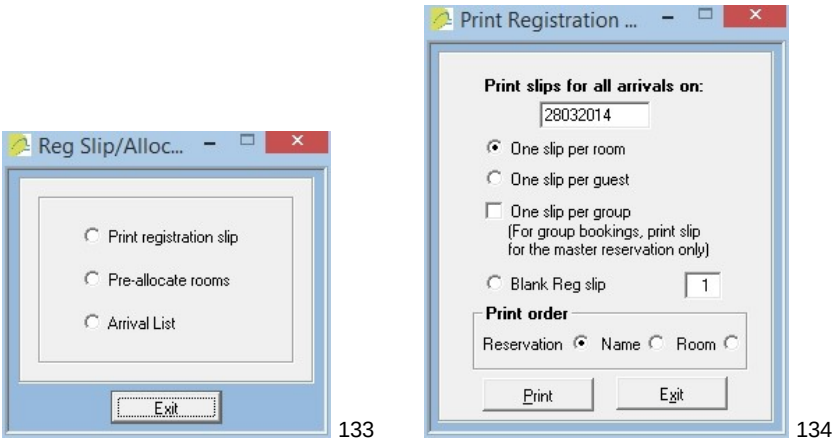
V = Vacant, O = Occupied, C = Clean, D = Dirty, X = Maintenance



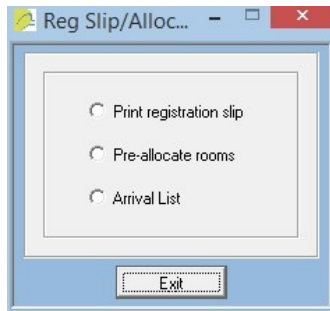
To put a room on maintenance refer to [Room Maintenance](#)

3.5 Registration Slips/Allocate Rooms

Select **Print Reg Slip/Allocate Rooms** from the Front Office menu. This enables you to print Registration slips for any given date. Enter the date, **One Slip per room** is selected by default, change the selection for your requirements and select the **Print order**: Reservation, Name or Room. To print a registration slip for a particular guest, find the guest on the Room Allocation screen, right click and go to Print -> Guest Registration, then click on OK once.

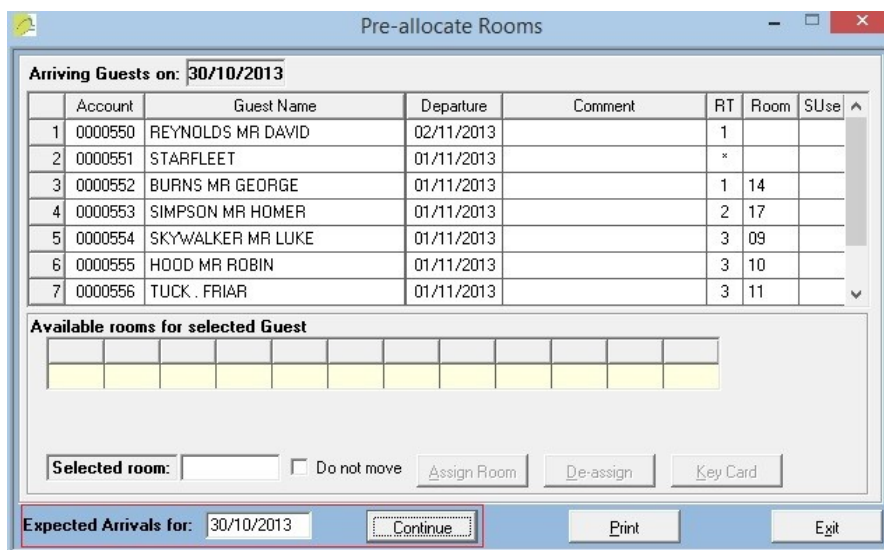


3.5.1 Pre Allocate Rooms



135

Enter the arrival date and click continue. You can then select each reservation and allocate a room to it. The available rooms will be displayed.



136

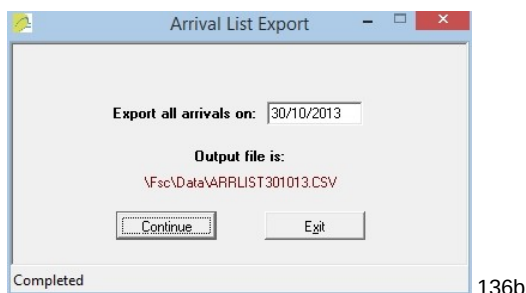
3.5.2 Arrival List

The arrival List for a date can be export to .csv file. Enter the date required, select Continue.



136a

The location of the Output File will be displayed.



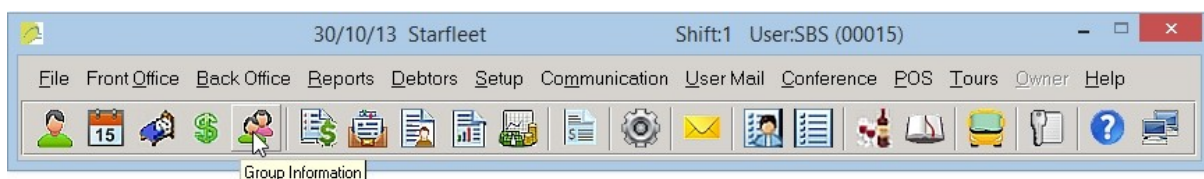
136b

Browse to the Output File, use your default program to open the .csv file.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	
1	Res#	Room Booked	Surname	Title	Firstname	Arrival Date	Departure Date	ETA	ETD	Adults	Children	Rate	Chg Type
2	577		REYNOLDS	MR	DAVID	30/10/2013	02/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	2	0	200	D
3	578		STARFLEET			30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	5	0	0	D
4	579	14	BURNS	MR	GEORGE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	130	D
5	580	17	SIMPSON	MR	HOMER	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	130	D
6	581	9	SKYWALKER	MR	LUKE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	130	D
7	582	10	HOOD	MR	ROBIN	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	130	D
8	583	11	TUCK	0	FRIAR	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	130	D
9	584		KIDMAN	MS	NICOLE	30/10/2013	03/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	2	0	220	D
10	596	4	HARRISON	MS	HELEN	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	2	0	110	D
11	597		JONES		BILL	30/10/2013	29/12/2013	03.00PM	10.00AM	1	0	80	D

136c

3.6 Group Information



137

Group Information is accessed from the Front Office menu, or the shortcut icon on the menu bar.

The Groups section is very similar to the single Guest Information screens. It is suggested you become familiar with the individual Guest Information program first.

Some of the functions only available to you in the Group Menu are:

- Create a new group.
- Change an existing group.
- Duplicate an existing group to a new group account.
- Delete a group.
- Add rooming lists (either summary or full).
- Allow for the individual to be charged or all charges to the group master.
- Allow for pre and post stays for individual group members.
- Allows for additional charges (i.e.: BBQ Lunch) to be viewed on the booking sheet and automatically posted with the daily update.
- Deposit (payment) schedule.
- Automatic check ALL or SOME in.
- Automatic check ALL or SOME out.

Next to the suburb and postcode fields are the postcode lookup icons. Depending on the country selected in the country field the suburb, state and postcode can be selected from the postcode lookup screen. For more information click on this [postcode lookup](#) ²⁵ link, or click on the postcode icon next to the suburb or postcode fields.

The screenshot shows the 'Group Information' window. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Group Acc:** Text field with a magnifying glass icon.
- Group Name:** Text field with a question mark icon.
- A/R:** Text field.
- Company:** Text field.
- Address 1:** Text field.
- Address 2:** Text field.
- Country:** Dropdown menu.
- Suburb:** Text field with a magnifying glass icon.
- State/Region:** Text field.
- Postcode:** Text field with a magnifying glass icon.
- Comment:** Text area.
- Pay Method:** Dropdown menu.
- Commission:** Dropdown menu.
- Contact:** Text field.
- Phone 1:** Text field.
- Phone 2:** Text field.
- Mobile:** Text field.
- E-mail:** Text field.
- Balance:** Text field.
- Last Activity:** Text field.
- User:** Text field.
- Credit Card:** Checkbox.
- Title:** Text field.
- Fax:** Text field.
- FF No:** Text field.
- Ok to receive SMS:** Checkbox.
- Status:** Dropdown menu.

Buttons at the bottom of the form: **Book Rooms**, **Duplicate Acc**, **New**, **Save**, **Delete**, **Notes/Mail**.

Navigation bar at the bottom: **Account**, **Reservations**, **Transactions**, **Arrivals**, **Departures**, **Charges/Pmt**, **Exit**.

138

3.6.1 Add Group Account

To create a new group account, click on the button marked **New** from the Group Information screen. As you can see, this is virtually identical with the Guest Information screen.

This screenshot is identical to the previous one, but with a mouse cursor hovering over the **New** button. A tooltip is visible, displaying the text: **Create new group**.

139

Group Account

The system generates the Group Account numbers automatically. Each Group Account will have one reservation. To create a new reservation for a returning Group the Group Account can be duplicated. Search for the Group Information by typing in the Group name, select the Group from the drop down list. Click on the **Duplicate Acc** button. The Group details will then be duplicated and a new account number generated. Create a new reservation for the dates and number of guests and rooms required.

This is a close-up of the bottom buttons of the 'Group Information' window. The **Duplicate Acc** button is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

139a

Last activity

The date this account was last altered is displayed automatically for an existing account, and as this a new account nothing will be displayed.

Balance

Any outstanding balance on this account is displayed automatically for an existing account, and on a new account, nothing will be displayed.

Group name

Enter the Group name.

User

The system stores the last person to modify and to create a Guest's account. Therefore, m12c12 was created by user number 12, and last modified by user number 12.

A/R

Enter the Accounts Receivable (Debtors) code. As you key in the A/R code, a list of Debtors will be displayed for you to select from. When a valid Debtor account code is selected, the system will ask if you would like the address in the Group account updated to correspond with the address in the Debtor account. Select **Yes** to update the address or **No** to fill in the details manually.

If a Debtor account is entered, any comments associated with the Debtor account will be displayed at the bottom of the screen. Comments on Debtor accounts are a useful way of storing and displaying information such as rates to be charged, or any other special notes.

Company name

Enter the Guest's Company Name if applicable. Otherwise leave blank and press **<tab>** to move to the next prompt. It is recommended that a company name is entered, where applicable, for statistical reporting and company searches. There is also the option on Room Allocation screen to display reservations by Name or Company. For a casual booking this field can also be used to enter the Guest ID number such as passport number or YHA number to enable searches by this number.

Address 1

Enter the Guest or Company address line1.

Address 2

Enter the Guest or Company address line2.

Suburb, State\Region, Postcode

Enter the Guest suburb, State and Postcode, or double click on the icon next to the suburb or postcode fields to display the postcode lookup window. Depending on the country selected in the country field the suburb, state and postcode can be selected from the postcode lookup screen. For more information click on this [postcode lookup](#) ²⁵ link.

Comments

Enter any comments you would like displayed on this account other than those to be entered when making a reservation. Remember comments entered here will be displayed whenever future reservations are made using this account. (eg: prefers Courtyard Room, Lights on prior to arrival, etc)

Pay method

Press **<tab>** for **'Cash'** , or select the down arrow key to enter an alternate payment type.

Credit Card

Click on the Credit Card button to enter the Guest's credit card number. This field is only applicable if you entered a credit card, (for example VISA) as the payment method. When there are details saved there is an orange tick to show there are details here.

Commission

Press the Down arrow to select from a list of commission % for the amount you wish to apply to this Groups accommodation. When a commission % is entered in a Group account, the 'DAILY UPDATE' will post an accommodation charge and then post a commission depending on the commission associated with the code entered in the account. E.g. if a group account has a commission of 10.00% the transactions posted by the Daily Update will be:

DATE	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT	BALANCE
28/01/10	3 ACCOMMODATION	35.00	135.00
28/01/10	O COMMISSION	13.50	121.50

Commission % is created by selecting SETUP menu then, selecting PAY TYPES/DISCOUNTS. If the amount is not setup, go back to the setup menu and enter the % amount in DISCOUNTS.

Contact

Enter a contact name or a card number, if this client is a discount card holder (some properties use this as a means of indication that some of their Guest's have a privilege card). This field can also be used for comments or any other useful information, as it is displayed when performing a name search.

Phone

Enter a contact telephone number. Up to three phone numbers can be entered.

Fax

Enter a contact fax number.

FF No

Can be used for a Privilege Card number.

Email

Enter an email address, usually one for the Group contact.

Status

This field is used to state whether this account is a Normal, Bad, Exclude and VIP. If a B-Bad Account, when entering the guest name in a booking then a warning will alert you that they are a Bad account. You can then decide if you wish to continue with the reservation or refuse the booking. E-Exclude Account, then do not send this guest any mail outs. These status's, including VIP can be selected or omitted when using the Guest Mailing List, see [Mailing List](#)¹⁴⁴.

3.6.2 Add Group Reservation

Click on the **Book Rooms** button once. The following window will be displayed. As you can see, its also very similar to the individual guest reservation window. This has been completed with arrival, departure and number of nights. The total rooms and number of guests. The Rate code is 0.00, refer to following information for Rate. The number of the room types required has also been entered.

Room Type	Booked	Used
1 KING SPA	0	0
2 HOTEL SPA	2	0
3 STUDIO DELUXE	2	0
4 SUITE 2 BED	0	0
5 SUITE 1 BED	1	0
6 PENTHOUSE	0	0
7 RESTAURANT	0	0
8 CONFERENCE	0	0

140

Reservation

The computer generates the reservation numbers automatically.

Arrival

Enter the arrival date in 'DDMMYY' format. You may also double click on the field where you would enter the date and a calendar will pop up and you can select the date by using the calendar. When entering the number of nights and departure dates, the room availability screen will appear so you can see which rooms are available for the dates requested. If some Guests are arriving or departing on different days then the arrival date entered must be the earliest arrival date and the departure date will be the latest date of departure. The different dates are then amended on the individual guest reservation.

Nights

At this prompt you can enter the number of nights a Guest is staying and the departure date will be automatically calculated. You can also **<tab>** past this field and enter the departure date manually.

Departure

Enter the departure date in 'DDMMYY' format. If the period of stay includes a "Stop Sell" or "Peak Period", the system will prompt you to confirm the dates entered.

Total Rooms

Enter the number of rooms the group will be using, including any Conference rooms.

Adults

Enter the number of adults in the group.

Children

Enter the number of children (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero.

Infants

Enter the number of infants (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero.

FOC

Enter the number of Free of Charge guests (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero.

Twin Share

Enter the number of Twin Share accommodation (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero. You only need to enter anything here when you are using a package. This is to ensure the package charges correctly.

Single

Enter the number of Single accommodation (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero. You only need to enter anything here when you are using a package. This is to ensure the package charges correctly.

Triple

Enter the number of Triple accommodation (if any) in the group. Press **<enter>** for the default value of zero. You only need to enter anything here when you are using a package. This is to ensure the package charges correctly.

Rate Code

A zero amount can be entered for the Rate. When allocating the individual rooms to the reservation a Rate Code can be entered then. This will allow for multiple guests and different Room types required for the reservation. See [Quick Allocation](#)⁹².

If a package code is entered, the system will automatically calculate the rate based on the number of adults, children and infants entered in the reservation. If the package you select is a non-repetitive package. (ie: different transactions are posted automatically on the days you specified when the package was created.). The system will check to ensure the total number of room nights on the reservation, is equal to the number of room nights specified in the package setup.

If the number of nights entered for this reservation is out of the range of the package, you will be prompted to re-enter the departure date.

NOTE: If you enter a package and then change the rate, the difference is automatically taken off the accommodation component only. If the booking has a discount rate applied, then the same applies.

Rate

Entering the rate at the main screen for the group booking will charge a bulk amount only for the entire group onto the master invoice. If a package rate code is selected then the package will be broken down into the categories as per the package however only the one main line of charges will show.

The preferred procedure is when entering the rooming list is to enter the rate code on each individual room booking and select the check box to charge the guest or Group. If the guest has all charges to the room, on departure specific charges or all can be "collected" back to the Group Master. Refer to [Group Charges & Payments](#)⁹⁹

The rate entered is the GST inclusive amount. The system calculates the rate depending on room type, the number of adults, and the number of children. If rates includes GST then in a property which provides predominantly long term (28 days or more) accommodation, this rate is also depends on the guests length of stays, as a Long Term rate will have a different GST rate, refer to [Tax/Currency](#)^[215]. This rate is displayed on the screen. (This depends on the rates being entered for the current season in the 'ROOM TYPE SETUP' option on the SETUP menu.) At this point you have 2 options:

1. Enter the desired room rate to over ride the rate displayed.
2. Press **<enter>** to accept the rate displayed.

If your property is providing a predominantly long-term accommodation, please make sure you enter a correct long-term rate (which includes the reduced GST) for 28 days or more bookings.

Booked By

Type operator initials or name, defaults to the logged in User I.D.

Comment

Enter any comments regarding the reservation that are applicable.

Note: The booked by or comment line can be displayed on the housekeeping report.

ETA

Enter the estimated time of arrival if known. This is a free field, so you type in either a 24hr clock or use am/pm times.

ETD

Enter the estimated time of departure if known. This is a free field, so you type in either a 24hr clock or use am/pm times.

If standard check in and check out times are set in the 'System Configuration', these times will be displayed at the ETA and ETD prompt respectively. You can then just press <enter> to accept the or modify them for different times.

Source

Enter or select the appropriate source for this reservation

Area

If enabled, enter or select the appropriate area for this booking.

Seg

If enabled, enter or select the appropriate segment for this booking

The total number of rooms (including Conference rooms) MUST be selected now. Select the Room Type and enter the number required in the 'Booked' field. <tab> to the next Room Type required if more than one.

'Used' field will show the number of rooms once allocated. Refer to following [Quick Allocation](#)^[92] information.

Booked

This is the number of rooms you have booked for this group

Used

This is the number of rooms you have allocated in your rooming list.

The Reservation can be accessed again once saved by clicking on the Reservation button at the bottom of the Group Information screen. To edit details open the Room List by clicking on **Upd Rm List**.

140a

3.6.3 Quick Allocation

You can select the rooms by room number with this option. Once the number of rooms required have been entered in the booking screen and saved, exit will take you back to the Group Information Reservations screen. Select the **Upd Rm List** button. When the Group Rooming List screen opens select the Quick Alloc button on the right hand side of the screen.

Click on room type (see following screen), this will display the room numbers available to select. Make sure you have the correct rate code and charge to details first. Select the room numbers required then Continue to complete then Exit. This will then take you back to the Group Rooming List. Refer to [Group Rooming List](#) ⁹³ to continue.

While still in this screen the guest details, if known, can be updated one room at a time. Alternatively allocate the room numbers, Continue and Exit. Once back in the Rooming List screen select each reservation one at a time and update with guest name, no of pax, rate and arrival, departure dates if different from the Group Master and Grp Guest Charge To.

141

3.6.4 Group Rooming List

If you have the names of the individuals within this group you can setup the group rooming list now. Click on the Upd Rm List button once . The following window will be displayed. The guest name can now be edited in the lower part of the screen, select Save to update the name. Click on the remaining lines and edit as required.

You will note as you enter through the rooming list that the amount of rooms that are in the **FREE** field reduces with every room booked. This is very helpful when dealing with a conference where all the delegates are booking rooms individually, you always know how many are left if the Coordinator calls to ask.

Group Rooming List

Group Acc: 0000565 / 0000600 Group Name: STARFLEET Balance:

Arrival: 01/11/2013 Departure: 03/11/2013 Rate: 0.00 Package:

	Account	Name	Arrival	Departure	Status	Room
1	0000566	SIMPSON, MR HOMER	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	04
2	0000567	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	05
3	0000568	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	07
4	0000569	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	08
5	0000570	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	27

Rm Type	Booked	Free
2	2	0
3	2	0
5	1	0

Account: 0000567 Surname: STARFLEET Title: First Name: Acc: 0000567

Arrival: 01/11/2013 Night(s): 2 Departure: 03/11/2013 Rm Type: 2-HOTEL SPA Bal:

Adults: 1 Children: 0 Infants: 0 FOC: 0 Rate Cd: CON

Pkg Rate: 130.00 Charge To: ☒ Guest ☐ Group (excl. Extras) ☐ None ☐ Group (incl. Extras)

Comment: ETA: 03.00PM Arr Method: ETD: 10.00AM Dep Method: Pre-Authorized: POS Credit: 0.00

Room #: 05 Sole Use: Do not move: Unconfirmed:

Rooms: KSS

Buttons: Save, New, Quick Alloc, Delete, Print List, Remove, Exit

142

Charge To: There are four options to choose from:

Charge To: ☒ Guest ☐ Group (excl. Extras) ☐ None ☐ Group (incl. Extras)

143

- **Guest** - Will post all charges onto the individual guest's account.
- **Group (excl. Extras)** - Will charge the reservation rate to the Group Master account. If extras have been entered on the individual account these will be charged to the individual guest account.
- **None** - The rate is display only, no rate amount will be charged on to the Group or individual accounts.
- **Group (incl. Extras)** - Will post all charges to the Group Master account, including all extras.

NOTE: These settings are only applied with Night Audit charging. This will not affect or change posting manual transactions manually. The default for this is set in system configuration.

Save

Select to save any changes made.

New

Select New to add new reservation to the Group.

Quick Alloc

To quickly allocate room numbers

Delete

Click on the reservation to highlight and select Delete.

Print List

Prints rooming list for the Group, see following section.

Remove

Highlight the reservation to be removed from the Group. The reservation will then become an individual Guest account.

Exit

Select to exit from the rooming list screen.

3.6.4.1 Print Room List

There are two options to print a Room List.

- **Full List** - Prints a detailed list of each of the guests on the rooming list.
- **Short List** - Displays a less detailed list of the guests.

Notice on the diagram the area in question is highlighted blue, select the List Type here to display to print.

Group Rooming List

Group Acc: 0000565 / 0000600 Group Name: STARFLEET Balance:

Arrival: 01/11/2013 Departure: 03/11/2013 Rate: 0.00 Package:

	Account	Name	Arrival	Departure	Status	Room	Rm Type	Booked	Free
1	0000566	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	04	2	2	0
2	0000567	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	05	2	2	0
3	0000568	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	07	3	1	0
4	0000569	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	08	3		
5	0000570	STARFLEET,	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrived	27	5		

Alotment Bkg

Surname: Title: First Name: ?

Arrival: Night(s): Departure: Rm Type: Bal

Adults: Children: Infants: FOC: Rate Cd: Save

Pkg Rate: Comment: Charge To: ☒ None ☐ Guest ☐ Group (excl. Extras) ☐ Group (incl. Extras) New

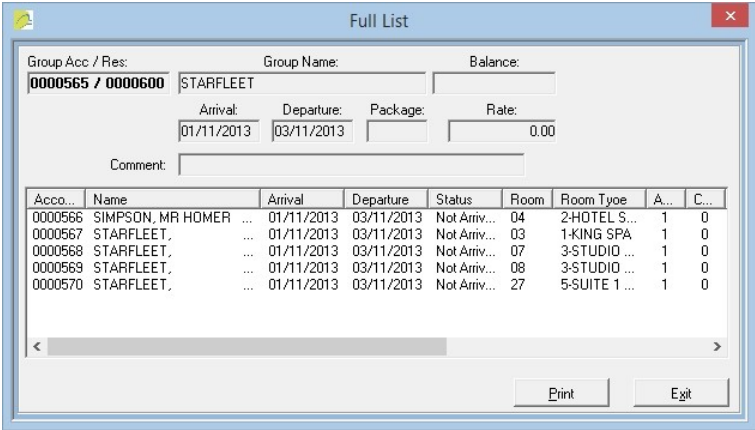
ETA: Arr Method: ETD: Dep Method: Pre-Authorized POS Credit: 0.00 Quick Alloc

Room #: Sole Use Do not move Unconfirmed Delete

Rooms: List Type ☒ Full List ☐ Short List ☐ Label Print List Remove Exit

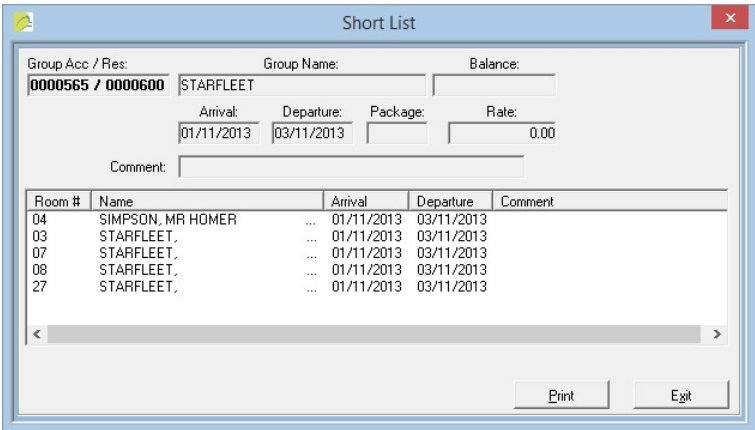
144

Before printing the columns can be sorted by Account number, Name, Arrival, Departure, Status, Room or Room Type. Click on the column header to sort. The Full List contains more details than the Short List.



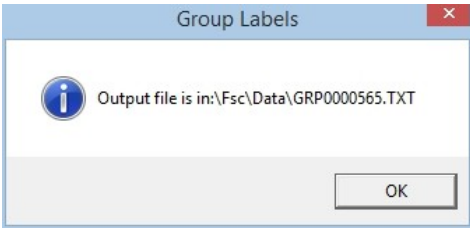
144a

The Short List contains the Room #, Name, Arrival, Departure and Comment.



144b

Use the Label option if labels are required. Browse to the Output file and use the .txt to merge in to your default label printing option. Labels can then be printed to used as name tags for a Conference Group.



144c

3.6.5 Group Master Folios & Extras

Group Folios

Every Group Master account has 5 folios available. To setup refer to [Guest Folios](#)^[34]. If not selected, all charges go to folio 1, by default, and the other folios are not used.

Group Extras

Sometimes, predetermined extras can be put to a Group Master account. These are then charged to the Group Master account with the Nightly Audit room charges. To setup refer to [Guest Extras](#)^[35]

3.6.6 Group Deposit/Comments

With some properties (usually seasonal such as ski areas), a payment plan for that Group booking is entered, and updated whenever a payment is received. With this, you would enter the date received and amount of receipt, and the cheque or voucher number. Additional comment lines are available for custom booking slip comments.

Update Master Reservation [STARFLEET]

Acc#: 0000565 Res#: 0000600 Booked: 30/10/2013 Changed: 30/10/2013 Status: Not Arrived

Reservation detail | Folio | Extras | Deposit plan/Comments | Housekeeping/Travel Agent | Running Sheet

Security Deposit Payment Plan:

No	Date	Amount	Voucher
1			
2			
3			

Booking slip additional comments:

LINE 1

LINE 2

Confirmation Dates:

Confirmation 1:

Confirmation 2:

Confirmation 3:

Release Allot Calc Total Update rates Rooming List Save Delete Exit

145

Booking slip additional comments:

Add comments line for group if they are to be advised of requirements before arrival, i.e. own towels required for pool area.

3.6.7 Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Special Requests

If a special housekeeping setup is required, for say a lower rate for reduced servicing, then change this screen to reflect the major and minor cleaning requirements for this reservation.

If this booking is from a Travel Agent, all you have to do is select the appropriate travel agent code. Refer to [Travel Agent Information](#)^[176] for setup.

When you save the changes, you return to the Group reservation window. On this screen you can select to see the details of Folio, Extras, and Deposit Plan/Comments Rooming List for viewing only.

Update Master Reservation [STARFLEET]

Acc#: 0000565 Res#: 0000600 Booked: 30/10/2013 Changed: 30/10/2013 Status: Not Arrived

Reservation detail | Folio | Extras | Deposit plan/Comments | Housekeeping/Travel Agent | Running Sheet

Security Deposit Payment Plan:

No	Date	Amount	Voucher
1			
2			
3			

Booking slip additional comments:

LINE 1

LINE 2

Confirmation Dates:

Confirmation 1:

Confirmation 2:

Confirmation 3:

Release Allot Calc Total Update rates Rooming List Save Delete Exit

146

For special requests on arrival or daily refer to [Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Guest Special Request](#)³⁷⁾ in Front Office ->Guest Information. To setup refer to [Guest Special Request](#)²²³⁾ in Set up->System Configuration.

3.6.8 Running Sheet

The Running Sheet allows you to enter information for the daily activities for a group then be able to print it. You must tab away from the last field entered before you select save.

Date	Time	Location	Description
31/10/13	18:00	Restaurant	Dinner x 45 pax
01/11/13	09:00	Tour	Morning tour of local area.
01/11/13	12:30	Restaurant	Lunch
01/11/13	14:00	Meeting Room	Discussion group

147

To print the running sheet you select the Reservations button on the Group's account then the Running Sheet tab located under the Conf Letter tab.

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Tot Rm	Room Type	#Rms	Used	Adult	Child	Inf	Status
0000600	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	0.00	0.00		5	HOTEL SPA	2	2	5			Not Arrived
							STUDIO DEL	2	2				
							SUITE 1 BE	1	1				

148

3.6.9 Group Confirmation, Proforma Invoice & Registration

Group Confirmation Letter

Confirmation letters can be printed or emailed. For setup refer to Set Up -> System Configuration -> [Conf Letter](#) ²⁰⁵

Group Proforma Invoice

A Proforma invoice can be emailed or printed to be sent to the group before arrival. Select to "**Summarize transaction type**" as **Daily** if there are multiple entries each day of a transaction, i.e. Accommodation. The entries will be summarized in to one entry transaction and amount for each day.

Date	Description
1/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
1/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
1/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
1/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
1/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
2/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
2/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE
2/11/2013	PACKAGE CONFERENCE PACKAGE

Summarize transaction type: ☒ Daily

Name on invoice: STARFLEET

Email Print Cancel

149

Group Registration Slip

To print registration slips for group members, go to Group Information, find the group, click on **Reservations**, then select the **Room List** tab. You now have the option of printing registration slips for Master only, All Guests, First Guest in Room or the Individual Guest. After making your selection, click the Reg Slip button to the right of the screen. For setup refer to [Guest Registration Slip](#) ⁴²

Group Acc: 0000565 Group Name: STARFLEET A/R: STAR Pay Method: Balance: Last Activity: 30/10/2013 User: m15c15

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Tot Rm	Room Type	#Rms	Used	Adult	Child	Inf	Status
0000600	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	0.00	0.00		5	HOTEL SPA	2	2	5			Not Arrived
							STUDIO DEL	2	2				
							SUITE 1 BE	1	1				

Folios Extras 0.00 Deposit Plan/Comments Room List

Select For Reg Slip: ☐ Master only ☐ All Guests ☐ First Guest In Room ☒ Individual

No	Room	Account	Surname	Arrival	Departure	Status	Adult	Child	Inf	Rate
1	04	0000566	SIMPSON	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrive	1			130.00
2	05	0000567	STARFLEET	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrive	1			130.00
3	07	0000568	STARFLEET	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrive	1			130.00
4	08	0000569	STARFLEET	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrive	1			130.00
5	27	0000570	STARFLEET	01/11/2013	03/11/2013	Not Arrive	1			130.00

Upd Rm List Reg Slip Conf Letter Running Sheet Proforma Inv SMS

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

150

3.6.10 Group Check In

Group check in can be accessed by clicking on the 'Group Information' button on the menu. Once in the Group Information window, find the group you need by entering the group account number or using the search function. After you have found the group you need, click on the **Arrivals** button once. The Arrivals screen below will be displayed.

Alternatively right click on a reservation that is part of the Group and select Group Info.

Select the **Check All In** button once. This will check all the group into their allocated rooms. If all the group members are checked in you will see a message "Check In Successful" displayed. During the check in process, the system may display two messages.

1: A group member is being checked into a room that is not clean. You have the option to check the guest in, or not to check the guest in. If you don't check the guest in, you can do so later in the same way you check in a normal guest, [Guest Check In](#)⁴⁶

2: The room the group member is to be checked into is not vacant yet. You don't have a choice with this message. The group member is not checked in and will have to be checked in later, [Guest Check In](#)⁴⁶

If the group members are not all arriving together you can check them in individually as they arrive, refer to [Guest Check In](#)⁴⁶

151

3.6.11 Group Charges & Payments

Select the desired group from the Group Information screen. You can enter the groups account number, or search for the group. Then select the 'Charges/Pmt' button.

Click on the box marked 'Transaction', and select the transaction type you are going to use. You can key in the first letter of the transaction type. If this is unique, tab to the next prompt, and if not, select the desired transaction type from the drop down list.

If you are using folios, select the folio, refer to [Guest Folios](#)³⁴ If you are not using folios, go to the next step.

If it is a payment, select the payment type from the 'Pay type' box. Click on the 'Amount' box, and enter the amount. If the entry type has GST applicable, this will be shown automatically, as the entry amount always includes GST.

Click on the 'Comments:' box, and enter any comments (if required).

If these entries are ok, select the 'Apply' button, and the transaction will be applied to that account. The folio number will be automatically selected.

Note that if the transaction is setup to be a credit (with a minus on it) automatically, then you do not need to add the minus sign. However, if you want to reverse one of these transactions, you must enter the minus sign, and let the transaction setup handle it itself. [Voiding or Reversing Guest Charges](#)

Transactions can be applied to any reservation, whether it is not arrived, arrived or checked out. Normally, you would only charge to an arrived reservation.

Group Acc: 0000551 Group Name: STARFLEET A/R: STAR Pay Method: Balance: 2,150.00 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 User: m15c15

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Tot Rm	Room Type	#Rms	Used	Adult	Child	Inf	Status
0000578	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	0.00	0.00		6	KING SPA	1	1	5			Arrived
							HOTEL SPA	1	1				
							STUDIO DEL	3	3				
							RESTAURAN	1	1				

Acc balance: 650.00 Status: Arrived Transaction: ACC - ACCOMMODATION Folio: 1

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	PACKAGE	Y		130.00	11
30/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION	Y		70.00	6
30/10/2013	DINNER	Y		40.00	3
30/10/2013	BREAKFAST	Y		20.00	1
30/10/2013	PACKAGE	Y		130.00	11
30/10/2013	ACCOMMODATION	Y		70.00	6

Pay Type: ACC - ACCOMMODATION
 Amount: 00
 Comments: ADR - ADV DEPOSIT REFUND
 ADV - ADV DEPOSIT
 ADX - AD CANCELLATION FEE
 BRK - BREAKFAST
 CAN - CANCELLATION FEE
 CNA - CANCELLATION FEE

Buttons: Collect, Apply, Cancel

152

The **COLLECT** button allows if you have enabled the nightly charges to be charged onto each guest account because you want the Group invoice to be detailed and showing each individual guests nightly charges. By clicking on the button the following screen will be displayed

If the charges that are being paid by the group are on a separate folio tick the selected folio button and input the folio that has the group charges on it. You can also select transaction types however you do need to select each transaction code individually and if it is a package code you also need to select the code **PAK**. You can also select all transactions and select all guests or just some guests from that group rooming list.

Collect Trans from Group Guests

No	Room	Name	Acc Bal	Status	Acc #
1	14	BURNS, MR GEORGE	130.00	Arrived	0000552
2	17	SIMPSON, MR HOMER	130.00	Arrived	0000553
3	09	SKYWALKER, MR LUKE	130.00	Arrived	0000554
4	10	HOOD, MR ROBIN	130.00	Arrived	0000555
5	11	TUCK, FRIAR	130.00	Arrived	0000556
6	RES	STARFLEET,	0.00	Arrived	0000560

Collect: ☒ All trans ☐ Selected folio ☐ Selected trans Trans Type:

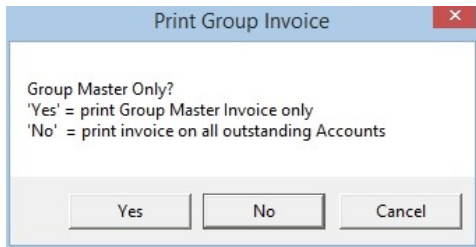
From: ☒ All guests ☐ Selected guests

Buttons: Continue, Exit

153

3.6.12 Group Invoice

Click the **Group Account** button to print an invoice. The following window will then be displayed.



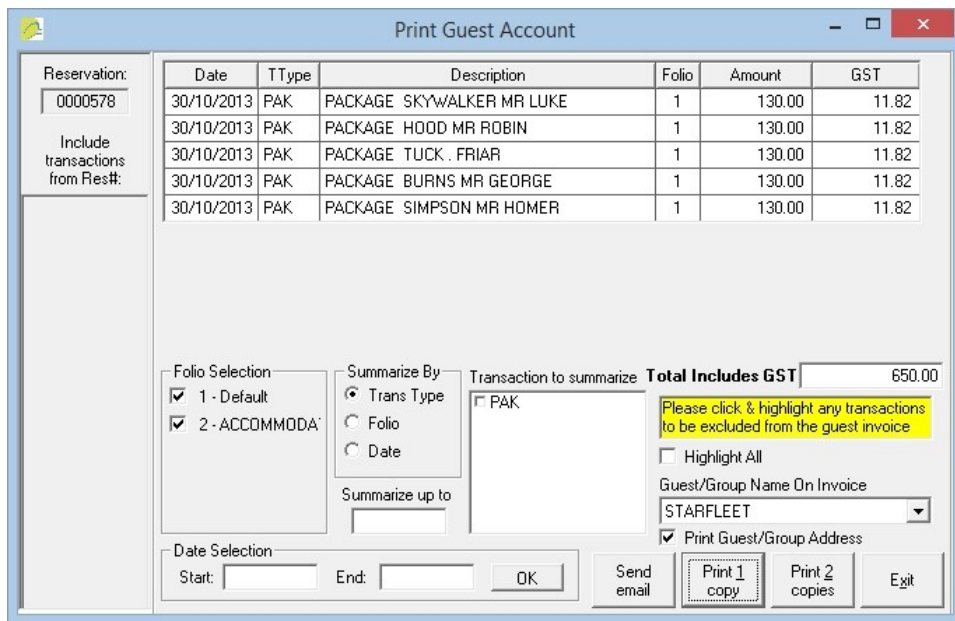
Print Group Invoice

Group Master Only?
 'Yes' = print Group Master Invoice only
 'No' = print invoice on all outstanding Accounts

Yes No Cancel

154

You need to select either the group master invoice or individual guest invoices with balances



Print Guest Account

Reservation: 0000578

Include transactions from Res#:

Date	TType	Description	Folio	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	PAK	PACKAGE SKYWALKER MR LUKE	1	130.00	11.82
30/10/2013	PAK	PACKAGE HOOD MR ROBIN	1	130.00	11.82
30/10/2013	PAK	PACKAGE TUCK . FRIAR	1	130.00	11.82
30/10/2013	PAK	PACKAGE BURNS MR GEORGE	1	130.00	11.82
30/10/2013	PAK	PACKAGE SIMPSON MR HOMER	1	130.00	11.82

Folio Selection:
☒ 1 - Default
☒ 2 - ACCOMMODATION

Summarize By:
☒ Trans Type
☐ Folio
☐ Date

Summarize up to:

Transaction to summarize: ☐ PAK

Total Includes GST: 650.00

Please click & highlight any transactions to be excluded from the guest invoice

☐ Highlight All

Guest/Group Name On Invoice: STARFLEET

☒ Print Guest/Group Address

Date Selection:
 Start: End: OK

Send email Print 1 copy Print 2 copies Exit

155

From this window you can select to print "All Transactions" on the invoice, select which "Folio" to print on the invoice, or select which "Transactions" you wish to print on the invoice. Click on any transaction to highlight, this transaction will not be included on the printed invoice. Default is all transactions.

3.6.13 Group Checkout

Group check out can be accessed by clicking on the 'Group Information' button on the menu. Once in the Group Information window, find the group you need by entering the group account number or using the search function. After you have found the group you need, click on the **Departures** button once. The screen below will be displayed.

Alternatively right click on a reservation that is part of the Group and select Group Info.

Select the **Check All Out** button. This will check all the group out providing the group has a zero balance. If any of the group members balances are not zero, they are **NOT** checked out. The group members that have not been checked out, will have to be checked out the same way as individual Guests are checked out.

If the group members are not all departing together you can check them out individually, refer to [Guest Check Out](#) 481

The screenshot shows the 'Group Check Out' window. At the top, it displays 'Group Acc: 0000551', 'Group Name: STARFLEET', 'A/R: STAR', 'Pay Method: [dropdown]', 'Balance: 2,150.00', 'Last Activity: 30/10/2013', and 'User: m15c15'. Below this is the 'Master Reservation' table:

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Tot Rm	Room Type	#Rms	Used	Adult	Child	Inf	Status
0000578	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	0.00	0.00		6	KING SPA	1	1	5			Arrived
							HOTEL SPA	1	1				
							STUDIO DEL	3	3				
							RESTAURAN	1	1				

Below the Master Reservation table are two tabs: 'Inhouse Guests' (selected) and 'Checked Out Guests'. The 'Inhouse Guests' table is shown below:

No	Account	Arrival	Departure	Rate	Name	Room Type	Room	Balance	Ad	Ch	Inf	Status
1	0000552	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	130.00	BURNS	KING SPA	14	130.00	1			Arrived
2	0000553	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	130.00	SIMPSON	HOTEL SP	17	130.00	1			Arrived
3	0000554	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	130.00	SKYWALKER	STUDIO D	09	130.00	1			Arrived
4	0000555	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	130.00	HOOD	STUDIO D	10	130.00	1			Arrived
5	0000556	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	130.00	TUCK	STUDIO D	11	130.00	1			Arrived
6	0000560	31/10/2013	31/10/2013	0.00	STARFLEET	RESTAUR. RES		0.00	30			Arrived

At the bottom of the window, there are buttons for 'Line #', 'Room To Check Out:', 'Grp Account', 'Chk All Out', 'Account', 'Reservations', 'Transactions', 'Arrivals', 'Departures' (highlighted), 'Charges/Pmt', and 'Exit'.

156

Note that if the Group Master account balance is not zero then the guests can not be checked out through the Group Master. This balance must be paid or transferred to Debtors before checking out the Group Master account. The guests can still be checked out individually from the Guest Account. It is recommended the Group Master is checked out when the Group is departing.

3.6.14 Remove a Guest from a Group Booking

If a Guest is no longer a part of a Group booking you can remove them by highlighting their reservation and clicking on the Remove Button in the Rooming List screen as shown below.

Group Rooming List

Group Acc: 0000551 / 0000578 Group Name: STARFLEET Balance: 2,150.00

Arrival: 30/10/2013 Departure: 01/11/2013 Rate: 0.00 Package:

	Account	Name	Arrival	Departure	Status	Room
1	☒ 0000552	BURNS, MR GEORGE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	14
2	☐ 0000553	SIMPSON, MR HOMER	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	17
3	☐ 0000554	SKYWALKER, MR LUKE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	09
4	☐ 0000555	HOOD, MR ROBIN	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	10
5	☐ 0000556	TUCK, . FRIAR	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	11

Rm Type	Booked	Free
1	1	0
2	1	0
3	3	0
7	1	0

Surname: BURNS Title: MR First Name: GEORGE Acc: 0000552

Arrival: 30/10/2013 Night(s): 2 Departure: 01/11/2013 Rm Type: 1-KING SPA Bal: 130.00

Adults: 1 Children: 0 Infants: 0 FOC: 0 Rate Cd: CON

Pkg Rate: 130.00

Comment:

ETA: 03.00PM Arr Method:

ETD: 10.00AM Dep Method:

Room #: 14 Sole Use Do not move Unconfirmed

Rooms

Charge To: ☒ Guest ☐ Group (excl. Extras)

☐ None ☐ Group (incl. Extras)

Save New Quick Alloc Delete Print List Remove

Remove this booking from group booking

157

This will display the following warning screen. Click Yes to remove the Guest. The Guest's reservation will now be shown as a individual reservation and will not have a group number attached.

Remove Guest From A Group

?

Are you sure you want to remove this guest from the group!

Yes

No

158

Refer to [Attach/Remove Group Booking](#)

3.6.15 Delete a Guest from a Group Booking

If a Guest or room is no longer required in a Group booking you can remove them by highlighting their reservation and clicking on the **Delete** button in the Rooming List screen as shown below. You can only delete a reservation with zero balance.

The screenshot shows the 'Group Rooming List' window. At the top, it displays 'Group Acc: 0000551 / 0000578', 'Group Name: STARFLEET', and 'Balance: 2,150.00'. Below this is a table of reservations:

	Account	Name	Arrival	Departure	Status	Room
1	☒ 0000552	BURNS, MR GEORGE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	14
2	☐ 0000553	SIMPSON, MR HOMER	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	17
3	☐ 0000554	SKYWALKER, MR LUKE	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	09
4	☐ 0000555	HOOD, MR ROBIN	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	10
5	☐ 0000556	TUCK, FRIAR	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Arrived	11

Below the table, the details for the selected reservation (George Burns) are shown. The 'Delete' button is highlighted, and a tooltip appears: 'Delete selected group guest reservation from the rooming list'.

159

This will display the following warning screen. Click Yes to delete the reservation. The reservation will now be deleted and the number of rooms updated in the reservation details.

The screenshot shows a 'Delete Rooming List' dialog box with a question mark icon and the text 'Delete selected bookings - Are you sure?'. There are 'Yes' and 'No' buttons at the bottom.

160

3.6.16 Group Booking Changes

When you change the group master, you have the option whether the changes should affect all the individual reservations in the rooming list as well or not. Adding more rooms to the Group booking is done in the reservation screen. These added rooms must then be allocated. You can add rooms without affecting the current group members. To remove rooms this must be done from the Rooming List refer to [Remove a Guest from a Group Booking](#)^[103] and [Delete a Guest from a Group Booking](#)^[104]. Also note that you are unable to change the room types after you have completed the rooming list, changes after this must also be made through the rooming list.

3.6.16.1 Extending a Group Reservation

Group reservations can be extended beyond the date specified, or back to a shorter period (lesser number of nights). To extend a reservation, select the group in the Group Information screen, and the Reservations button. Double click on the reservation line to open. Click on the Night(s), or on the Departure, and amend as required. Please note that there are some limitations on this.

If the reservation is for a non-repetitive package (i.e.: different transactions are posted automatically on the days you specified when the package was created) the system will not allow an extension. This reservation will need to have the rate changed first or have the arrival date changed as well to add up to the correct amount of nights for this package.

Rm Type	Booked	Used
1 KING SPA	1	1
2 HOTEL SPA	1	1
3 STUDIO DELUXE	3	3
4 SUITE 2 BED	0	0
5 SUITE 1 BED	0	0
6 PENTHOUSE	0	0
7 RESTAURANT	1	1
8 CONFERENCE	0	0

161

3.6.17 Group Booking Cancellation

Only reservations, with a zero balance, can be deleted. To delete a reservation, on the Group Information click on **Reservations** then double click on the reservation you wish to delete. Once the Update Master Reservation window is displayed, click on the **Delete** button once. The rooming list will also be automatically deleted. (If any guest on the rooming list do not have a zero balance, their account will not be deleted.)

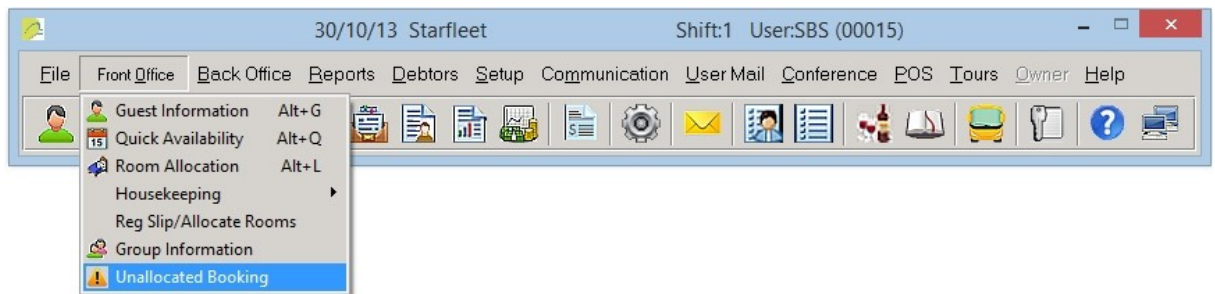
162

The following warning screen will appear. Select Yes to delete or No to exit.



163

3.7 Unallocated Booking



163a

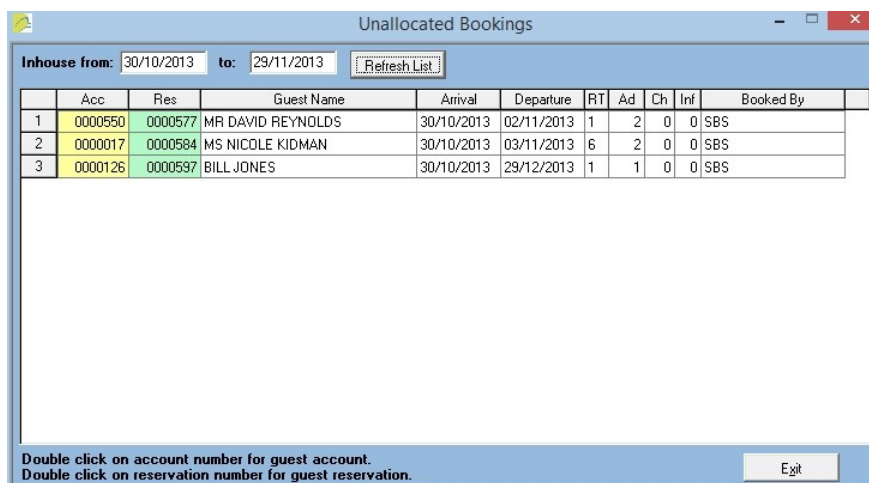
Unallocated Bookings are reservations with no room number allocated. These bookings may be individual bookings, received from a Channel Manager or part of a Group booking that does not have all the rooms allocated a physical room number. It is up to the user to determine if these reservations are to be kept in the system by having a room number allocated. Or in the case of a Group booking to release the unallocated rooms. If the booking is not required it must be deleted, refer to [Changing & Deleting a Guest Reservation](#) [43]. For Channel Manager bookings refer to the relevant User Manual.

The Room Allocation screen will display the warning icon in the viewed date range if there are Unallocated Bookings.



163b

Select Unallocated Booking from the Front Office menu. This will display the following screen with the list of Unallocated Bookings. The bookings displayed are within the date range of the Room Allocation screen display. Dates can be selected by double clicking to display the calendar, Refresh List to update.



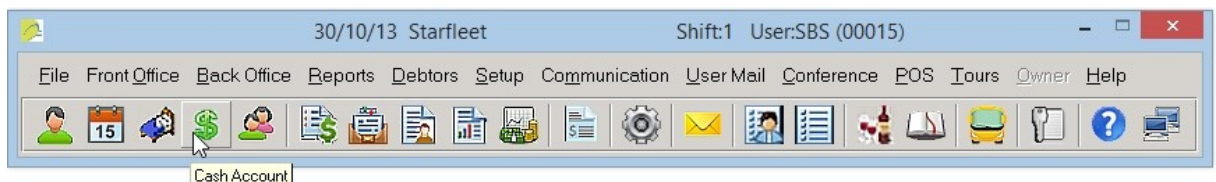
163c

The Individual bookings will have the Room Type number in the RT column. Group bookings will have * (asterisk). Double click on the Yellow (Acc) column to display the Guest Information screen. Double click on the Green (Res) column to display the Reservation screen. For Individual reservations click in the Room # field then select an available room number and Save.

Group Bookings double click on the yellow (Acc) to open the Group Acc, or green (Res) to open the reservation. Refer to [Group Information](#)^[85], [Group Rooming List](#)^[93] to allocate room numbers. If the rooms are not required edit the number of rooms required in the Group Reservation screen.

163d

3.8 Cash Account



164

Click on the Cash Account icon on the menu bar to open the account.

Guest Charges/Payment

Account: 0000001 Room: Balance: Last Activity: 29/03/2012 User: m12c12

Surname: CASH ACCOUNT Title: First Name: Pay Method: CASH

Reservation: Current All Today's Arrivals

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P

Room balance: 0.00 Status: Transaction: ACC - ACCOMMODATION Pay Type: Amount: 0.00

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
29/03/2012	SHOP ITEM			15.50	1.41
29/03/2012	PAYMENT		C	-15.50	0.00
29/03/2012	HORSE RIDING			60.00	5.45
29/03/2012	PAYMENT		V	-60.00	0.00

Comments: BRK - BREAKFAST CAN - CANCELLATION FEE COA - COFFEE/TEA CON - CONFERENCE DIN - DINNER

Buttons: Bal Query, Daily Update, Apply, Cancel

Navigation: Account, Reservations, Transactions, Arrivals, Departures, Charges/Pmt, Exit

165

The Cash Account can be used for charges that are not going on a Guest Account. This account is a double entry account, charge and payment are posted together. There will always be a zero balance.

This account can also be accessed by clicking on the  button from all screens in Guest Information.

3.8.1 Clearing Cash Accounts

The following procedure can be used to clear transactions from the Cash Account and the Restaurant Cash Account. Note that the cash account should always be zero balance.

The transactions on these accounts may accumulate over time, and printing these accounts may as a result take considerable time. The option to clear the transactions removes the need to abandon this account and create a new cash account. We suggest you may want to print the transactions from the cash account prior to clearing them unless there are a lot. Click on the **Clear** button to complete this procedure.

Note: The transactions are not deleted from the system. They are merely tagged, so they do not display on the screen or reports unless requested.

Account Transactions

Account: 0000001 Room: Balance: Last Activity: 29/03/2012 User: m12c12

Surname: CASH ACCOUNT Title: First Name: Pay Method: CASH

Transactions: Current All Date Start: 30/10/2013 End: 30/10/2013 OK Hide void transactions

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000000	29/03/2012	0001823	SHO	SHOP ITEM				15.50	1.41
0000000	29/03/2012	0001824	PAY	PAYMENT		C		15.50	0.00
0000000	29/03/2012	0001825	HOR	HORSE RIDING ...				60.00	5.45
0000000	29/03/2012	0001826	PAY	PAYMENT		V		60.00	0.00

Buttons: Clear, Folio Detail, Print

Navigation: Account, Reservations, Transactions, Arrivals, Departures, Charges/Pmt, Exit

166

3.9 House Accounts

House accounts can be used for several things such as a cash account, an account to store monies received for gift vouchers until a booking is made, staff accounts and restaurant guest accounts.

- To create a house account go into the guest information screen and select NEW.
- On the right hand side of the screen about half way down there is a drop down box for STATUS - select either RESTG (Restaurant Guest Account) or STAFF (Staff or House Account)
- Use a star (asterisk) to start the name and then enter the name for the house account e.g. [Gift Vouchers](#)¹⁰⁹
- Then click on Save.
- This now enables you to post transactions to this account without requiring a reservation attached.

Once the account has been saved you cannot change the type of the account to STAFF or RESTG. If when you go to the charges and payment screen it says there is no reservation to charge to the house account is not setup as a house account so you will need to delete it and restart the steps above ensuring that you have selected the STAFF or RESTG before saving. Any unwanted house accounts can be deleted by clicking on the DELETE button at the bottom of the screen. House accounts with transactions can not be deleted.

167

3.9.1 Gift Vouchers

A Gift Voucher is usually purchased before a reservation is made. By setting up a **GIFT VOUCHER** account and posting all sales here this will store all vouchers sold until they are redeemed. This account will also will help keep track of vouchers that will be past the 'expiry date' therefore no longer valid to be redeemed.

Select the PAY - PAYMENT transaction, pay type, amount and enter the Gift Voucher number (in the comments field).

Account: 0000571 Room: Balance: 180.00

Surname: "GIFT VOUCHERS" Title: First Name: Last Activity: User: m15c15

A/R: Pay Method: CASH

Reservation

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P

Room balance: 0.00 **Status:**

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	PAYMENT	V		-100.00	0.00
30/10/2013	PAYMENT	C		-80.00	0.00

Transaction: PAY - PAYMENT **Folio:** 1

Pay Type: VISA/MC

Amount: 120.00 GST: 0.00

Comments: VOUCHER #327

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

168

When the Guest makes a booking they present the Gift Voucher upon arrival. You can then transfer the relevant Gift Voucher transaction to their reservation.

Account: 0000571 Room: Balance: 300.00

Surname: "GIFT VOUCHERS" Title: First Name: Last Activity: User: m15c15

A/R: Pay Method: CASH

Reservation

Res#	Arrival	Depart	Rate	GST	Rate Cd	Room Type	Adult	Child	Inf	RMB	Status	P

Room balance: 300.00 **Status:**

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	PAYMENT	V		-100.00	0.00
30/10/2013	PAYMENT	C		-80.00	0.00
30/10/2013	PAYMENT	V		-120.00	0.00

Transaction: TRA - TRANSFER TRANS

Transfer to:

Room: or Res #: 0000589

Account: 209

Select all

Bal Query Daily Update Apply Cancel

Account Reservations Transactions Arrivals Departures Charges/Pmt Exit

169

The Guest reservation will then reflect the credit amount of the Gift Voucher.

Account: 0000209 Room: Balance: 100.00

Surname: TAYLOR Title: MR First Name: TOM Last Activity: 30/10/2013 User: m15c15

A/R: Pay Method: CASH

Transactions

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000589	30/10/2013	0002368	PAY	PAYMENT	VOUCHER #325	V		100.00	0.00

170

The following Gift Voucher account transaction screen shows the transaction as VOID, in the comments field will display the account/reservation the transaction has been transferred to.

Account Transactions

Account: 0000571 Room: Balance: 200.00-

Surname: GIFT VOUCHERS Title: First Name: Last Activity: 30/10/2013

A/R: Pay Method: CASH User: m15c15

Transactions

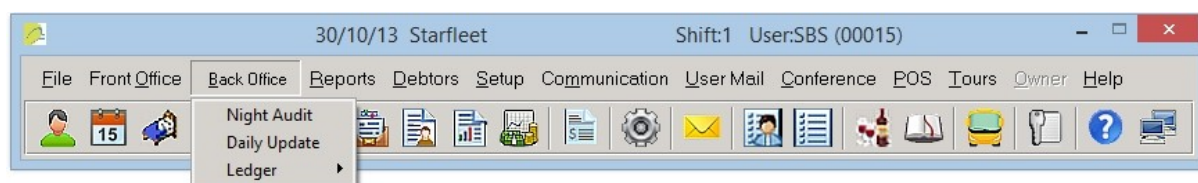
Current All Date Start: 30/10/2013 End: 30/10/2013 OK Hide void transactions

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	PT	Room	Amount	GST
0000000	30/10/2013	0002369	PAY	PAYMENT	VOUCHER#326	C		80.00-	0.00
0000000	30/10/2013	0002370	PAY	PAYMENT	VOUCHER #327	V		120.00-	0.00
0000000	30/10/2013	Void	PAY	PAYMENT	To:0000209/0000589	V		100.00-	0.00

171

If a Gift Voucher is presented for a dinner in the Restaurant then the POS transaction must be transferred to a POS account. Then the Gift Voucher transaction can be transferred to the POS house account as the 'payment'.

4 Back Office



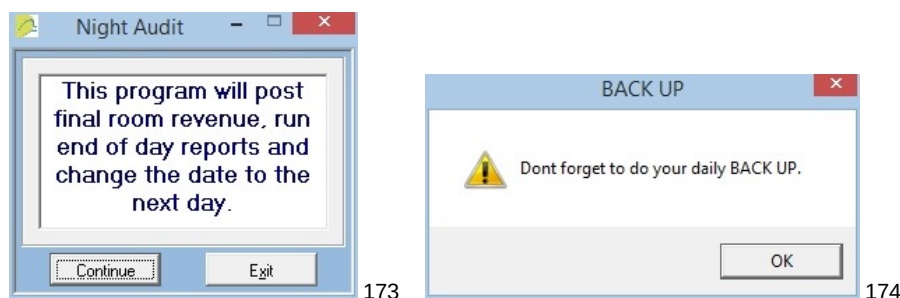
172

4.1 Night Audit

The Night Audit is accessed by clicking on the **Night Audit** button in the **Back office** Menu.

There is a suggested format to follow to complete Night Audit. It is listed under End of Day Procedures in [Appendix A \(Suggested Night Audit Procedures\)](#)²⁵⁶

This module must only be run at days end as it will post final room revenue, print days end reports and automatically **change the date to the next day**. Alternatively it can be run first thing in the morning prior to any work being done for the new day. This would allow for checking in of guests that arrived late. Click on Night Audit, the following screen will appear.



173

174

Select Continue. Refer to section on [Backup](#)¹⁴ for information to setup.

Following the daily update which posts the room revenue, the system will automatically change the system date to the next day, process the end of day balances and cycle through programs set in the Day & Month end setup in the setup menu, to print the selected reports. In addition to these reports, it will also produce a listing of opening and closing balances for the Guest ledger, Deposit ledger and Debtors ledger.

After selecting **Continue** and **OK** for the Daily Backup you are now presented with a screen displaying a list of reports that the Night Audit program can produce.

If you have preselected some reports in the **Setup->System Configuration->Daily Update->Day End** menu, they will be automatically selected for you. You can select more or deselect any of the reports in this menu by clicking in the boxes. You can also select and deselect the number of copies required of each report.

The Daily Update Report will print automatically if required. Refer to Set Up -> System Configuration -> [Daily Update](#) ²⁰⁵ to select printing option.

Print Copies		Print Copies	
Transaction List	☐	Booking List	☐
Transaction List (Reversals)	☐	Daily Occupancy	☐
Guest Account Balances	☐	Cancellations	☐
Guest Acc Bal Inhouse	☐	Phone Calls	☐
Security Deposits	☐	Daily Summary	☐
Guest Arrivals	☐	Guest Notes	☐
Guest Departures	☐	Notes for the day	☐
Housekeeping	☐	Daily Statistics	☐

175

Click on the **Run Update** button to continue with the Night Audit.

At this point if you have guests that have not been checked in or out, the following screen will be displayed. If using the Conference module then any conferences not yet 'In Progress' will also be displayed. These reservations displayed here must be 'Checked In', 'Checked Out' and Conference changed to 'In Progress' before continuing. If a reservation is not 'checked in' on the correct arrival date it can not be backdated.

A report showing all guests not checked in will also be printed when the print button is selected.

Arrival/Departure Report

Guests that have not checked in:

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	St	Pkg	Rate	Acc Bal	Rm
0000550	0000577	REYNOLDS	N	BB1	200.00	600.00-	01
0000551	0000578	STARFLEET	N		0.00	0.00	
0000552	0000579	BURNS	N	CON	130.00	0.00	14
0000553	0000580	SIMPSON	N	CON	130.00	0.00	17
0000554	0000581	SKYWALKER	N	CON	130.00	0.00	09

Guests that have not checked out:

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	St	Pkg	Rate	Acc Bal	Rm
0000557	0000585	PARKER	A	KSP	90.00	0.00	03
0000559	0000587	JACKSON	A	PENT	330.00	990.00	28
0000561	0000592	HOGAN	A	SUITE	140.00	29.00	18

Confirmed conference bookings that are not in progress (bookings will not be charged):

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	Status	Acc Bal	Start	Finish
0000551	0000593	STARFLEET	Confirmed	0.00	0900	1600

The daily update cannot continue because it has detected rooms which have not been checked out. These rooms must be extended or checked out before the update can continue.

Print

Exit

176

UPDATE COMPLETED

**Night Audit has finished.
Click O.K. to continue.**

O.K.

177

When all guests have been arrived or departed then Night Audit can be run again. Once this is completed click OK on the prompt screen to exit.

4.2 Daily Update

The Daily Update is accessed by clicking the **Daily Update** button in the Back Office menu. **This module will now only post room charges for the current day. Therefore for the day end procedure, you still must use Night Audit to complete the end of day procedures.**

Select the Print Room Update report **Re-Print** button if you wish to reprint the Daily Update Report . Click on the **Continue** button to proceed with the Daily Update.

Daily Update

Daily Room Update

This program may be run more than once a day. It will not post accommodation to rooms which have already been updated today, however, it will not detect manual room charges and may re-charge these rooms

Print Room Update report ☒

Continue Exit

178

Daily Update

***** Already Updated Today *****

This program may be run more than once a day. It will not post accommodation to rooms which have already been updated today, however, it will not detect manual room charges and may re-charge these rooms

Print Room Update report ☒

Continue Exit

179

If you run the Daily Update more than once in a day, the message will display ***** Already Updated Today *****

The daily update will also change each room's condition. (ie: all occupied rooms will be changed to "D" for dirty)

If there are in-house guests with a departure date less than or equal to the current date the system will not commence posting room charges until these reservations have been extended or checked out.

The daily update will also detect and display a report of any in-house guest departing on that day and has not checked out yet, and any guest arriving on that day and has not checked in yet.

Arrival/Departure Report

Guests that have not checked in:

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	St	Pkg	Rate	Acc Bal	Rm
0000209	0000589	TAYLOR	N		0.00	100.00-	12
0000560	0000591	STARFLEET	N		0.00	0.00	RES

Guests that have not checked out:

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	St	Pkg	Rate	Acc Bal	Rm
0000558	0000586	CARTWRIGHT	A	DST	80.00	25.00	07
0000026	0000590	NICHOLSON	A	FOC	0.00	41.00	25

Confirmed conference bookings that are not in progress (bookings will not be charged):

Acc#	Res#	Account Name	Status	Acc Bal	Start	Finish
------	------	--------------	--------	---------	-------	--------

The daily update cannot continue because it has detected rooms which have not been checked out. These rooms must be extended or checked out before the update can continue.

Print

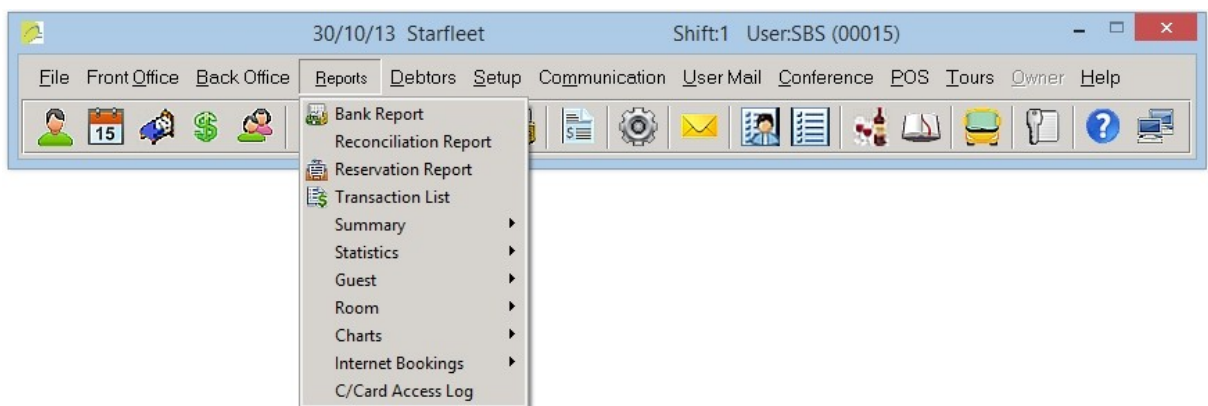
Exit

180

4.3 Ledger

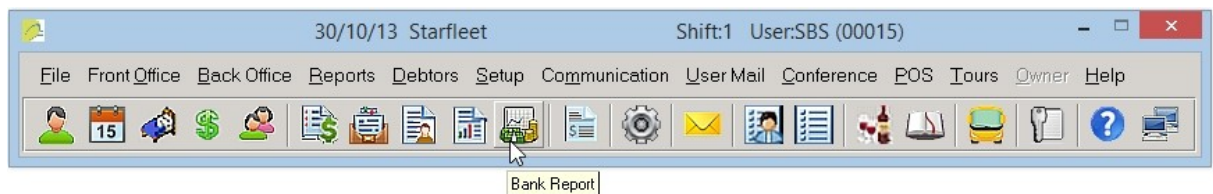
Please contact Starfleet Software if using this module for separate Accounting link Manual.

5 Reports

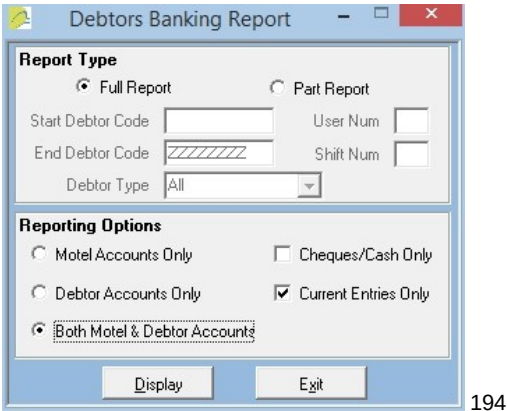


192

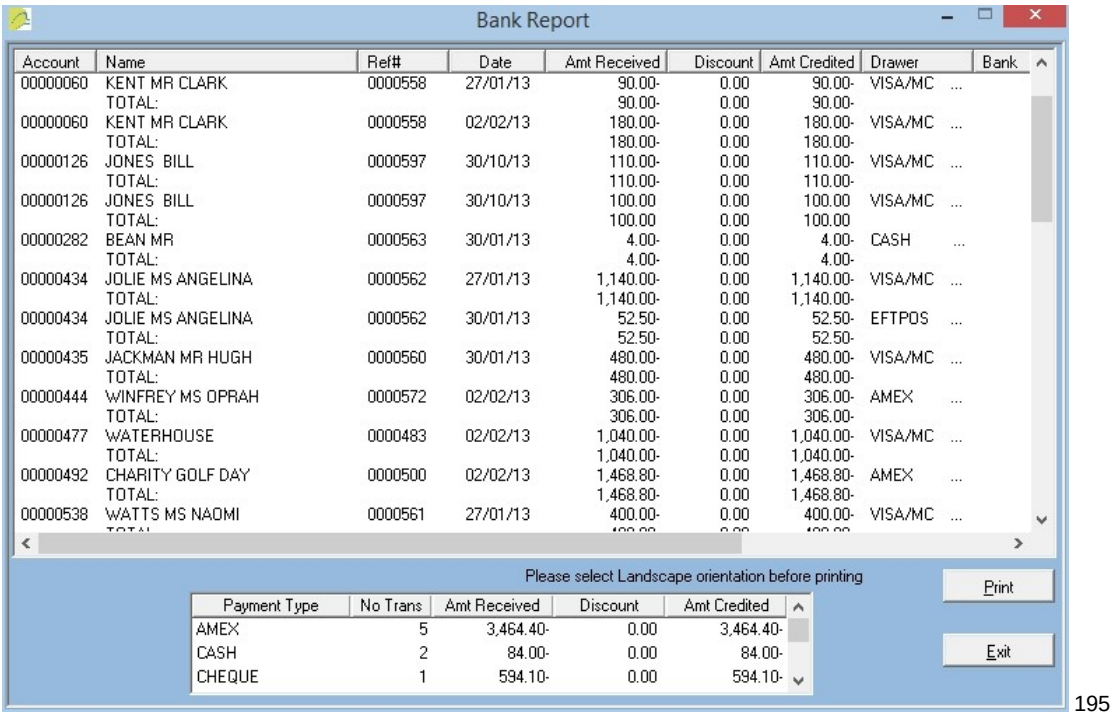
5.1 Bank Report



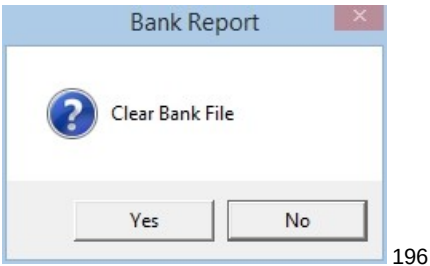
193



The Bank Report sub-menu is accessed by selecting **Bank Report**, in the **Reports** menu or the icon on the menu bar. This allows for all cash and cheques posted by the Debtor transaction entry program to be printed or listed on the screen. This includes the receipt number and bank name and branch. If desired, this can be used in lieu of the bank pay in book. Totals are kept monthly for reconciliation purposes, and the file can be cleared after each print to facilitate batch processing. The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on the column heading.



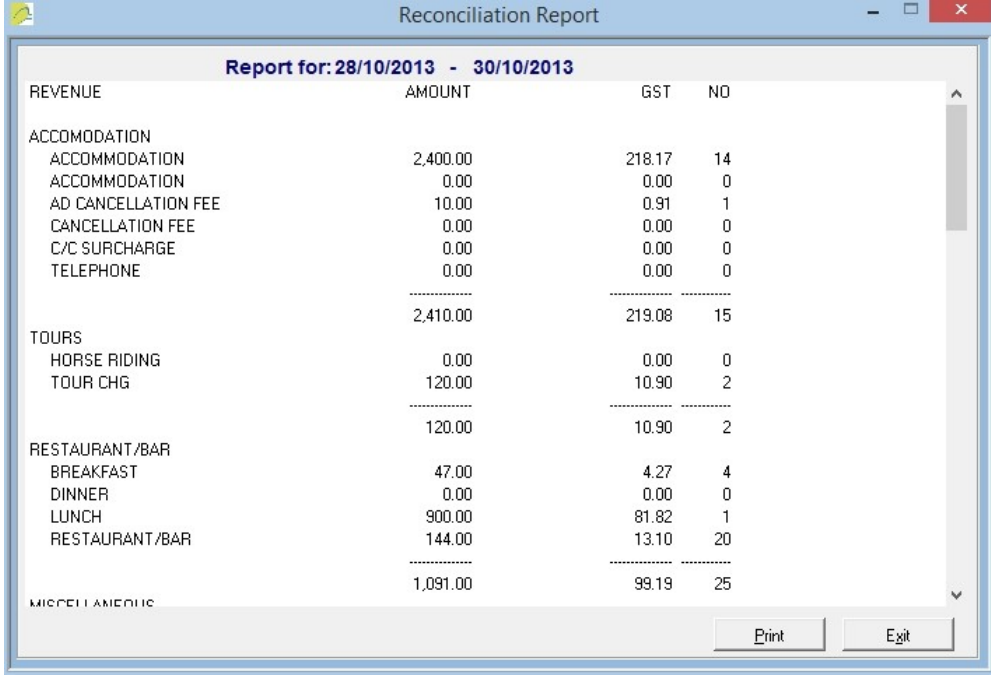
To print the report, click the print button once. A prompt will display to **Clear the Bank File - Yes or No**.



If Yes is selected the report **CAN NOT** be reprinted. If **NO** is selected the report can be reprinted. However the transactions will still appear when reprinting the report the next day. If using this report it is advisable to clear the transactions.

5.2 Reconciliation Report

This report is accessed in **Reports -> Reconciliation Report**.



Report for: 28/10/2013 - 30/10/2013			
REVENUE	AMOUNT	GST	NO
ACCOMMODATION	2,400.00	218.17	14
ACCOMMODATION	0.00	0.00	0
AD CANCELLATION FEE	10.00	0.91	1
CANCELLATION FEE	0.00	0.00	0
C/C SURCHARGE	0.00	0.00	0
TELEPHONE	0.00	0.00	0
	2,410.00	219.08	15
TOURS			
HORSE RIDING	0.00	0.00	0
TOUR CHG	120.00	10.90	2
	120.00	10.90	2
RESTAURANT/BAR			
BREAKFAST	47.00	4.27	4
DINNER	0.00	0.00	0
LUNCH	900.00	81.82	1
RESTAURANT/BAR	144.00	13.10	20
	1,091.00	99.19	25
MISCELLANEOUS			

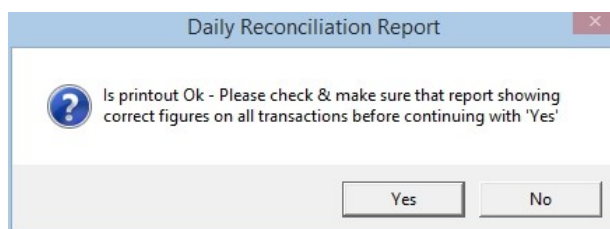
197

This report will give you the summary of all transactions from the time it was printed on the previous day up to now on this day. If it wasn't printed yesterday then all of yesterday's transactions will be included.

Only transactions which have not been included in the previous reconciliation report will be included in the report. Therefore the report must be run only once every day and once it is printed it cannot be re-printed or re-displayed. However before it is printed you can display it on the screen at any time.

The system will automatically display the report date.

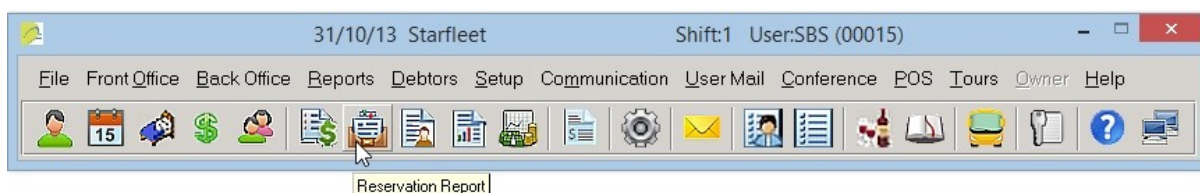
Click on the **print** button to print the report. The following prompt will be displayed.



198

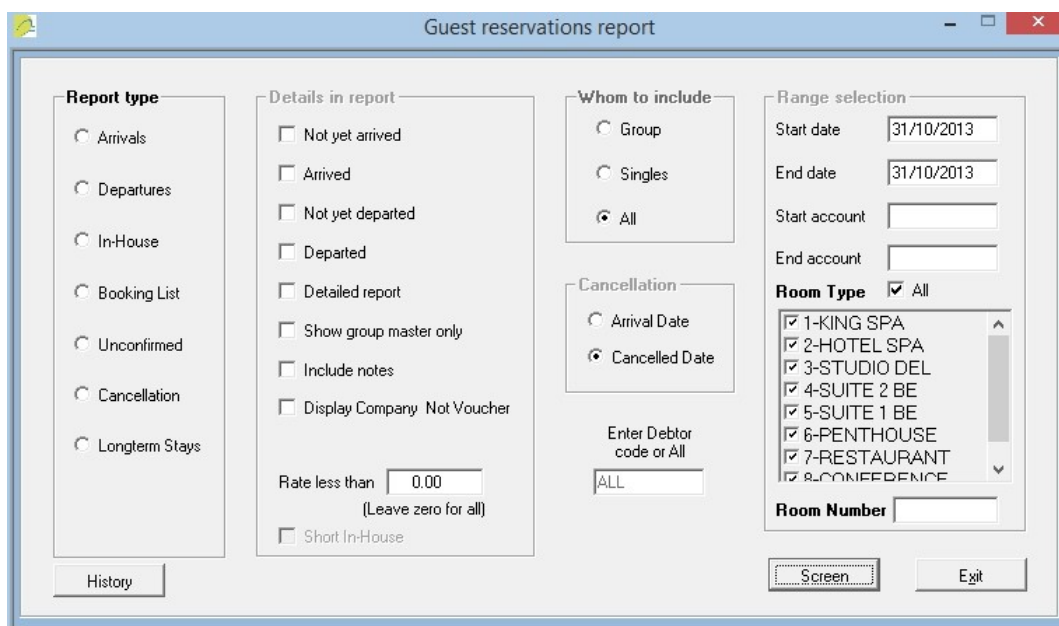
Yes: all the transactions included in the report will be marked as printed and the report cannot be re-printed or re-displayed. Therefore do check the reports contents carefully before selecting 'yes' to this prompt. Then if you click YES a warning will be displayed informing you that this is your 'last chance to reprint the report'. If you select Yes again to this prompt and then try and go back to the Report to print the screen will be blank with no transactions **No:** exit the Report without printing.

5.3 Reservation Report



199

The **Reservation Report** provides you with details of Guest reservations, when they are arriving, departing or In-House. Also if the reservation is Unconfirmed or has been Cancelled. A Booking List can be printed to show the bookings made on any particular day. Within these parameters, further selections can be made to fine tune the information you require.



200

Report Type

Select from the options below. Note that **ONLY** one option can be selected at a time.

- Arrivals:** select to report on Arrivals only.
- Departures:** select to report on Departures only.
- In-House:** select to report on Guests in house only.
- Booking List:** select to report on Bookings made on a certain date.
- Unconfirmed:** select to report on Wait Listed or Tentative bookings.
- Cancellation:** select to report on Cancelled bookings.
- Longterm Stays:** select to report on Longterm Accommodation stays.
- History:** select to report all changes on selected reservations.

Within the above selection, the following options can then be applied to the above.

Details in Report

Select from one of the following:

- Not yet arrived:** Only show guests that have not arrived.
- Not yet departed:** Only show guests that have not departed.
- Detailed report:** Show payment type.
- Show group master only:** Only show group master.

Who to Include

Select from one of the following:

- Groups:** only show groups.
Singles: only show singles.
All: show all guests.
Start Date: enter a start date. (DDMMYY)
End Date: enter a end date. (DDMMYY)
Start Account: enter a start account number.
End Account: enter a end account number.
Enter Debtor: enter a debtor code or 'ALL'.
Room Type: only show particular room types.

Once the report is displayed, you can sort it by clicking on any of the column headings. This will sort the report in ascending order.

To print the report, click on the **Print** button once. To exit the report, click on the **Exit** button once.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Guest Report-Inhouse" with a table of guest reservations. The table has columns: Acc #, Res #, Name, Grp #, Rm#, Arrival, Depart, S, B..., F, Pkg, and Pmt. Below the table, there are summary statistics: Total Adults (17), Children (0), Infants (0), and Rooms (12). At the bottom right, there are buttons for "Print" and "Exit".

Acc #	Res #	Name	Grp #	Rm#	Arrival	Depart	S	B...	F	Pkg	Pmt
0000551	578	STARFLEET	551	GRP	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...			
0000552	579	BURNS MR GEORGE	551	14	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		CON	
0000553	580	SIMPSON MR HOMER	551	17	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		CON	
0000554	581	SKYWALKER MR LUKE	551	09	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		CON	
0000555	582	HOOD MR ROBIN	551	10	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		CON	
0000556	583	TUCK . FRIAR	551	11	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		CON	
0000564	596	HARRISON MS HELEN	0	04	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		HSP	
0000564	596	SMITH MS SUSAN	0	04	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	A	S...		HSP	
0000550	577	REYNOLDS MR DAVID	0	01	30/10/2013	02/11/2013	A	S...		BB1	
0000017	584	KIDMAN MS NICOLE	0	28	30/10/2013	03/11/2013	A	S...		BB4	
0000209	589	TAYLOR MR TOM	0	12	31/10/2013	04/11/2013	N	S...			
0000347	588	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WIL...	0	21	28/10/2013	04/11/2013	A	S...		SU	
0000126	597	JONES BILL	0	02	30/10/2013	09/11/2013	A	S...		KSP	

Total Adults: 17 Children: 0 Infants: 0 Rooms: 12

Print Exit

201

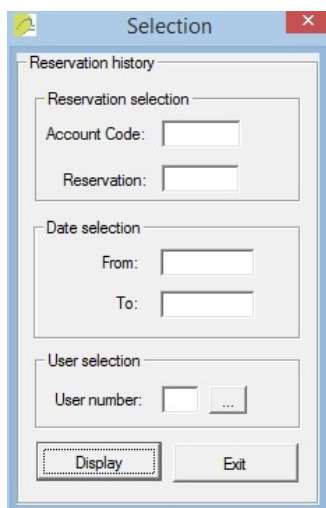
5.3.1 Reservation History

Select the History button on the Reservation Report to display any changes or additions made to a Guest Reservation.

The screenshot shows a window with three buttons: "History", "Screen", and "Exit".

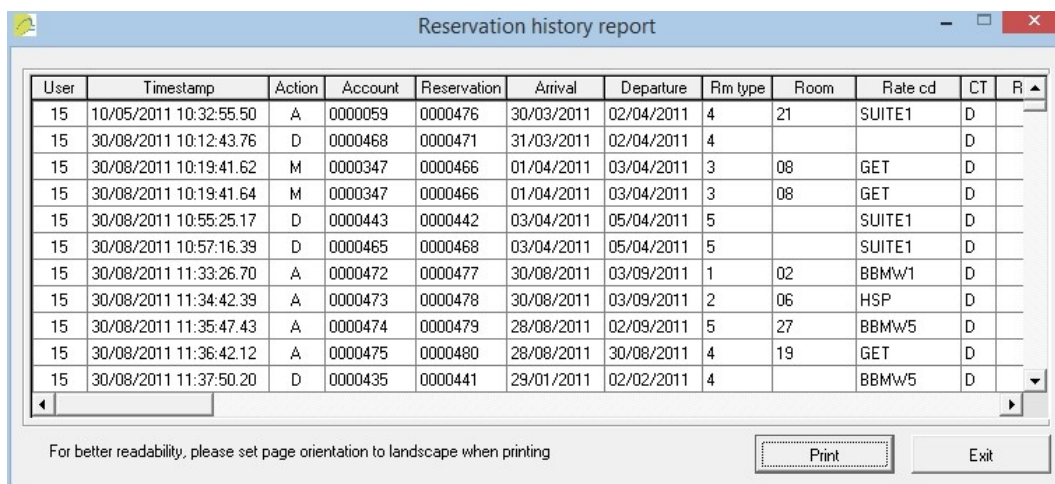
201a

The following screen will display where you can select options to search by. If searching for a specific account enter the number in the Account Code with the Reservation number. Select a date range and User number if required.



201b

If no information is entered to search by then all entries will display. This is not recommended as there may be too many entries to display.

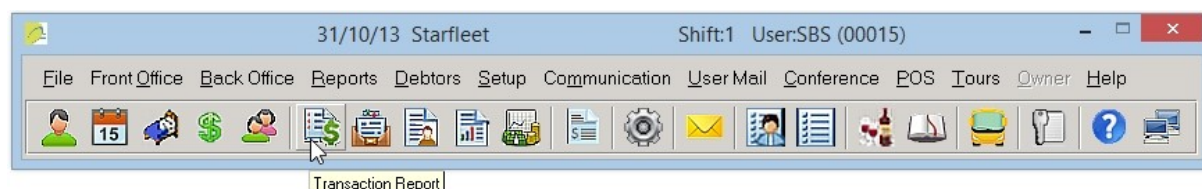


User	Timestamp	Action	Account	Reservation	Arrival	Departure	Rm type	Room	Rate cd	CT	R
15	10/05/2011 10:32:55.50	A	0000059	0000476	30/03/2011	02/04/2011	4	21	SUITE1	D	
15	30/08/2011 10:12:43.76	D	0000468	0000471	31/03/2011	02/04/2011	4			D	
15	30/08/2011 10:19:41.62	M	0000347	0000466	01/04/2011	03/04/2011	3	08	GET	D	
15	30/08/2011 10:19:41.64	M	0000347	0000466	01/04/2011	03/04/2011	3	08	GET	D	
15	30/08/2011 10:55:25.17	D	0000443	0000442	03/04/2011	05/04/2011	5		SUITE1	D	
15	30/08/2011 10:57:16.39	D	0000465	0000468	03/04/2011	05/04/2011	5		SUITE1	D	
15	30/08/2011 11:33:26.70	A	0000472	0000477	30/08/2011	03/09/2011	1	02	BBMW1	D	
15	30/08/2011 11:34:42.39	A	0000473	0000478	30/08/2011	03/09/2011	2	06	HSP	D	
15	30/08/2011 11:35:47.43	A	0000474	0000479	28/08/2011	02/09/2011	5	27	BBMW5	D	
15	30/08/2011 11:36:42.12	A	0000475	0000480	28/08/2011	30/08/2011	4	19	GET	D	
15	30/08/2011 11:37:50.20	D	0000435	0000441	29/01/2011	02/02/2011	4		BBMW5	D	

201c

A = Added, D = Deleted, M = Modified

5.4 Transaction List



202

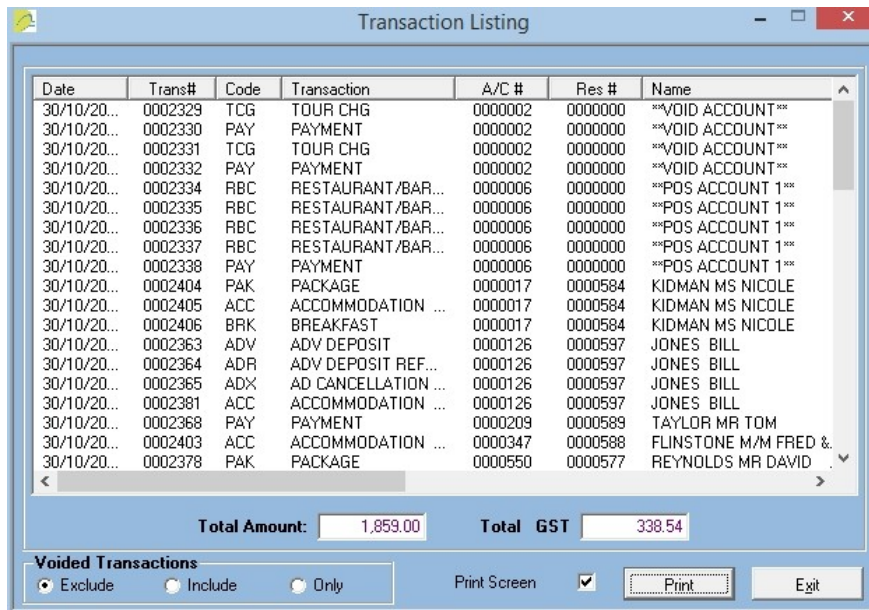
This report allows an audit trail of all revenue and payment entries to be printed or displayed with a number of selection options. Used to check the entries from just one shift, user or room, to all transactions over a long period of time. As the system is effectively a double entry accounting system, this report will display exactly what is entered in the normal course of charges (revenue) and payments (receipts). It is the primary report for reconciling the accounting flow in your Front Office.

Date from:	enter a From date (DDMMYY).
Date until:	enter an Until date (DDMMYY).
Daily:	select a day to print all entries for.
Monthly:	select a month to print all entries for.
Range:	select a date range to report on (e.g. one week).
Full listing:	select to report on all entries in the desired range.
Reversal Only:	will display reversals that have been posted only.
Totals only:	select just to see the totals of your previous selection.
Totals only (Basic):	will not display balances of the Advance Deposit, Debtors and Guest Ledgers.
Transaction:	select and enter a transaction code to match.
Account:	select and enter an account number to match.
Room #:	select and enter a room number to match.
User #:	select and enter a user number to match.
Shift #:	select and enter a shift number to match.
Pay Type:	select and enter the pay type code to match.

203

The export button exports the transaction list as a comma delimited text. This file can then be opened in Excel. Refer to [Export](#)¹²² for more information.

Once the report is displayed, you can sort it by clicking on any of the column headings. This will sort that column on the report in ascending order. Note that any column which has multiple identical fields may not put them in a true ascending sequence. The next screen is a display of a Full listing report.



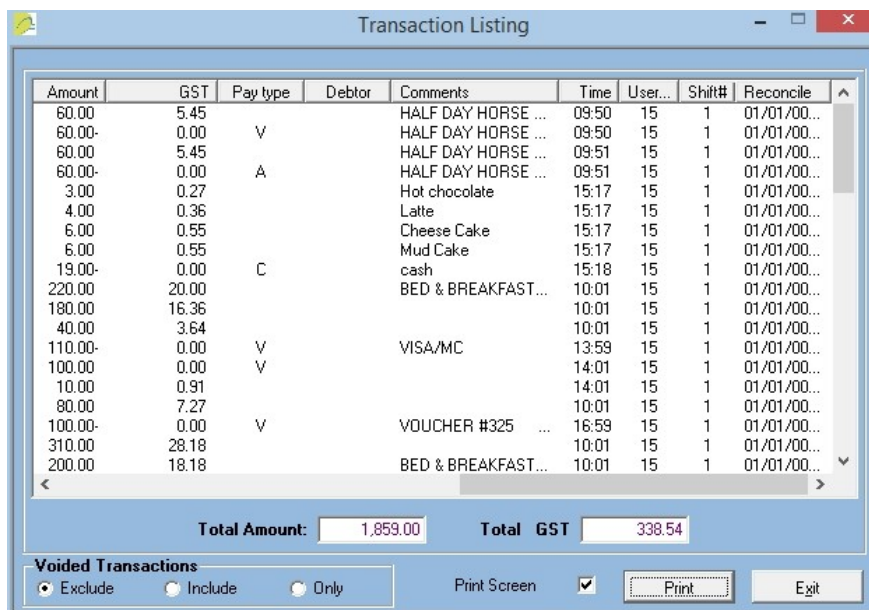
Date	Trans#	Code	Transaction	A/C #	Res #	Name
30/10/20...	0002329	TCG	TOUR CHG	0000002	0000000	**VOID ACCOUNT**
30/10/20...	0002330	PAY	PAYMENT	0000002	0000000	**VOID ACCOUNT**
30/10/20...	0002331	TCG	TOUR CHG	0000002	0000000	**VOID ACCOUNT**
30/10/20...	0002332	PAY	PAYMENT	0000002	0000000	**VOID ACCOUNT**
30/10/20...	0002334	RBC	RESTAURANT/BAR...	0000006	0000000	**POS ACCOUNT 1**
30/10/20...	0002335	RBC	RESTAURANT/BAR...	0000006	0000000	**POS ACCOUNT 1**
30/10/20...	0002336	RBC	RESTAURANT/BAR...	0000006	0000000	**POS ACCOUNT 1**
30/10/20...	0002337	RBC	RESTAURANT/BAR...	0000006	0000000	**POS ACCOUNT 1**
30/10/20...	0002338	PAY	PAYMENT	0000006	0000000	**POS ACCOUNT 1**
30/10/20...	0002404	PAK	PACKAGE	0000017	0000584	KIDMAN MS NICOLE
30/10/20...	0002405	ACC	ACCOMMODATION ...	0000017	0000584	KIDMAN MS NICOLE
30/10/20...	0002406	BRK	BREAKFAST	0000017	0000584	KIDMAN MS NICOLE
30/10/20...	0002363	ADV	ADV DEPOSIT	0000126	0000597	JONES BILL
30/10/20...	0002364	ADR	ADV DEPOSIT REF...	0000126	0000597	JONES BILL
30/10/20...	0002365	ADX	AD CANCELLATION ...	0000126	0000597	JONES BILL
30/10/20...	0002381	ACC	ACCOMMODATION ...	0000126	0000597	JONES BILL
30/10/20...	0002368	PAY	PAYMENT	0000209	0000589	TAYLOR MR TOM
30/10/20...	0002403	ACC	ACCOMMODATION ...	0000347	0000588	FLINSTONE M/M FRED &
30/10/20...	0002378	PAK	PACKAGE	0000550	0000577	REYNOLDS MR DAVID

Total Amount: 1,859.00 Total GST 338.54

Voided Transactions
☒ Exclude ☐ Include ☐ Only
 Print Screen ☒

204

In the comments section now any transactions that have been transferred to a debtor will show up with the debtor code listed under the heading of comments. This is another way to track where transactions have gone to. Below is a display of a Totals only report.



Amount	GST	Pay type	Debtor	Comments	Time	User...	Shift#	Reconcile
60.00	5.45			HALF DAY HORSE ...	09:50	15	1	01/01/00...
60.00	0.00	V		HALF DAY HORSE ...	09:50	15	1	01/01/00...
60.00	5.45			HALF DAY HORSE ...	09:51	15	1	01/01/00...
60.00	0.00	A		HALF DAY HORSE ...	09:51	15	1	01/01/00...
3.00	0.27			Hot chocolate	15:17	15	1	01/01/00...
4.00	0.36			Latte	15:17	15	1	01/01/00...
6.00	0.55			Cheese Cake	15:17	15	1	01/01/00...
6.00	0.55			Mud Cake	15:17	15	1	01/01/00...
19.00	0.00	C		cash	15:18	15	1	01/01/00...
220.00	20.00			BED & BREAKFAST...	10:01	15	1	01/01/00...
180.00	16.36				10:01	15	1	01/01/00...
40.00	3.64				10:01	15	1	01/01/00...
110.00	0.00	V		VISA/MC	13:59	15	1	01/01/00...
100.00	0.00	V			14:01	15	1	01/01/00...
10.00	0.91				14:01	15	1	01/01/00...
80.00	7.27				10:01	15	1	01/01/00...
100.00	0.00	V		VOUCHER #325 ...	16:59	15	1	01/01/00...
310.00	28.18				10:01	15	1	01/01/00...
200.00	18.18			BED & BREAKFAST...	10:01	15	1	01/01/00...

Total Amount: 1,859.00 Total GST 338.54

Voided Transactions
☒ Exclude ☐ Include ☐ Only
 Print Screen ☒

205

5.4.1 Export



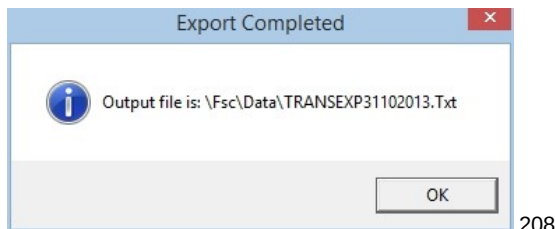
206

To export the transaction list report as a comma delimited file, select the Export button. The message below will be displayed.



207

Click Yes or No. Then the message below will be displayed. This message informs you where the text file has been exported to and the name given to it.

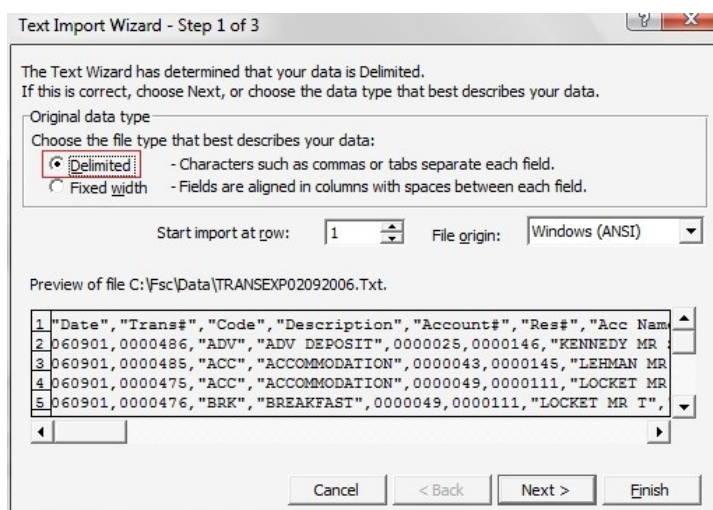


208

Click the ok button, and the export procedure is complete.

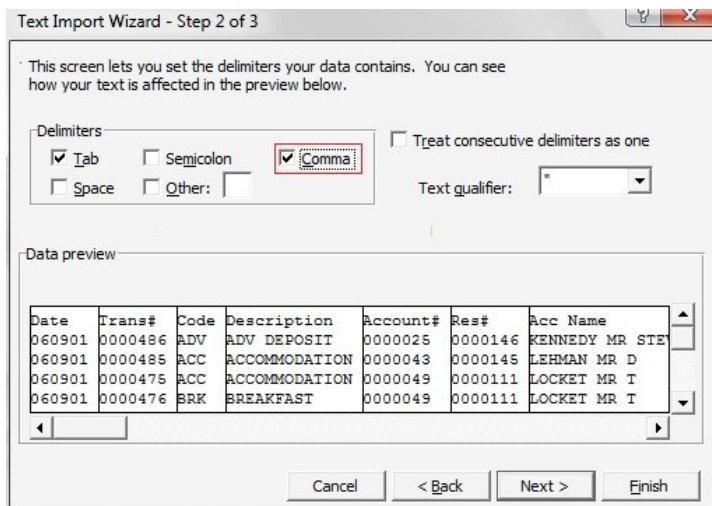
5.4.1.1 Open Exported file in Excel

To open the exported file in Excel, click on Start -> All Programs -> Microsoft Excel. Once Microsoft Excel is opened, locate the FSC folder. Double click FSC -> DATA -> then select the file then click on Open. The screen below will be displayed.



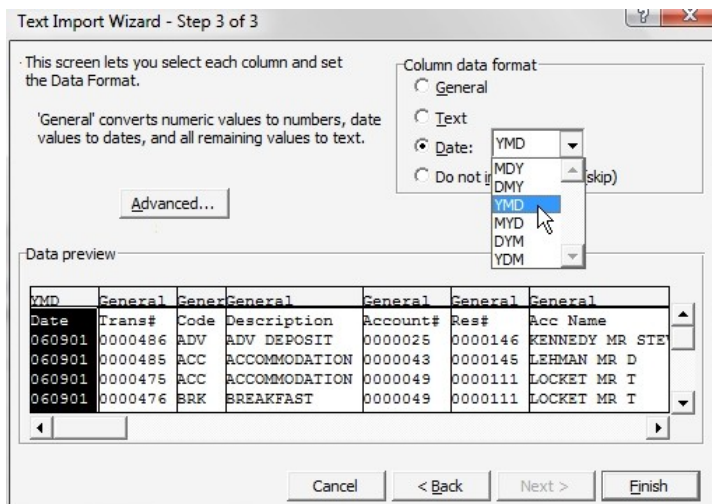
209

Make sure the Delimited option is selected, then click the **Next** button. The next window will be displayed.



210

Under the Delimiters options, tick the comma option. If any other option is ticked, please untick it, as shown above. Then click the Next button. The window below will be displayed.



211

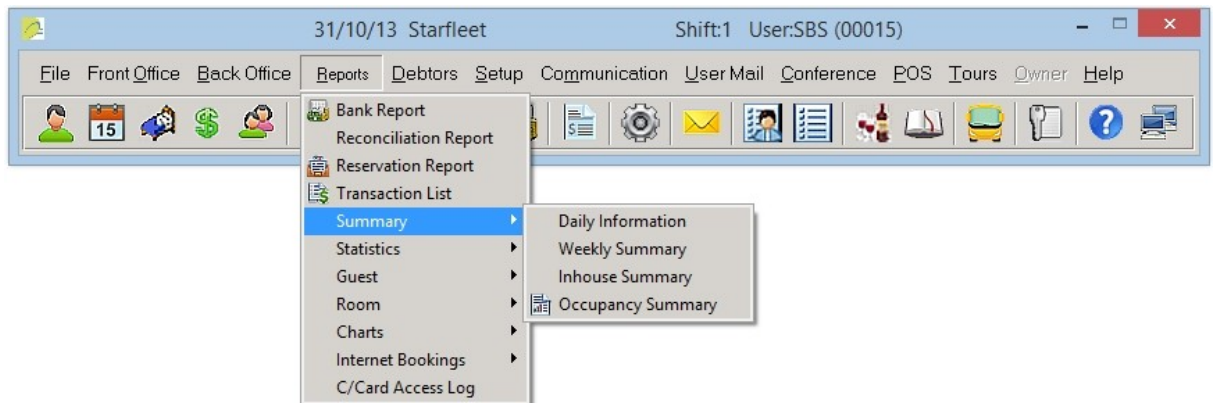
Here you can format the columns. For example the date column is in the order of YYMMDD so select the date option and then from the drop down menu select YMD. To format another column click on the column. When finished click on the finish button. The file will then be opened see below.

Microsoft Excel - TRANSEXP02092006.Txt

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Account#	Res#	Acc Name	Room#	Amount	GST	Pay Type	Comment	Time	User#	Shift
1	1/09/2006	486	ADV	ADV DEPOSIT	25	146	KENNEDY	3014	-80	0	V	VISA/MC	14:57	15	
2	1/09/2006	485	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	43	145	LEHMAN	1006	130	11.82			14:57	15	
3	1/09/2006	475	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	49	111	LOCKET	1005	140	12.73			13:43	15	
4	1/09/2006	476	BRK	BREAKFAST	49	111	LOCKET	1005	20	1.82			13:43	15	
5	1/09/2006	477	DIN	DINNER	49	111	LOCKET	1005	65	5.91			14:30	15	
6	1/09/2006	478	TEL	TELEPHONE	49	111	LOCKET	1005	1.2	0.11			14:30	15	
7	1/09/2006	479	XFR	XFER TO	49	111	LOCKET	1005	-140	0			14:44	15	
8	1/09/2006	490	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	49	111	LOCKET	1005	155	14.09			9:11	15	
9	1/09/2006	461	PAY	PAYMENT	50	121	KENNY	3013	-250	0	I	DIRECT DEBIT	13:06	15	
10	1/09/2006	492	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	54	119	GIBSON	3011	130	11.82			9:11	15	
11	1/09/2006	468	ACC	ACCOMMODATION	129	125	DOUGLAS	2005	80	7.27			13:29	15	
12	1/09/2006	469	BRK	BREAKFAST	129	125	DOUGLAS	2005	20	1.82			13:30	15	
13	1/09/2006	470	TEL	TELEPHONE	129	125	DOUGLAS	2005	0.9	0.08			13:30	15	
14	1/09/2006	480	DIN	DINNER	129	125	DOUGLAS	2005	65	5.91			14:47	15	

212

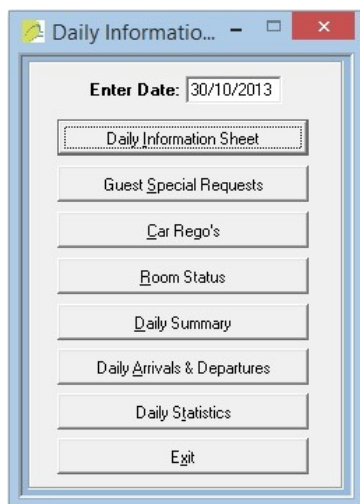
5.5 Summary



213

5.5.1 Daily Information

This report will give you a breakdown of all your arrivals, departures and stay overs for the day. Also from here, you can display a report to tell you which guests are yet to arrive, as well as the guests still to depart. You can also view and print a list of all the in-house guests car registrations.



214

Click on the links below for details on the above reports.

- [Daily Information Sheet](#) ¹²⁵
- [Guest Special Requests](#) ¹²⁵
- [Car Rego's](#) ¹²⁶
- [Room Status](#) ¹²⁶
- [Daily Summary](#) ¹²⁷
- [Daily Arrivals & Departures](#) ¹²⁷
- [Daily Statistics](#) ¹²⁸

5.5.1.1 Daily Information Sheet

Daily Information Sheet For 30102013

ARRIVALS									
Rm#	Name	PAX	S/D/T	Depart	Comments	ETA	ETD	Rate	Pkg
	KIDMAN NICOLE	2		03/11/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	220.00	BB4
	JONES BILL	1	K	29/12/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	80.00	KSP
01	REYNOLDS DAVID	2	K	02/11/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	200.00	BB1
04	HARRISON HELEN	2	KSS	01/11/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	110.00	HSP
STAYOVERS									
Rm#	Name	PAX	S/D/T	Depart	Comments	ETA	ETD	Rate	Pkg
07	CARTWRIGHT LINDA	1		31/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	80.00	DST
21	FLINSTONE FRED & WILMA	4		04/11/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	310.00	SU
25	NICHOLSON JACK	1		31/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	0.00	FDC
TOTALS: 4 ROOMS		6 PAX							
DEPARTURES									
Rm#	Name	PAX	S/D/T	Depart	Comments	ETA	ETD	Rate	Pkg
03	PARKER STEVEN	2	K	30/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	90.00	KSP
18	HOGAN MICK	3		30/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	140.00	SUITE
28	JACKSON KEVIN	5		30/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	330.00	PENT
TOTALS: 3 ROOMS		10 PAX							

Print Exit

215

This report gives a summary of the guest arrivals, stay-overs and departures. It also gives the room#, name, pax, ETD, ETA, rate, package and comments.

5.5.1.2 Guest Special Requests

This will display a report for the date selected. If a Guest has a special request for flowers or wine to be in their room on arrival then this can be entered in the reservation. Refer to [Guest Housekeeping/Travel Agent/Guest Special Request](#) ³⁷ to enter in to a guest reservation. Select print for a hard copy of the report. To set up the special requests items refer to Set Up -> [Guest Special Request](#) ²²³.

Guest Special Request Report

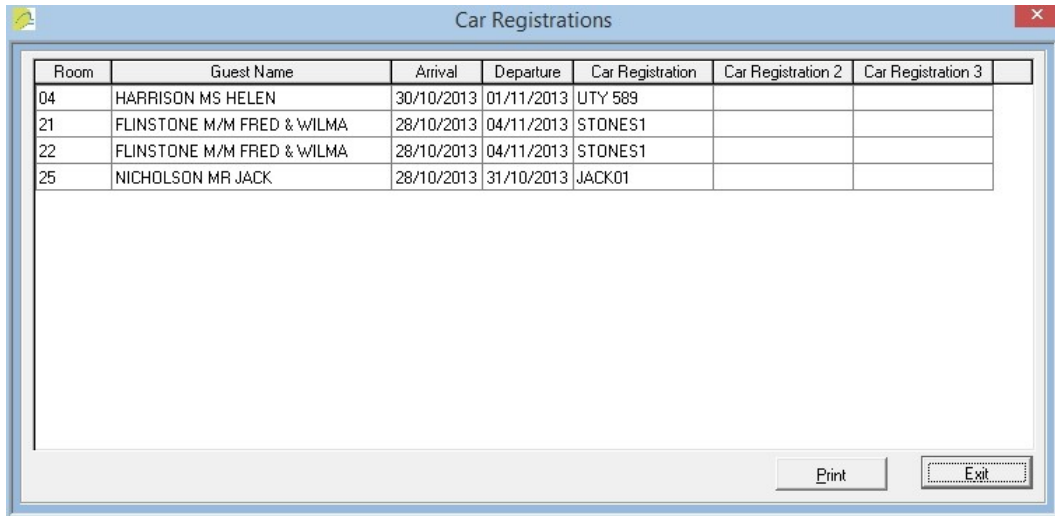
Rm#	Res #	Name	Company	Arr Date	Time	Method	Dep Date	Time	Method
01	0000577	REYNOLDS MR DAVID		30/10/2013	03.00PM		02/11/2013	10.00AM	
25	0000590	NICHOLSON MR JACK		28/10/2013	03.00PM		31/10/2013	10.00AM	

Order Report By: Room ☒ Reservation ☐ Name ☐ Arrival Date ☐ Departure Date ☐

Print Exit

216

5.5.1.3 Car Rego's



The screenshot shows a window titled "Car Registrations" with a table containing the following data:

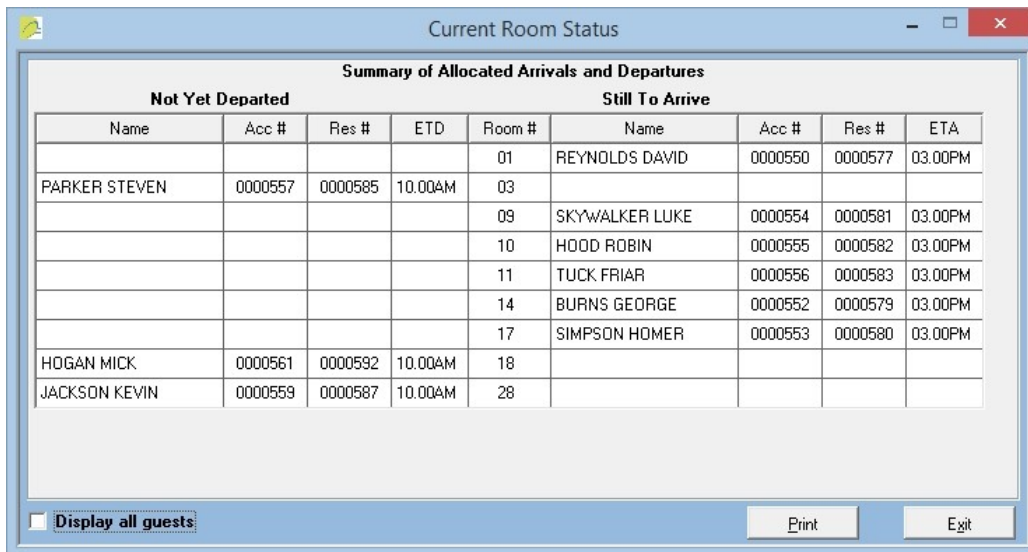
Room	Guest Name	Arrival	Departure	Car Registration	Car Registration 2	Car Registration 3
04	HARRISON MS HELEN	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	UTY 589		
21	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WILMA	28/10/2013	04/11/2013	STONES1		
22	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WILMA	28/10/2013	04/11/2013	STONES1		
25	NICHOLSON MR JACK	28/10/2013	31/10/2013	JACK01		

At the bottom right of the window are buttons for "Print" and "Exit".

217

This gives a summary of the guests' car registrations and the room numbers. Click on the print button for a hard copy or just exit to return to the previous window.

5.5.1.4 Room Status



The screenshot shows a window titled "Current Room Status" with a table titled "Summary of Allocated Arrivals and Departures". The table is divided into two sections: "Not Yet Departed" and "Still To Arrive".

Not Yet Departed					Still To Arrive			
Name	Acc #	Res #	ETD	Room #	Name	Acc #	Res #	ETA
				01	REYNOLDS DAVID	0000550	0000577	03.00PM
PARKER STEVEN	0000557	0000585	10.00AM	03				
				09	SKYWALKER LUKE	0000554	0000581	03.00PM
				10	HOOD ROBIN	0000555	0000582	03.00PM
				11	TUCK FRIAR	0000556	0000583	03.00PM
				14	BURNS GEORGE	0000552	0000579	03.00PM
				17	SIMPSON HOMER	0000553	0000580	03.00PM
HOGAN MICK	0000561	0000592	10.00AM	18				
JACKSON KEVIN	0000559	0000587	10.00AM	28				

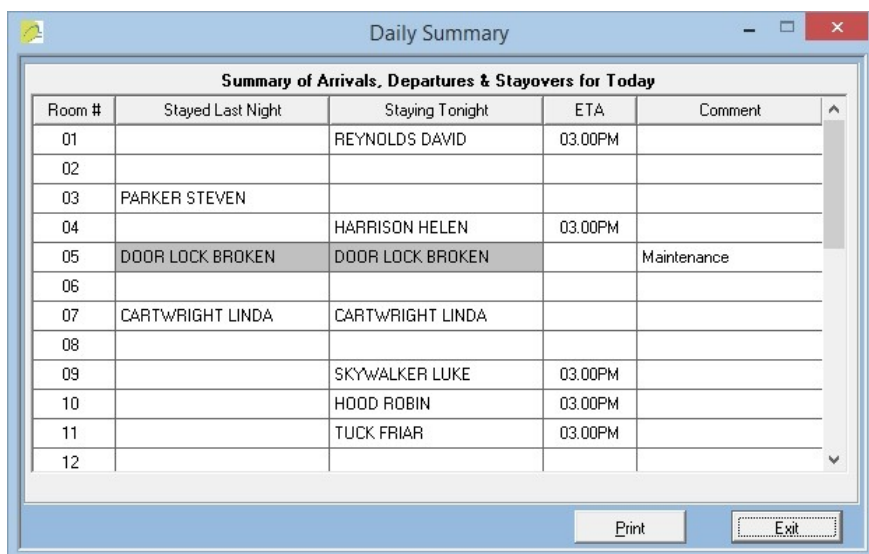
At the bottom left of the window is a checkbox labeled "Display all guests". At the bottom right are buttons for "Print" and "Exit".

218

This is a summary of the allocated arrivals and departures. The report is divided into two parts:-

1. Not Yet Departed which displays the following information;
 - Name
 - Acc#
 - Res#
 - ETD
 - Room#
2. Still To Arrive which displays the following information;
 - Name
 - Acc#
 - Res#
 - ETA

5.5.1.5 Daily Summary



Room #	Stayed Last Night	Staying Tonight	ETA	Comment
01		REYNOLDS DAVID	03.00PM	
02				
03	PARKER STEVEN			
04		HARRISON HELEN	03.00PM	
05	DOOR LOCK BROKEN	DOOR LOCK BROKEN		Maintenance
06				
07	CARTWRIGHT LINDA	CARTWRIGHT LINDA		
08				
09		SKYWALKER LUKE	03.00PM	
10		HOOD ROBIN	03.00PM	
11		TUCK FRIAR	03.00PM	
12				

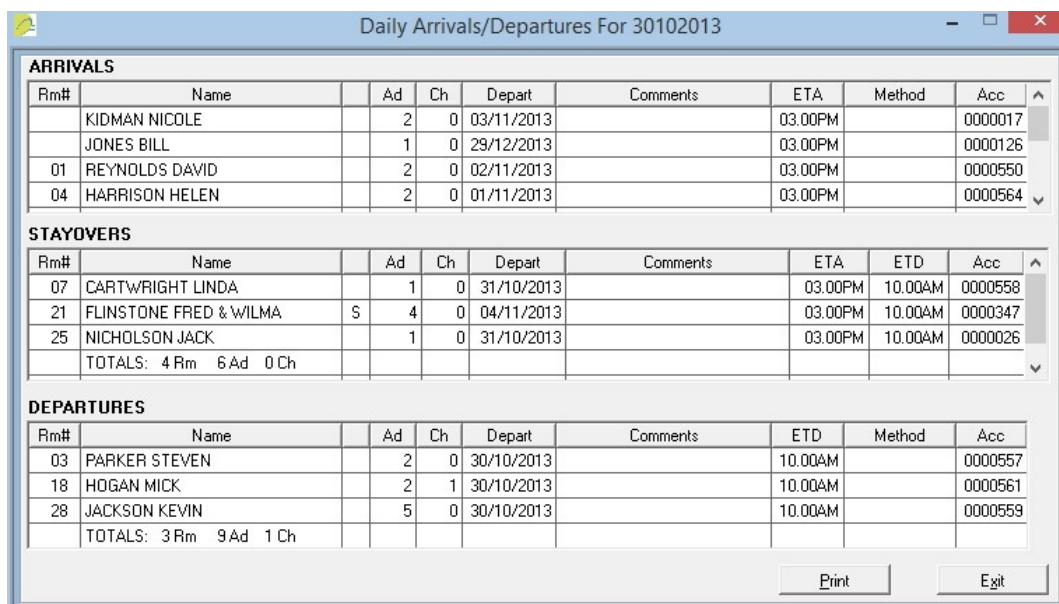
219

This report gives a summary of the guests' arrivals, departures and stayovers for the day. It also gives the Room#, name of guests who stayed last night, staying tonight, ETA and comment.

5.5.1.6 Daily Arrivals & Departures

The following report gives a summary of the

- arrivals & departures for a particular room
- All guests for a room
- Account #
- Reservation #
- Expected time of arrival (ETA) and expected time of departure (ETD)
- Method: operator can enter arrival/departure method i.e. Plane, Ferry.



ARRIVALS									
Rm#	Name	Ad	Ch	Depart	Comments	ETA	Method	Acc	
	KIDMAN NICOLE	2	0	03/11/2013		03.00PM		0000017	
	JONES BILL	1	0	29/12/2013		03.00PM		0000126	
01	REYNOLDS DAVID	2	0	02/11/2013		03.00PM		0000550	
04	HARRISON HELEN	2	0	01/11/2013		03.00PM		0000564	
STAYOVERS									
Rm#	Name	Ad	Ch	Depart	Comments	ETA	ETD	Acc	
07	CARTWRIGHT LINDA	1	0	31/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	0000558	
21	FLINSTONE FRED & WILMA	S	4	04/11/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	0000347	
25	NICHOLSON JACK	1	0	31/10/2013		03.00PM	10.00AM	0000026	
TOTALS: 4 Rm 6 Ad 0 Ch									
DEPARTURES									
Rm#	Name	Ad	Ch	Depart	Comments	ETD	Method	Acc	
03	PARKER STEVEN	2	0	30/10/2013		10.00AM		0000557	
18	HOGAN MICK	2	1	30/10/2013		10.00AM		0000561	
28	JACKSON KEVIN	5	0	30/10/2013		10.00AM		0000559	
TOTALS: 3 Rm 9 Ad 1 Ch									

220

Tick the **display all guests** if you want to display all the guests.

Select the Print button to print the report or the Exit button to return to the previous menu.

5.5.1.7 Daily Statistics

Daily Statistics Report

Report Date: 29/10/2013

STATISTICS		ROOMS
Rooms Sold		5
FOC		1
Day Use*		0
Vacant		22

		28
GUESTS		
Arrivals		0
Departures		0
No Guests		16
SOURCE		
A - ASK GUEST	5	860.00
ADV - ADVERTISING		
CON - CONFERENCE		
DIR - DIRECT BOOKING		
GIF - GIFT VOUCHER		
GOV - GOVERNMENT		
INT - INTERNET		

Print Exit

221

This report gives the statistics for rooms and guests. It also gives the revenue statistics from:-

- Source
- Area
- Segment

5.5.2 Weekly Summary

Weekly Sum...

Week ending date: 30/10/2013

Enter user # or 00 for all: 00

☐ Week to date figures only

Daily Summ

Weekly Summ

Exit

452

To print a Weekly Summary click the 'Weekly Summary' button in the **Report** menu. This enables you to print a summary of all revenue, receipts and the occupancy statistics. This is done day by day, for a week, up to the end date entered. You have the option to include or exclude the month to date, and year to date totals.

Week Ending Date(DDMMYY)

Enter the date you would like the report to finish with.

User Number

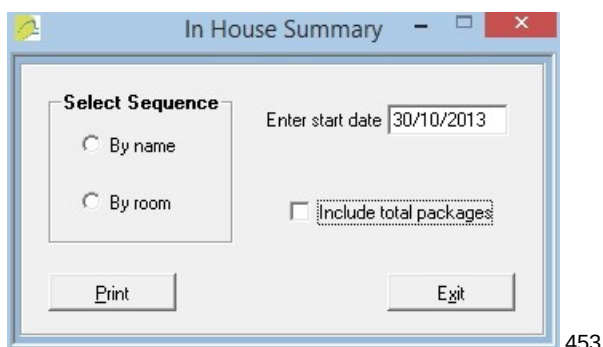
Enter the user number to report on or '00' for all.

Select the Daily Summary Or Weekly Summary buttons

NOTE: This report may take a little while to process and print, as all transactions over the range of days selected, as well as the previous 12 months are accumulated.

The room type revenue break down is calculated from the room rate as entered in the reservations. If a rate change has occurred, the rate as at check out will be calculated. After making your selections, your reports will automatically print out.

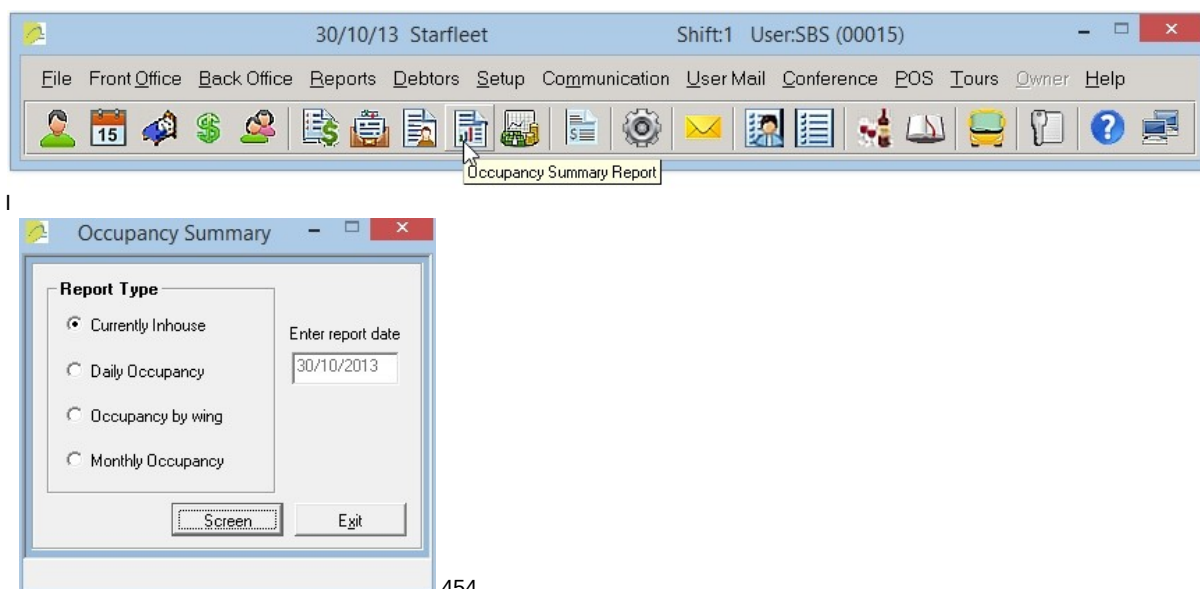
5.5.3 In House Summary



453

To print the In House summary, select the 'In House Summary' button in the **Reports** menu. This module provides a detailed list of expected occupancy, over a seven-day period beginning from the start date entered. It enables efficient planning of housekeeping staff requirements by listing all guests that will be in house each day for the next seven days. The report can be listed by either guest name or by the room numbers.

5.5.4 Occupancy Summary



454

Occupancy Summary

To print or display Occupancy summary, click the 'Occupancy Summary' button in the **Reports, Summary** menu or select the quick icon on the menu bar.

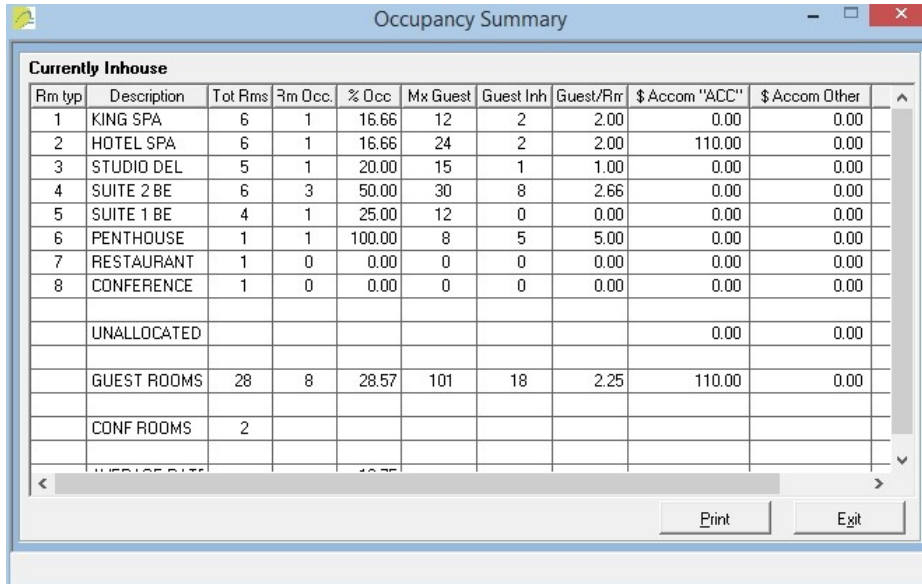
There are four occupancy reports available.

1. Currently In house
2. Daily Occupancy
3. Daily Occupancy by Wing
4. Monthly Occupancy

Currently In house Report

This reports on all bookings, listing the number of guests staying in-house, the number of rooms sold and the percentage occupancy daily. These figures are also broken down into room types. Totals for the day are also listed at the end of the report. This is the more detailed report.

To print the Currently In house Report, select the currently In house button. You then enter a report date and click on the Screen button this will display the report and then print if required.

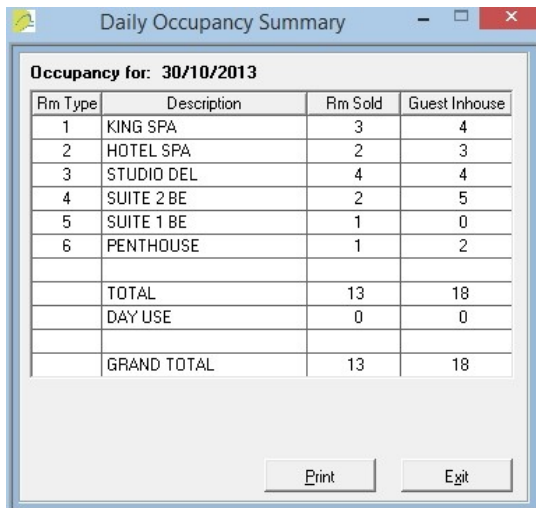


Rm typ	Description	Tot Rms	Rm Occ	% Occ	Mx Guest	Guest Inh	Guest/Rm	\$ Accom 'ACC'	\$ Accom Other
1	KING SPA	6	1	16.66	12	2	2.00	0.00	0.00
2	HOTEL SPA	6	1	16.66	24	2	2.00	110.00	0.00
3	STUDIO DEL	5	1	20.00	15	1	1.00	0.00	0.00
4	SUITE 2 BE	6	3	50.00	30	8	2.66	0.00	0.00
5	SUITE 1 BE	4	1	25.00	12	0	0.00	0.00	0.00
6	PENTHOUSE	1	1	100.00	8	5	5.00	0.00	0.00
7	RESTAURANT	1	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0.00	0.00
8	CONFERENCE	1	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0.00	0.00
	UNALLOCATED							0.00	0.00
	GUEST ROOMS	28	8	28.57	101	18	2.25	110.00	0.00
	CONF ROOMS	2							
	UNALLOCATED								

455

Daily Occupancy Report

This report lists or displays the current day's occupancy figures. To display today's occupancy figures, select the Daily report option and click on the **Screen** button once. Click on print if you require a hard copy. If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.



Rm Type	Description	Rm Sold	Guest Inhouse
1	KING SPA	3	4
2	HOTEL SPA	2	3
3	STUDIO DEL	4	4
4	SUITE 2 BE	2	5
5	SUITE 1 BE	1	0
6	PENTHOUSE	1	2
	TOTAL	13	18
	DAY USE	0	0
	GRAND TOTAL	13	18

456

Daily Occupancy by Wing

This report shows the revenue earned by each wing when the rooms are setup to be in wings.

To display the Daily Occupancy by Wing report, select the **Daily Occupancy by Wing** option and click on the **Screen** button once. Click on print if you require a hard copy. If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

Wing	Rm type	Description	Tot Rms	Rm Occ	% Occ	Mx Guest	Guest Inh	\$ Acc	\$ Other
1	KING SPA		6	1	16.60	12	2	90.00	0.00
2	HOTEL SPA		6	0	0.00	24	0	0.00	0.00
3	STUDIO DEL		5	1	20.00	15	1	80.00	0.00
4	SUITE 2 BE		6	3	50.00	30	8	450.00	0.00
5	SUITE 1 BE		4	1	25.00	12	0	0.00	0.00
6	PENTHOUSE		1	1	100.00	8	5	330.00	0.00
7	RESTAURANT		1	0	0.00	150	0	0.00	0.00
8	CONFERENCE		1	0	0.00	150	0	0.00	0.00
	Total		30	7	23.30	401	16	950.00	0.00
	Group charges				0.00			0.00	0.00
	Grand Total		30	7	23.30	401	16	950.00	0.00
	Avg Rate							135.71	

457

Monthly Occupancy

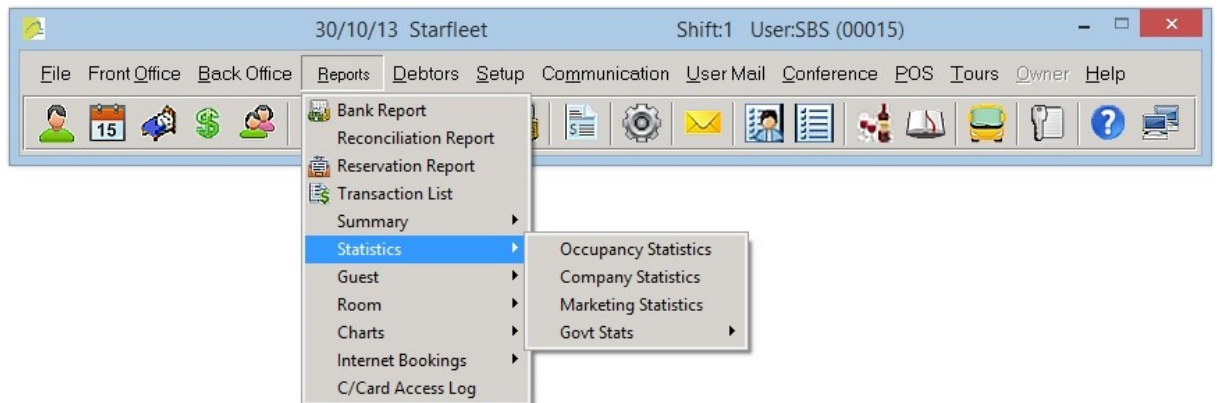
This report shows the revenue , occupancy and average room rate on a monthly period. It will display the 11 months prior to the date chosen and the figures for the next 12 months ahead.

To display the Monthly Occupancy report, select the **Monthly Occupancy** option and click on the **Screen** button once. Click on print if you require a hard copy. If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

Date	Rm Nights	Pax	No Nights	Ave Rate	Amt GST	Amt Ex GST	Occ %	Date	Rm Nights	Pax	No
30/11/2012	840			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	30/11/2013	840	70	
31/12/2012	868			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	31/12/2013	868	28	
31/01/2013	868	73	34	128.52	4,370.00	3,972.71	3.91	31/01/2014	868		
28/02/2013	784	9	5	110.00	550.00	500.00	0.63	28/02/2014	784		
31/03/2013	868			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	31/03/2014	868		
30/04/2013	840			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	30/04/2014	840		
31/05/2013	868			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	31/05/2014	868		
30/06/2013	840			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	30/06/2014	840		
31/07/2013	868			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	31/07/2014	868		
31/08/2013	868			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	31/08/2014	868		
30/09/2013	840			0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	30/09/2014	840		
31/10/2013	868	82	45	132.88	5,980.00	5,436.37	5.18	31/10/2014	868		
	10220	164	84	129.76	10,900.00	9,909.08	0.82		10220	98	

458

5.6 Statistics



458a

5.6.1 Occupancy Statistics

459

The Occupancy Statistics report is accessed by clicking on the **Occupancy Statistics** button once in the **Reports, Statistics** menu. This produces monthly occupancy statistic reports, by either

- Source
- Area or
- Market Segment Codes

This report lists the

- days of the month and the number of room nights sold under each code
- totals for the revenue generated
- room nights available
- room nights sold over the period specified
- figures for the average dollar spent per room per night
- the average room rate per night and
- the average occupancy for the period

Source, Area or Segment

List statistics by:

- Source Code
- Area Code
- Market Segment Code

Group, Singles or All

List statistics for:

- all bookings (Default)
- group bookings
- single (individual) bookings

Start Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the report to begin with.

Finish Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the report to end with.

Budget Revenue for Period

Enter the amount of budgeted revenue for the period.

Budget Occupancy for Period

Enter the budgeted occupancy (percentage) for the period.

You can tick the Forecast Figure box and you will get the projected forecast figures for the period.

NOTE: Daily Occupancy by Wing Total revenue is calculated from the room rate as entered in the reservations.

If a rate change has occurred, the rate as at check out will be calculated. Refer to [Room Sales](#)¹⁴⁹ if requiring Average Length of Stay (ALOS).

5.6.2 Company Statistics

To print or display Company Statistics, select the 'Company Statistics' button in the **Reports, Statistics** menu.

This option displays and prints a Corporate Ranking Report, listing :

- company names
- number of room nights
- number of stays
- average stay and
- total revenue for each company

Start Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the report to begin with.

Finish Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the report to end with.

Stays Range

Narrows report by filtering by minimum number of stays

Group, Singles or All

List statistics for:

- all bookings (Default)
- group company bookings
- single company (individual) bookings

Enter the company name to begin with (Optional) .

Enter the company name to end with (Optional) .

Enter the debtor code of the company to begin with (Optional).

Enter the debtor code of the company to end with (Optional) .

You can sort this report on any of the columns by just clicking once, on the particular column heading. If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

Debtor	Company Name	Rm Nts	Stays	Ave St...	Adult	Child	Accom Rev	All Rev	Total Disco...	
	WOTIF	5	4	1	10	5	663.64	729.09	0.00	
	ABC COACHES ...	6	6	1	21	0	0.00	0.00	0.00	
	QANTAS TRAVEL ...	9	4	2	11	5	2345.43	2974.97	0.00	
	STARFLEET BUSINES...	20	15	1	20	0	0.00	0.00	0.00	

Total: **Accom Rev** **All Revenue** **Discount**
3009.07 3704.06 0.00

Print Exit

5.6.3 Marketing Statistics

462

To print or display Marketing Reports, select the 'Marketing Report' button in the **Reports, Statistics** menu. This option produces statistical reports in alphabetical order by either Source Code, Area Code or Market Segment Code, listing company names, reservation numbers, room nights or revenue generated over the period specified. This can also be filtered by selecting either nights or rooms. The revenue can also be broken down into either all revenue or accommodation

Start Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the calculations to begin with.

Finish Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the date for the calculations to end with.

Group, Singles or ALL

- List statistics for:
- all bookings (Default)
- group bookings
- single (individual) bookings

By SRC, AREA OR SEG

- Source: list statistics by Source Code
- Area: list statistics by Area Code
- Segment: list statistics by Market Segment Code

Enter Start Code

Enter the debtor code of the company you wish the report to begin with.

Enter End Code

Enter the debtor code of the company you wish the report to end with.

Night/Rooms

Tick either to determine how the report is formatted.

Revenue

Tick either to determine which figures you want shown in your report.

NOTE: Room revenue is calculated from the room rate as entered in the reservations. If a rate change has occurred, the rate as at check out will be calculated.

The following report is displayed on the screen. It is broken up into Area, Segment and Source (depending on which option you selected) selected, with sub totals for each. At the end of the report there are grand totals for all Areas, Segments and Sources selected.

You have the option to either view a full report or a summary (sub totals only) of the report. If you select the summary option the following report will be shown.

If you wish to print either report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

Marketing Statistics for AREA

From 30/10/2013 To 30/10/2013

Code	Name	A/C #	Res #	Nights	Revenue	%Night	%Re
A	ASK GUEST						
A	Subtotal			7	1,172.00	58.33	100
AUS	AUSTRALIA						
AUS	Subtotal			5	0.00	41.67	0
	GRAND TOTAL			12	1,172.00		

View: ☐ Full list ☒ Summary

Print Exit

463

5.6.4 Govt Stats

Accom Quarte...

Quarter Ending 30/10/2013

☐ Include GST

☐ Print forecast figure

☒ Print actual figure

Print Exit

464

To print Australian Quarterly Survey Report, select the 'AUS Quarterly Survey' menu in the **Reports, Statistics, Govt Stats** menu. This option provides a report on

- Room Nights (No. of rooms occupied each night)
- Guest Nights (No. of guests each night)
- Guest Arrivals (No. of guests who are new arrivals each night) and
- Accommodation revenue for each night, for any quarter selected.

Quarter Ending Date (DDMMYYYY)

Enter the last day of the Quarter in (DDMMCCYY) format.

Forecast Figure

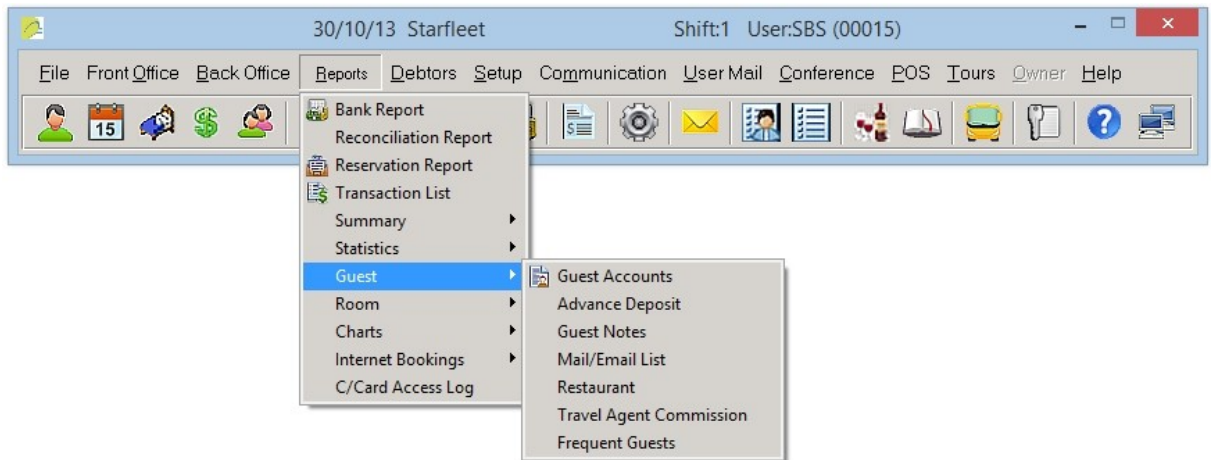
Print the forecast figure (accommodation takings is accumulated from the reservation rates).

Print the actual figure (accommodation takings is accumulated from the accommodation transactions).

After making your selections, just click on the **Print** button once to print the report.

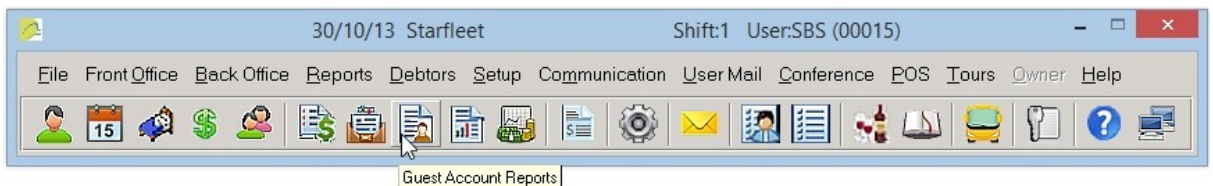
Note: You can tick the box to include the GST figures or leave unticked to exclude GST figures.

5.7 Guest



464a

5.7.1 Guest Accounts



H

To print or display Guest Accounts Reports select the 'Guest Accounts' button in the **Reports** menu. This module provides six reports namely;

- Guest account balances
- In house guest balances
- System Accounts
- Front office accounts (all)
- Name and Address list (for all guests or for a selected range of guest name or period of stay)
- Returning guest list
- Accounts with no booking

The screenshot shows the 'Guest Balances' window. It has a 'Select Report' section on the left with radio buttons for: Guest account balances (selected), Inhouse guest balances, System Accounts, Front office accounts (all), Name and Address list, Returning guests list, and Account with no booking. The main area contains several input fields and checkboxes: 'Guest Account Range' with 'Start code' (0000000) and 'End code' (9999999); checkboxes for 'Report on all accounts' (checked), 'Report on checked out guests', and 'Report on group master only'; 'Inhouse Guest Balances' with an 'Include zero or credit balance' checkbox; 'Name Range' with 'Start name' and 'End name' fields; 'Period For Guest Stay' with 'Start date' and 'End date' fields; 'Name and Address Range' with radio buttons for 'Full list' (selected), 'By guest name', and 'By period of stay'; and 'Returning Guest Range' with a 'Minimum stays' field set to 2. At the bottom are buttons for 'Acc Bal Check', 'Screen', and 'Exit'.

465

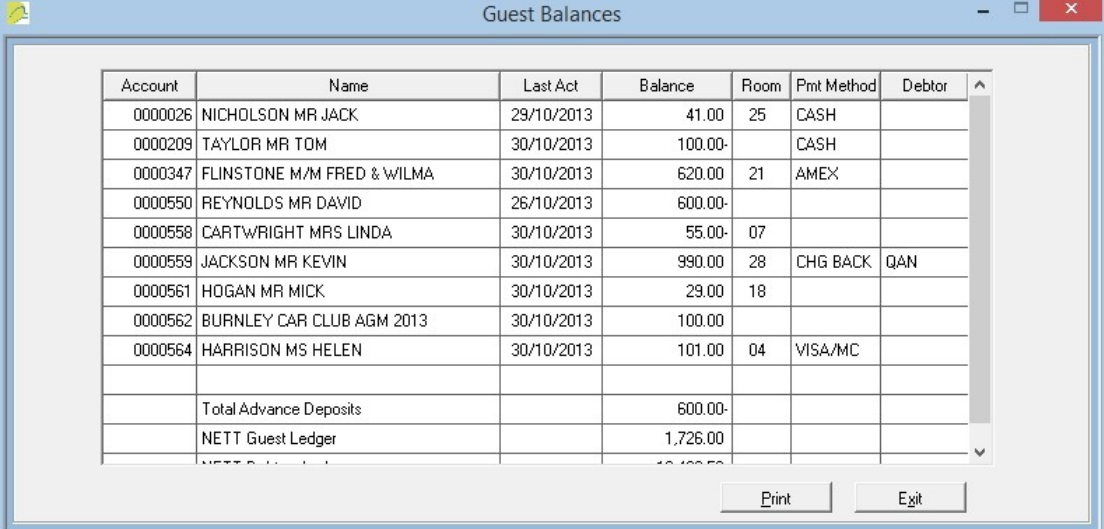
Guest Account Balances

All balances listed are the total amounts outstanding at time the report is printed, including advance deposits. Deposits on overdue reservations are not listed, however, the total of these is included in the balance.

Advance deposits listed for overdue reservations must be manually reconciled. The accounts must be checked in and the balance of the account returned to zero by applying a charge such as room revenue, or a refund of the deposit. When complete the account must then be checked out.

In this option you can also print an in-house guest list only. The screen below is displayed when Guest Account Balances is selected and the **Screen** button is clicked once. You have the choice to enter a start and end code if you wish, or just select the report all option.

If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

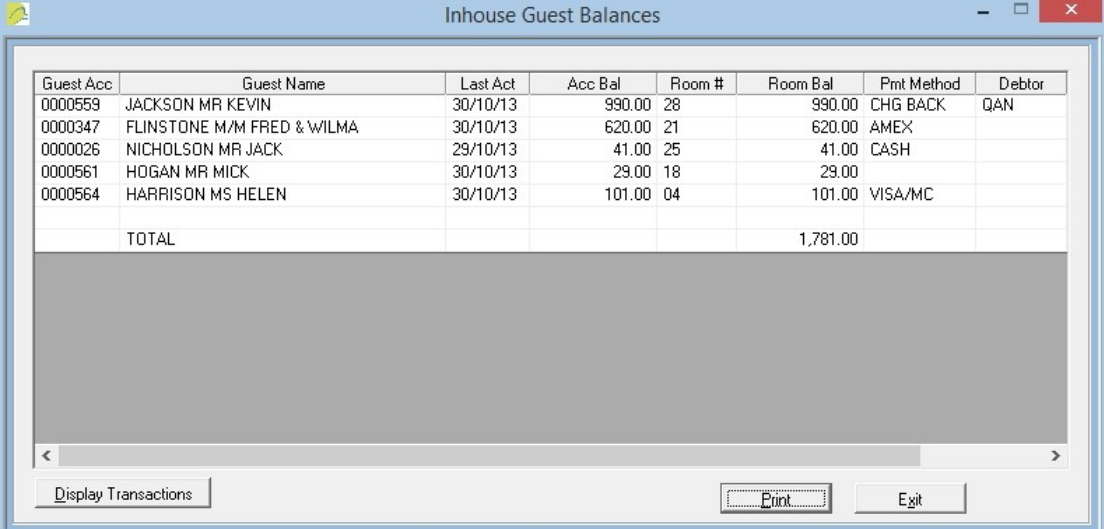


Account	Name	Last Act	Balance	Room	Pmt Method	Debtor
0000026	NICHOLSON MR JACK	29/10/2013	41.00	25	CASH	
0000209	TAYLOR MR TOM	30/10/2013	100.00		CASH	
0000347	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WILMA	30/10/2013	620.00	21	AMEX	
0000550	REYNOLDS MR DAVID	26/10/2013	600.00			
0000558	CARTWRIGHT MRS LINDA	30/10/2013	55.00	07		
0000559	JACKSON MR KEVIN	30/10/2013	990.00	28	CHG BACK	QAN
0000561	HOGAN MR MICK	30/10/2013	29.00	18		
0000562	BURNLEY CAR CLUB AGM 2013	30/10/2013	100.00			
0000564	HARRISON MS HELEN	30/10/2013	101.00	04	VISA/MC	
	Total Advance Deposits		600.00			
	NETT Guest Ledger		1,726.00			

466

In House

Select the In-house guest balances option, then whether to include zero or credit balances, followed by clicking the **Screen** button once. The report below will be displayed. Click **Print** to print this report, or **Exit** to return to the menu.

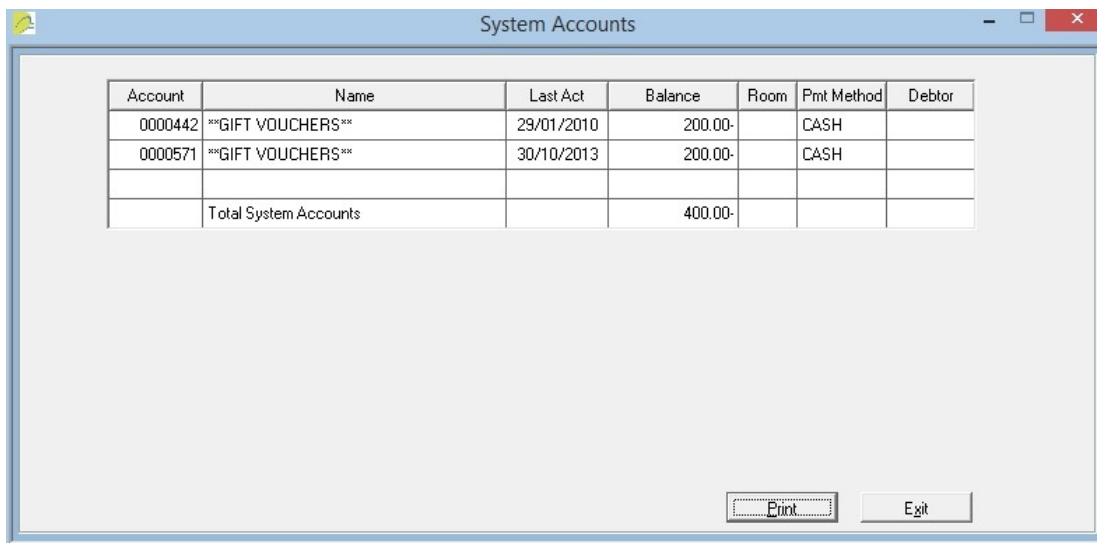


Guest Acc	Guest Name	Last Act	Acc Bal	Room #	Room Bal	Pmt Method	Debtor
0000559	JACKSON MR KEVIN	30/10/13	990.00	28	990.00	CHG BACK	QAN
0000347	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WILMA	30/10/13	620.00	21	620.00	AMEX	
0000026	NICHOLSON MR JACK	29/10/13	41.00	25	41.00	CASH	
0000561	HOGAN MR MICK	30/10/13	29.00	18	29.00		
0000564	HARRISON MS HELEN	30/10/13	101.00	04	101.00	VISA/MC	
	TOTAL				1,781.00		

467

System Accounts

Selecting the option for System Accounts will display all these accounts.



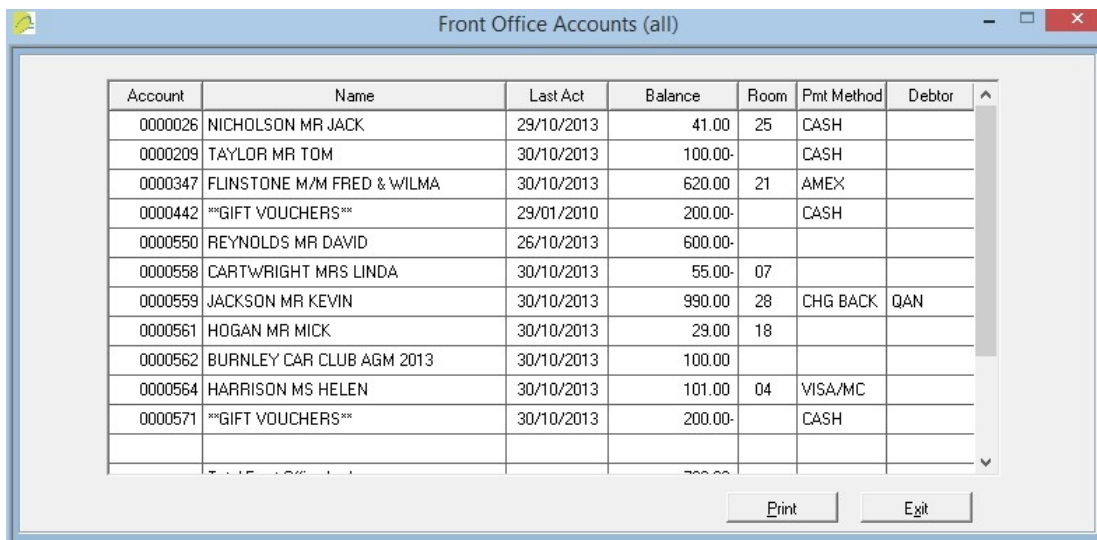
Account	Name	Last Act	Balance	Room	Pmt Method	Debtor
0000442	**GIFT VOUCHERS**	29/01/2010	200.00-		CASH	
0000571	**GIFT VOUCHERS**	30/10/2013	200.00-		CASH	
	Total System Accounts		400.00-			

Print Exit

467a

Front Office Account Balances

This report list the balances of all in-house guests by account number, Name, balances, room numbers, payment methods. Click **Print** to print this report, or **Exit** to return to the menu.



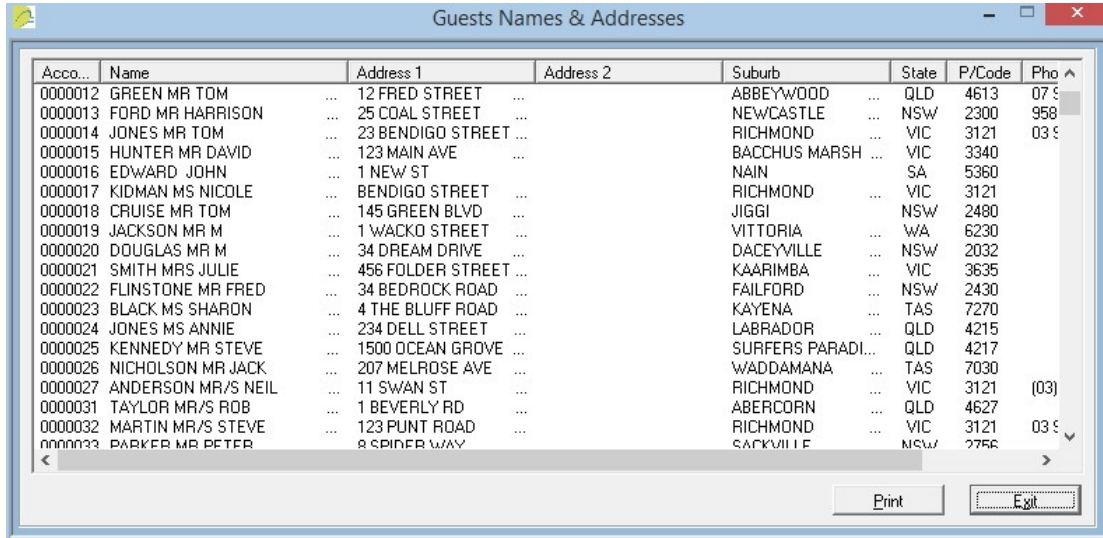
Account	Name	Last Act	Balance	Room	Pmt Method	Debtor
0000026	NICHOLSON MR JACK	29/10/2013	41.00	25	CASH	
0000209	TAYLOR MR TOM	30/10/2013	100.00-		CASH	
0000347	FLINSTONE M/M FRED & WILMA	30/10/2013	620.00	21	AMEX	
0000442	**GIFT VOUCHERS**	29/01/2010	200.00-		CASH	
0000550	REYNOLDS MR DAVID	26/10/2013	600.00-			
0000558	CARTWRIGHT MRS LINDA	30/10/2013	55.00-	07		
0000559	JACKSON MR KEVIN	30/10/2013	990.00	28	CHG BACK	QAN
0000561	HOGAN MR MICK	30/10/2013	29.00	18		
0000562	BURNLEY CAR CLUB AGM 2013	30/10/2013	100.00			
0000564	HARRISON MS HELEN	30/10/2013	101.00	04	VISA/MC	
0000571	**GIFT VOUCHERS**	30/10/2013	200.00-		CASH	

Print Exit

468

Names and Address List

The guest names & address report can be printed in full or part. If you are printing a part listing, the system will ask for a range of names (ie: starting surname, and ending surname) or a period (ie: starting date, and ending date during which the guest was in-house). Click **Print** to print this report, or **Exit** to return to the menu.



Acco...	Name	Address 1	Address 2	Suburb	State	P/Code	Pho
0000012	GREEN MR TOM	12 FRED STREET		ABBNEYWOOD	QLD	4613	07 5
0000013	FORD MR HARRISON	25 COAL STREET		NEWCASTLE	NSW	2300	958
0000014	JONES MR TOM	23 BENDIGO STREET		RICHMOND	VIC	3121	03 5
0000015	HUNTER MR DAVID	123 MAIN AVE		BACCHUS MARSH	VIC	3340	
0000016	EDWARD JOHN	1 NEW ST		NAIN	SA	5360	
0000017	KIDMAN MS NICOLE	BENDIGO STREET		RICHMOND	VIC	3121	
0000018	CRUISE MR TOM	145 GREEN BLVD		JIGGI	NSW	2480	
0000019	JACKSON MR M	1 WACKO STREET		VITTORIA	WA	6230	
0000020	DOUGLAS MR M	34 DREAM DRIVE		DACEYVILLE	NSW	2032	
0000021	SMITH MRS JULIE	456 FOLDER STREET		KAARIMBA	VIC	3635	
0000022	FLINSTONE MR FRED	34 BEDROCK ROAD		FAILFORD	NSW	2430	
0000023	BLACK MS SHARON	4 THE BLUFF ROAD		KAYENA	TAS	7270	
0000024	JONES MS ANNIE	234 DELL STREET		LABRADOR	QLD	4215	
0000025	KENNEDY MR STEVE	1500 OCEAN GROVE		SURFERS PARADI...	QLD	4217	
0000026	NICHOLSON MR JACK	207 MELROSE AVE		WADDAMANA	TAS	7030	
0000027	ANDERSON MR/S NEIL	11 SWAN ST		RICHMOND	VIC	3121	(03)
0000031	TAYLOR MR/S ROB	1 BEVERLY RD		ABERCORN	QLD	4627	
0000032	MARTIN MR/S STEVE	123 PUNT ROAD		RICHMOND	VIC	3121	03 5
0000033	PARKER MR PETER	8 SPIDER WAY		SACKVILLE	NSW	2756	

Print Exit

469

Returning Guest List

The screen below is displayed when Returning Guests List option is selected, Minimum Stays has a figure (ie 2) entered and click on the **Screen** button once. Click **Print** to print this report, or **Exit** to return to the menu.



	Address 1	Address 2	Suburb	State	P/Code	Phone	# S...
R HARRISON	25 COAL STREET		NEWCASTLE	NSW	2300	9586 6547	3
D JOHN	1 NEW ST		NAIN	SA	5360		2
MS NICOLE	BENDIGO STREET		RICHMOND	VIC	3121		2
N MR M	1 WACKO STREET		VITTORIA	WA	6230		3
MRS JULIE	456 FOLDER STREET		KAARIMBA	VIC	3635		2
ONE MR FRED	34 BEDROCK ROAD		FAILFORD	NSW	2430		2
MS SHARON	4 THE BLUFF ROAD		KAYENA	TAS	7270		5
R MR PETER	8 SPIDER WAY		SACKVILLE	NSW	2756		2
DDO MR CLINT	80 HARRY ST		WEDGEFIELD	WA	6721		6
MS JENIFER	97 MANHATTAN CRE...		MACARTHUR	ACT	2904		2
JE MS KYLIE	120 MAIN STREET		BRISBANE	QLD	4000	1800 897 3...	4
MR PETER	23 BAILEY ST		ARANGA	WA	300		3
MR S	1 TABLET STREET		MUMMEL	NSW	2580		2
Y MR A	1 HOPELESS STREET		WANNIASSA	ACT	2903		2
MR D	5 WINNER STREET		ADELAIDE	SA	5000		4
AN MS C	1 VERY FAST STREE...		JACK RIVER	VIC	3971		2
MS L	234 SWIMMER ROAD		GOLD COAST MC	QLD	9726		2
MS I	34 WESTCOAST ROA...		BAANDEE	WA	6412		2
MR D							2

Print Exit

470

Accounts with no booking

This shows a list of accounts which have no bookings. This report includes the account number, names, address and phone number.

Click **Print** to print this report, or **Exit** to return to the menu.

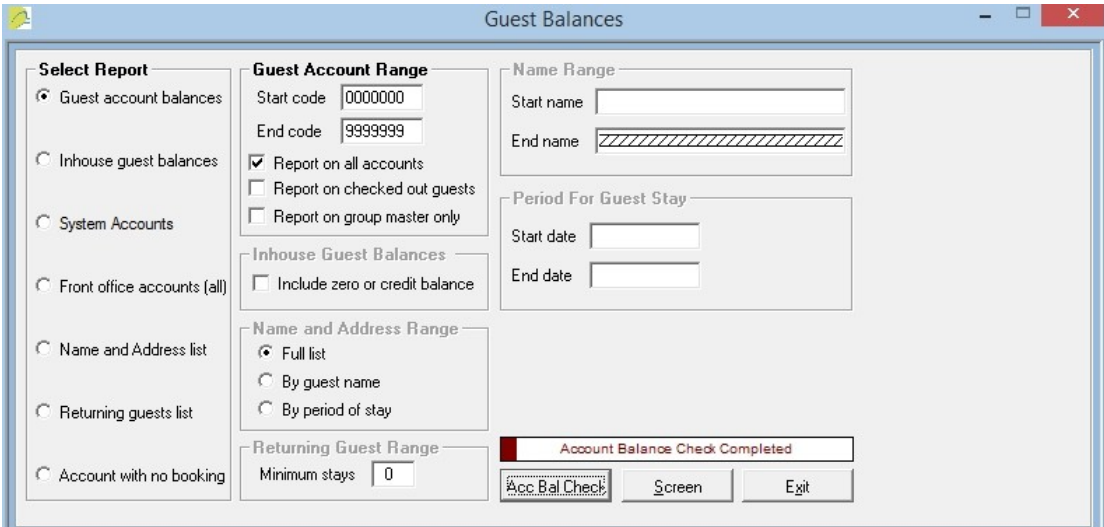


Acco...	Name	Address 1	Address 2	Suburb	State	P/Code	Phone	# S...
0000012	GREEN MR TOM	12 FRED STREET	...	ABBNEYWOOD	QLD	4613	07 98564 2...	
0000014	JONES MR TOM	23 BENDIGO STREET	...	RICHMOND	VIC	3121	03 9428 99...	
0000015	HUNTER MR DAVID	123 MAIN AVE	...	BACCHUS MARSH	VIC	3340		
0000018	CRUISE MR TOM	145 GREEN BLVD	...	JIGGI	NSW	2480		1
0000020	DOUGLAS MR M	34 DREAM DRIVE	...	DACEYVILLE	NSW	2032		1
0000024	JONES MS ANNIE	234 DELL STREET	...	LABRADOR	QLD	4215		1
0000031	TAYLOR MR/S ROB	1 BEVERLY RD	...	ABERCORN	QLD	4627		1
0000032	MARTIN MR/S STEVE	123 PUNT ROAD	...	RICHMOND	VIC	3121	03 9887 76...	1
0000036	FORD MR HARRISON	99 JONES ST	...	ILKLEY	QLD	4554		1
0000040	PONTING MS R	5/6 WINNERS ROAD	...	WANDERING	WA	6308		
0000042	GILCHRIST MR A	2 WINNER STREET	...	PERTH	WA	6000		
0000045	THORPE MR I	256 WET ROAD	...	FLAGSTAFF GULLY...	TAS	7015		
0000048	MATHEWS MR L	1 GREATEST PLAYER...	...	HAWTHORN	VIC	3122		
0000051	KENNEDY MS J	3 FUNNY STREET	...	VEITCH	SA	5312		1
0000056	HEWITT MR MIKE	345 GREEN COURT	...	CABARITA	NSW	2137		
0000057	RAFTER MR PAT	89 FLINDERS LANE	...	FAIRBANK	VIC	3951		
0000061	LUTHOR MR LEX	2 CARNAYON AVE	...	SADLIERS CROSSI...	QLD	4305		
0000062	SOMMER MS SUSAN	88 ROSE ST	...	RABY BAY	QLD	4163		
0000063	CURRY MR PHIL	23 FIVEWAY RD	...	BARIAN	NSW	2795		

471

Account Balance Check

The Account Balance Check button located in the bottom right of the screen below will cross reference all room transactions on Guests accounts with the Guest account balance.



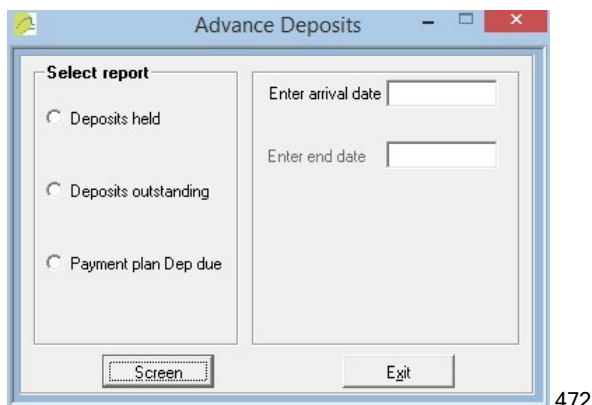
471a

5.7.2 Advance Deposits

To print or display Advance Deposit information, select the deposit report you require. Deposits Held, Deposits Outstanding or Payment plan Dep due.

The first is a list of deposits held in the system, the second is a deposit outstanding report, which produces a list of guests with a particular arrival date, listing the following items:

- guest's name and account number
- date the booking was made
- part payment due by date (14 days after booking date)
- full payment due by date (30 days prior to arrival)
- deposit amount paid to date.



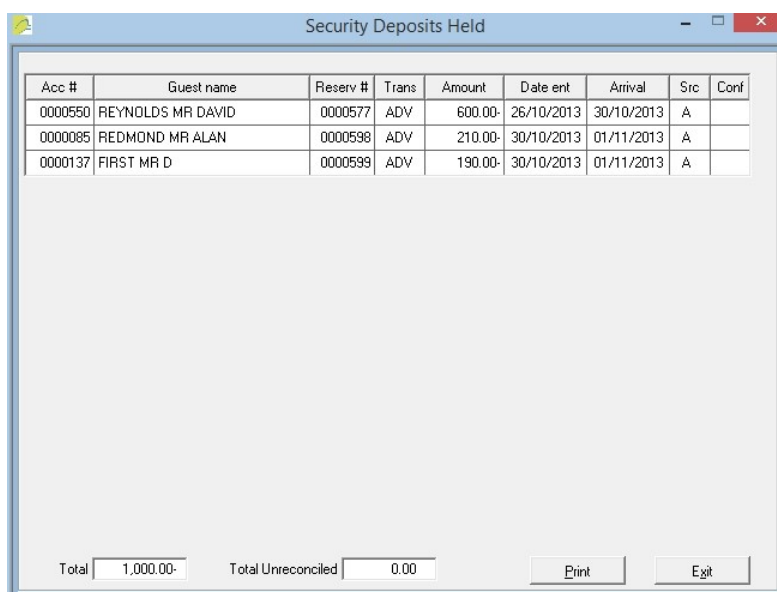
472

And the third is a payment plan report, displaying guests that have a payment due between the date range selected.

Select the report you want by clicking on the appropriate option button and then clicking on the **Screen** button once.

Advance Deposits Held

This report lists all advance deposits for Guest's that are not 'checked in'. Advance deposits are attached to individual reservations, therefore, if a reservation is still shown as 'not arrived', it will be listed on this report, including overdue bookings. Click on the 'Deposit held' option then click the **Screen button** and the following screen is displayed



473

Advance deposits listed for overdue reservations must be manually reconciled. The accounts must be checked in and the balance of the account returned to zero by applying a charge such as room revenue, or a refund of the deposit. When complete the account must then be checked out.

To print the report click on the **Print** button or click **Exit** to go back to the first screen.

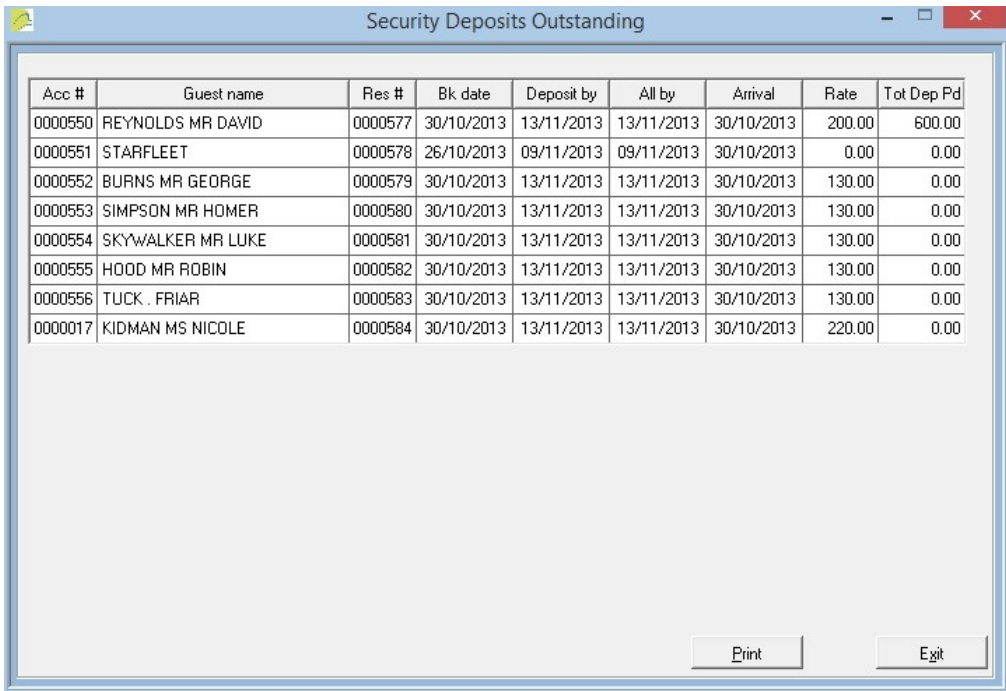
Deposits Outstanding

This report will display all guests arriving on the selected day. The 'Deposit by' date is 14 days after the booking date and 'All by' date is calculated to be 30 days prior to arrival.

Arrival Date

Enter the date of arrival to report on, in DDMMYYYY format.

Click on the **Screen** button and the following screen is displayed.



Acc #	Guest name	Res #	Bk date	Deposit by	All by	Arrival	Rate	Tot Dep Pd
0000550	REYNOLDS MR DAVID	0000577	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	200.00	600.00
0000551	STARFLEET	0000578	26/10/2013	09/11/2013	09/11/2013	30/10/2013	0.00	0.00
0000552	BURNS MR GEORGE	0000579	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	130.00	0.00
0000553	SIMPSON MR HOMER	0000580	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	130.00	0.00
0000554	SKYWALKER MR LUKE	0000581	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	130.00	0.00
0000555	HOOD MR ROBIN	0000582	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	130.00	0.00
0000556	TUCK . FRIAR	0000583	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	130.00	0.00
0000017	KIDMAN MS NICOLE	0000584	30/10/2013	13/11/2013	13/11/2013	30/10/2013	220.00	0.00

474

To print report click on the **Print** button or click **Exit** to go back to the first screen.

Payment Plan

Start Date

Enter the start date of the report in DDMMYYYY format.

End Date

Enter the end date of the report in DDMMYYYY format.

Click on the **Screen** button and the following screen is displayed

To print report click on the **Print** button or click **Exit** to go back to the first screen.

5.7.3 Guest Notes

This option provides a report on notes for a particular guest or on notes diarised for a particular date.

To print notes select either

- By Account # (this option prints notes just for a particular account or for all accounts) or
- By Diary Date (this option prints notes diarised for a particular day or range of dates)

To print, click on the **Print** button once and to return back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

475

Acc #	Reserv #	Name	Arrival	Depart	Note
0000564	0000596	HARRISON	30/10/2013	01/11/2013	Guests departing early Friday AM. Will finalize account Thursday PM.

476

5.7.4 Mailing List

To print the mailing list, got to **Reports -> Guest -> Mailing List**. Names and addresses are printed to your hard disk in comma delimited ASCII (plain text) file. Stored in 'MRLABEL.TXT' file in the \Fsc\lData directory.

To print the list to address labels use the Mail Merge option in Microsoft Word. The names and addresses can be selected by

- arrival dates
- postcodes
- sources
- areas
- segments
- group
- singles
- account status. The address labels can also be printed in order of postcode.

477

Select by Arrival Date (Y/N)

Select guests by their arrival date. You can enter two separate date ranges.

Start Date (DDMMCCYY)

Enter the start arrival date in DDMMCCYY.

End Date (DDMMCCYY)

Enter the end arrival date in DDMMCCYY.

Select by Postcode

Select guests by postcode and then enter the postcode range.

Start Postcode

Enter a postcode to start with.

End Postcode

Enter a postcode number to end with.

Select by Source

Select guests by their sources of booking and there is the option of up to 8 different sources.

Select by Area

Select guests by their areas of bookings and there is the option of up to 8 different areas.

Select by Segment

Select guests by their booking segments and there is the option of up to 8 different segments.

Select Segment to exclude

Exclude guests by their booking segments and there is the option of up to 8 different segments.

Source to Exclude

Exclude guests by their booking source and there is the option of up to 8 different sources.

Include Blank Address

Yes, include accounts that do not have a complete address. If needing the list for email address's this must be selected as there may be guest accounts with only an email address.

Group, Singles or All

Include booking for

- group only
- single only or
- all.

If you select Groups or Single, the system will also ask whether you want to include group member addresses or not.

Include Contact Name for Group

Yes, include the contact name for a group account.

Exclude Accounts

Select the accounts status that you **do not** want to send mail to.

5.7.5 Restaurant

Restaurant Report

☒ Breakfast ☐ Lunch ☐ Dinner

Start Date: 30/10/2013

End Date: 30/10/2013

Display Exit

478

From the **Report ,Guest** menu, click on **Restaurant**. The above screen will be displayed. You can choose between breakfast or dinner; and the start and end dates for the report. Click on display.

This will bring up a detailed report detailing guest name, room number, account number, date, which package or voucher the guest has – with a description and the number of people broken down into adults, children and infants. Once displayed on the screen click on **Print** for a hard copy.

This displays bookings for the restaurant for either breakfast or dinner for a specified day.

This report will only display the correct numbers if a package code on the guest reservation has a breakfast, lunch or dinner included. Or if in the guest extras there is a breakfast, lunch or dinner code entered.

The following screen is a Breakfast report. The Lunch, Dinner report is the same.

Restaurant Report

BREAKFAST REPORT FOR: 30/10/2013 - 30/10/2013

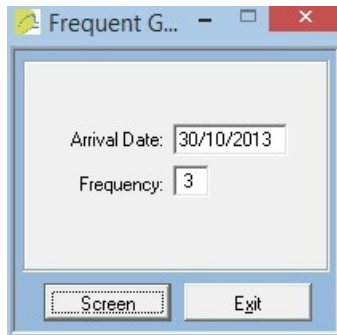
Date	A/C #	Res #	Name	Voucher	Pkg	Pkg Desc
30/10/2013	0000552	0000579	BURNS, MR GEORGE	...	CON	CONFERENCE PAC...
	0000553	0000580	SIMPSON, MR HOMER	...	CON	CONFERENCE PAC...
	0000554	0000581	SKYWALKER, MR LUKE	...	CON	CONFERENCE PAC...
	0000555	0000582	HOOD, MR ROBIN	...	CON	CONFERENCE PAC...
	0000556	0000583	TUCK, . FRIAR	...	CON	CONFERENCE PAC...
	0000550	0000577	REYNOLDS, MR DAVID	...	BB1	BED & BREAKFAST...
	0000017	0000584	KIDMAN, MS NICOLE	...	BB4	BED & BREAKFAST...
						SUBTOTAL

Grand Total Adults: 9 Children: 0 Infants: 0 Print Exit

479

479b

5.7.7 Frequent Guests



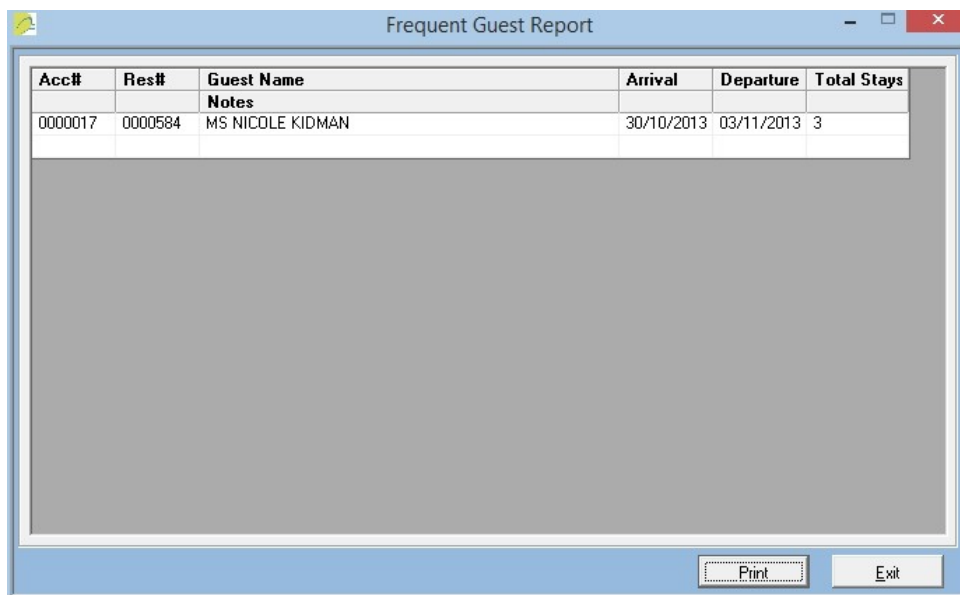
Arrival Date: 30/10/2013

Frequency: 3

Screen Exit

479c

This report will display arriving guests who have previously stayed a number of times. Enter the Arrival Date and the minimum number of stays.

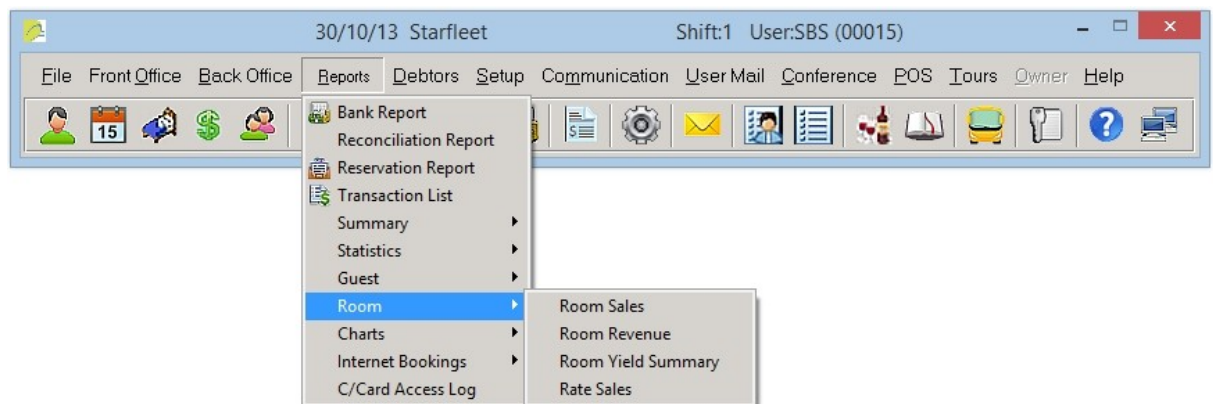


Acc#	Res#	Guest Name	Notes	Arrival	Departure	Total Stays
0000017	0000584	MS NICOLE KIDMAN		30/10/2013	03/11/2013	3

Print Exit

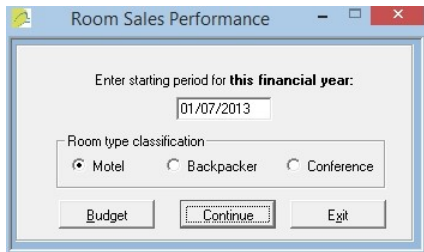
479d

5.8 Room



480

5.8.1 Room Sales



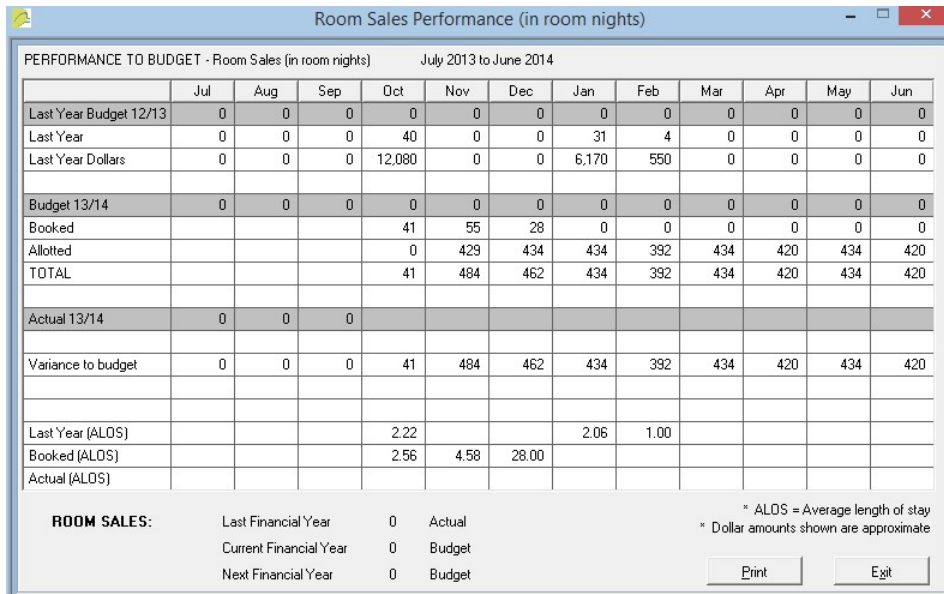
Room Sales Performance

Enter starting period for **this financial year**:

Room type classification:
☒ Motel ☐ Backpacker ☐ Conference

481a

From the **Report** menu select **Room** then **Room Sales** and the window above will be displayed. Enter the report starting month, then click on the room type classification by clicking either Motel, Backpacker or Conference. Click on Budget and you can input the figures for the budgets for both motel and backpacker rooms if both applicable for last, current and next financial years. Click on continue and this will put the budget figures against the actual figures for the periods and give you the variance amounts whether they be positive or negative. Selecting Continue will display the following report.



Room Sales Performance (in room nights)

PERFORMANCE TO BUDGET - Room Sales (in room nights) July 2013 to June 2014

	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun
Last Year Budget 12/13	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last Year	0	0	0	40	0	0	31	4	0	0	0	0
Last Year Dollars	0	0	0	12,080	0	0	6,170	550	0	0	0	0
Budget 13/14	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Booked				41	55	28	0	0	0	0	0	0
Allotted				0	429	434	434	392	434	420	434	420
TOTAL				41	484	462	434	392	434	420	434	420
Actual 13/14	0	0	0									
Variance to budget	0	0	0	41	484	462	434	392	434	420	434	420
Last Year (ALOS)				2.22			2.06	1.00				
Booked (ALOS)				2.56	4.58	28.00						
Actual (ALOS)												

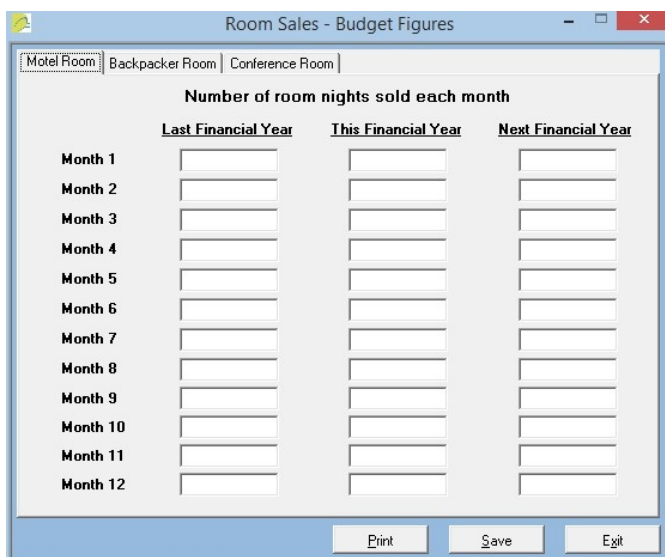
ROOM SALES:

Last Financial Year	0	Actual
Current Financial Year	0	Budget
Next Financial Year	0	Budget

* ALOS = Average length of stay
 * Dollar amounts shown are approximate

481b

This is the report displayed when the budget button is selected.



Room Sales - Budget Figures

☒ Motel Room ☐ Backpacker Room ☐ Conference Room

Number of room nights sold each month

	Last Financial Year	This Financial Year	Next Financial Year
Month 1			
Month 2			
Month 3			
Month 4			
Month 5			
Month 6			
Month 7			
Month 8			
Month 9			
Month 10			
Month 11			
Month 12			

481c

5.8.1.1 Average Length of Stay

Average Length of Stay (ALOS) is displayed in the [Room Sales](#) ¹⁴⁹ Sales Report. The figures will display Last Year, Booked and Actual.

5.8.2 Room Revenue

Room Revenue For The Last 12 Months

Enter Month Ending

September 2013

Starting Room #:

Finishing Room #: ZZZZ

Continue Exit

482

From the **Report** menu select **Room** then **Room Revenue** and the window above will be displayed. Enter the report ending month, then enter the Starting Room number and Finishing Room number. Click the Continue Button and this will display the following screen. Click on the Print Button for a hard copy.

Room	Sep 2013	Aug 2013	Jul 2013	Jun 2013	May 2013	Apr 2013	Mar 2013	Feb 2013	Jan 2013
01	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	90.00	180.00
02	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	140.00
03	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
04	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	130.00
05	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	140.00
06	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	140.00
07	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	140.00
08	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
09	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
10	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	320.00
11	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	140.00
12	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
13	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	320.00
14	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	90.00	90.00
15	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
16	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
17	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
18	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	680.00
19	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
20	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
21	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
22	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
23	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	270.00	810.00

483

5.8.3 Room Yield Summary

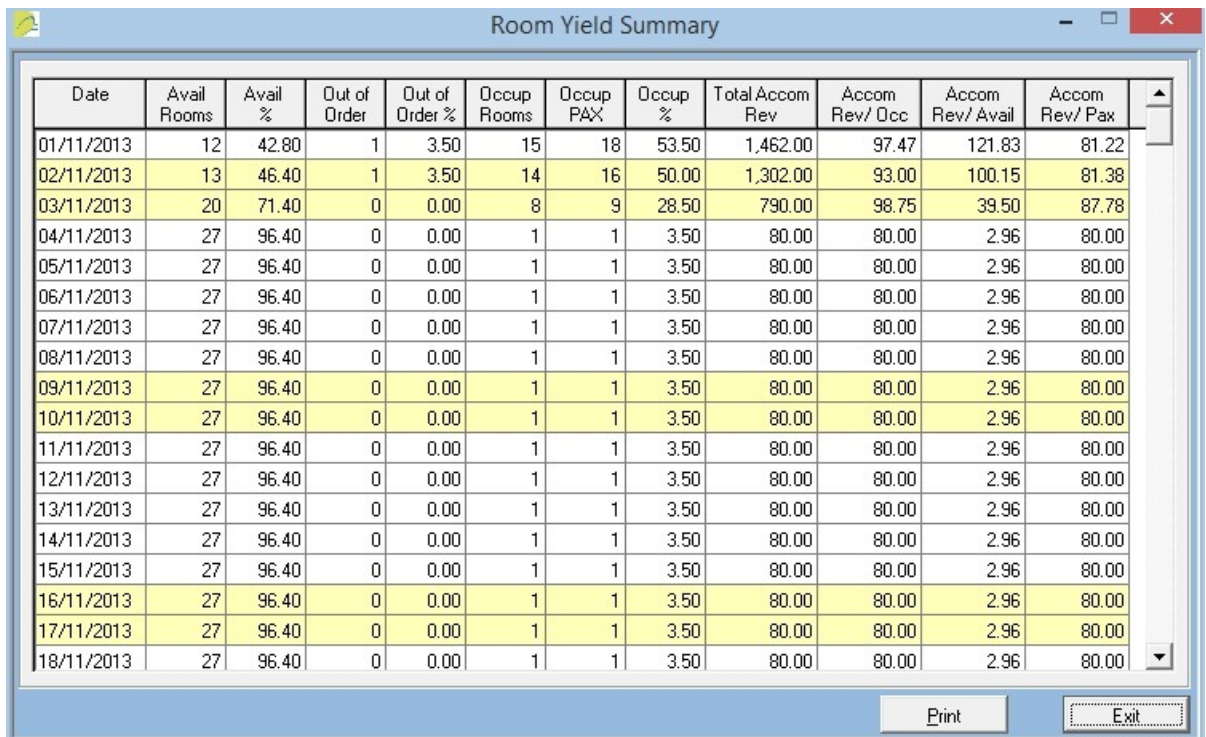
This Report will provide Room Yield for the date range selected.



A screenshot of a software dialog box titled "Room Yield Summary". It contains two date input fields: "Start Date:" with the value "01/11/2013" and "Endt Date:" with the value "30/11/2013". Below the fields are two buttons: "Continue" and "Exit".

403

Select your date range and Continue.



A screenshot of a software window titled "Room Yield Summary" displaying a table of data. The table has 13 columns: Date, Avail Rooms, Avail %, Out of Order, Out of Order %, Occup Rooms, Occup PAX, Occup %, Total Accom Rev, Accom Rev/ Occ, Accom Rev/ Avail, and Accom Rev/ Pax. The data covers the period from 01/11/2013 to 18/11/2013. The table is scrollable, and the bottom of the window contains "Print" and "Exit" buttons.

Date	Avail Rooms	Avail %	Out of Order	Out of Order %	Occup Rooms	Occup PAX	Occup %	Total Accom Rev	Accom Rev/ Occ	Accom Rev/ Avail	Accom Rev/ Pax
01/11/2013	12	42.80	1	3.50	15	18	53.50	1,462.00	97.47	121.83	81.22
02/11/2013	13	46.40	1	3.50	14	16	50.00	1,302.00	93.00	100.15	81.38
03/11/2013	20	71.40	0	0.00	8	9	28.50	790.00	98.75	39.50	87.78
04/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
05/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
06/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
07/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
08/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
09/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
10/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
11/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
12/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
13/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
14/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
15/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
16/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
17/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00
18/11/2013	27	96.40	0	0.00	1	1	3.50	80.00	80.00	2.96	80.00

404

5.8.4 Rate Sales

Room Rate Sales Report will display the revenue of all or selected Room Rate, Package or Repetitive Package code. If no code is entered then ALL codes will display on the report.

Rate/Package Sales Report

☒ Rate Sales Report ☐ Package Sales Report

Code Range

Starting Code:

Finishing Code:

Booking Arrival Period

Start Date:

End Date:

405

This report will display the total bookings, number of day use, total pax, total nights booked and total revenue.

Rate/Package Sales Report

Code	Total Bkgs	# Day Use	Total Adults	Total Child	Total Bkg Nights	Total Revenue
DST	1	0	1	0	5	400.00
FOC	3	0	4	0	9	0.00
HSP	2	0	4	1	3	350.00
KSP	5	0	8	0	69	5,600.00
PENT4	2	0	7	4	6	2,130.00
SU	3	0	8	6	12	3,580.00
SUITE2	3	0	5	3	10	1,340.00

406

5.9 Charts

This will display your Revenue and Occupancy in a chart view.

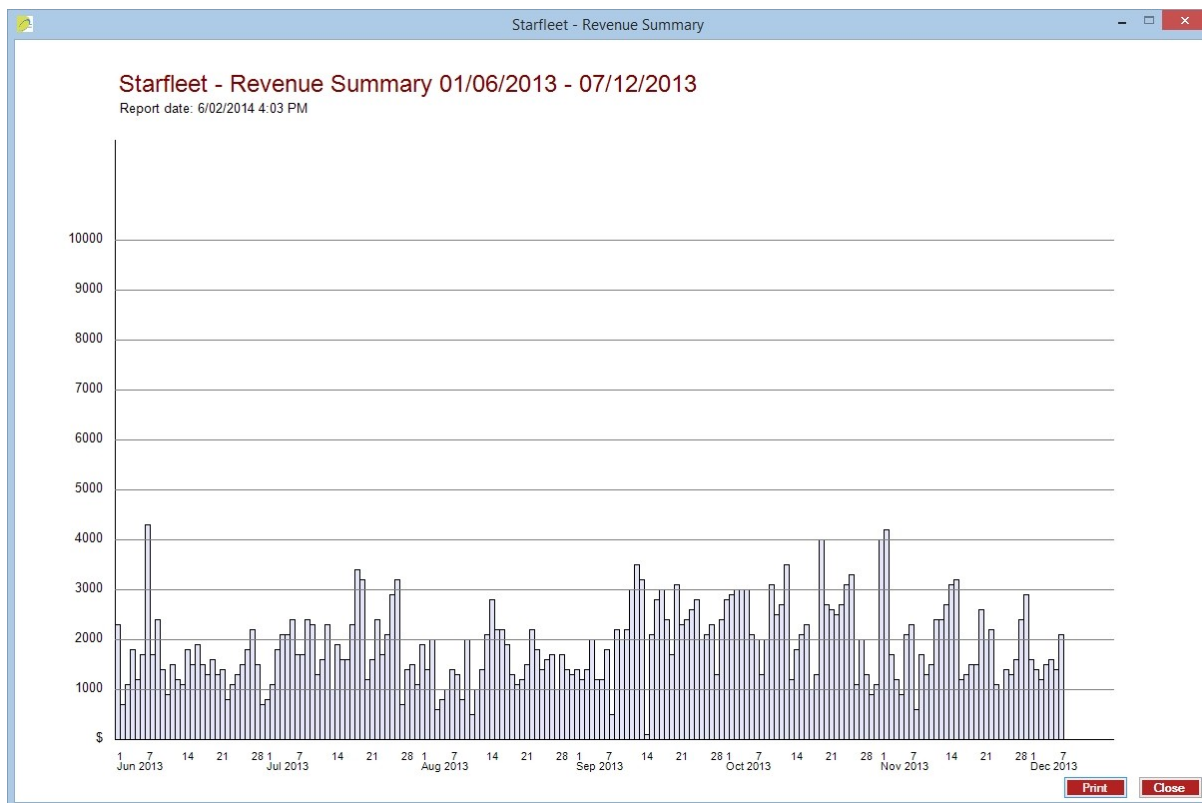
5.9.1 Revenue

From Reports select Charts->Revenue. Enter the start date of the report you require, select Continue on the following screen.

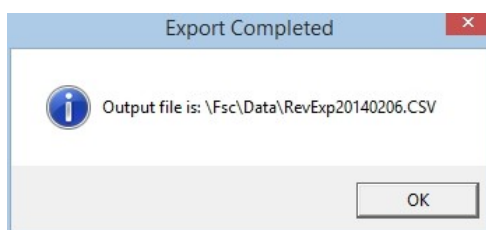


483a

The following report can then be viewed showing the Revenue in a chart form.



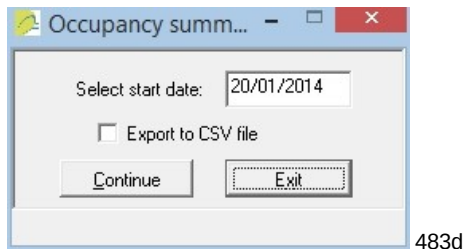
483b



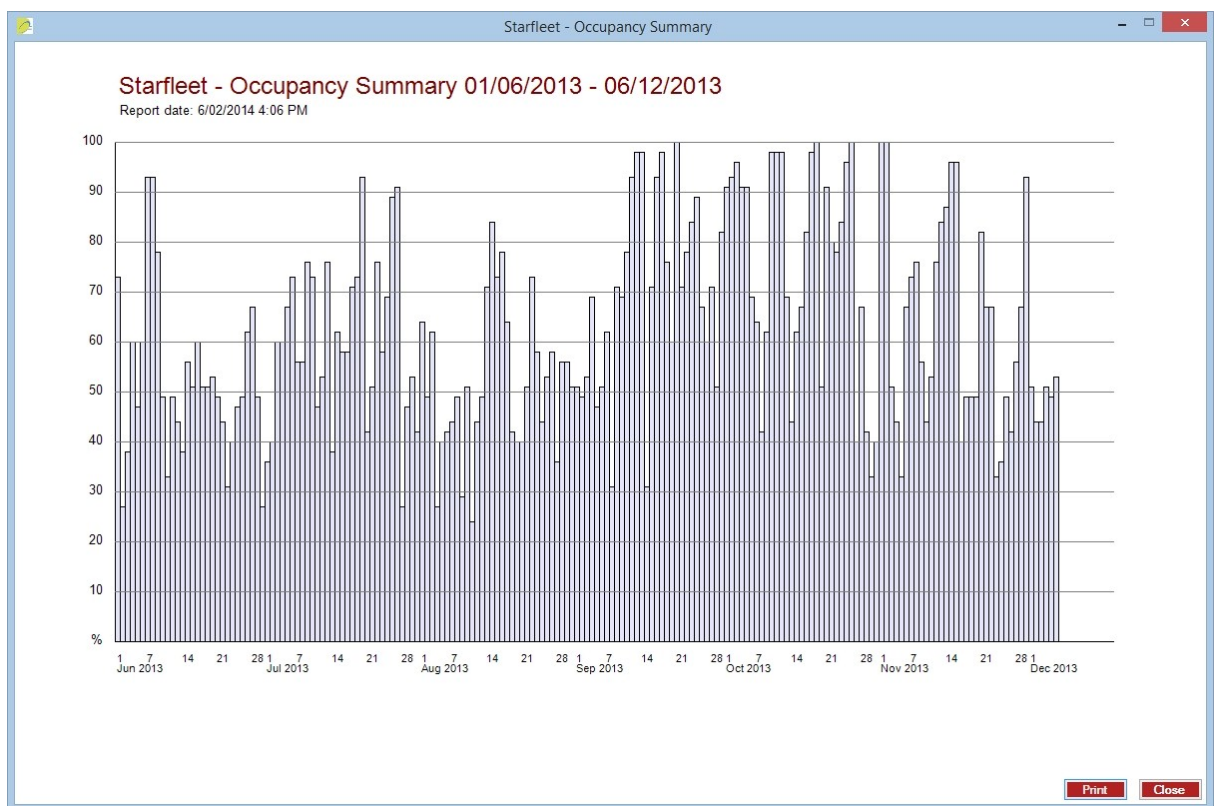
This information can also be exported to a .CSV file by ticking the Export to CSV file box. A prompt will appear showing you the where to access this file in the data.

5.9.2 Occupancy

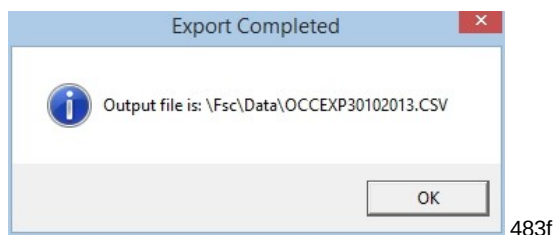
From Reports select Charts->Occupancy. Enter the start date of the report you require, select Continue on the following screen.



The following report can then be viewed showing the Revenue in a chart form.



This information can also be exported to a .CSV file by ticking the Export to CSV file box. A prompt will appear showing you the where to access this file in the data.



5.10 Internet Bookings

If using the Starfleet channel Manager link these reports will be used.

5.10.1 Received

From the **Report** menu select **Internet Bookings** then **Received** then on the booking engine ie. through STAAH Channel Manager. The following window will be displayed.

In this window we are able to select the report by either Reference Number, Guest Surname, Booking Date.

484

5.10.2 Warning

From the **Report** menu select **Internet Bookings** then **Warning** then select the booking engine name. If there are any Internet Bookings that could not be inputted directly into Starfleet then they will display in this Error Report. This may be caused by loss of Internet connection at the time the booking was made.

5.11 C/Card Access log

Select the date range then Screen. This report when generated will display the Date, Time, User initial, User ID, User name and Card name of all credit cards that have been accessed in the date range.

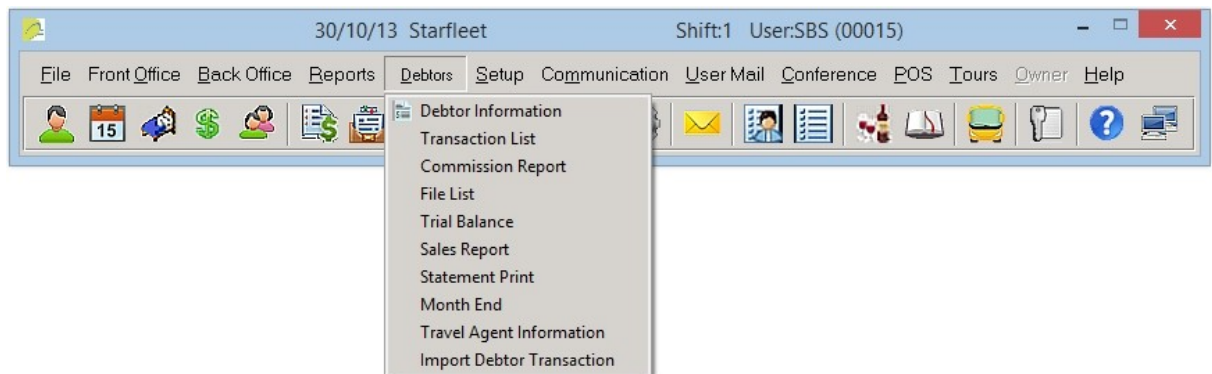
484d

This report can be printed.

Date	Time	User No.	User Initial	User Name	Card Name
05/03/2014	10:00:41	15	SBS	Starfleet	FRED & WILMA FLINSTONE

484e

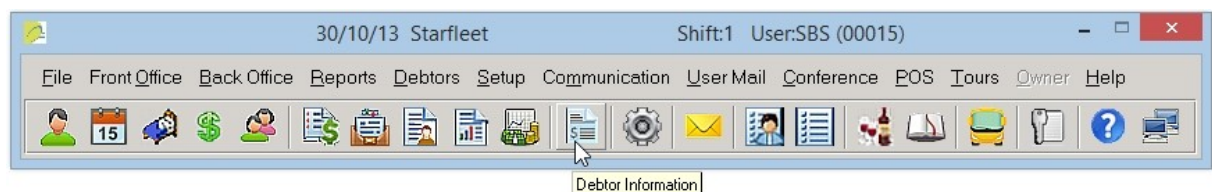
6 Debtors



485

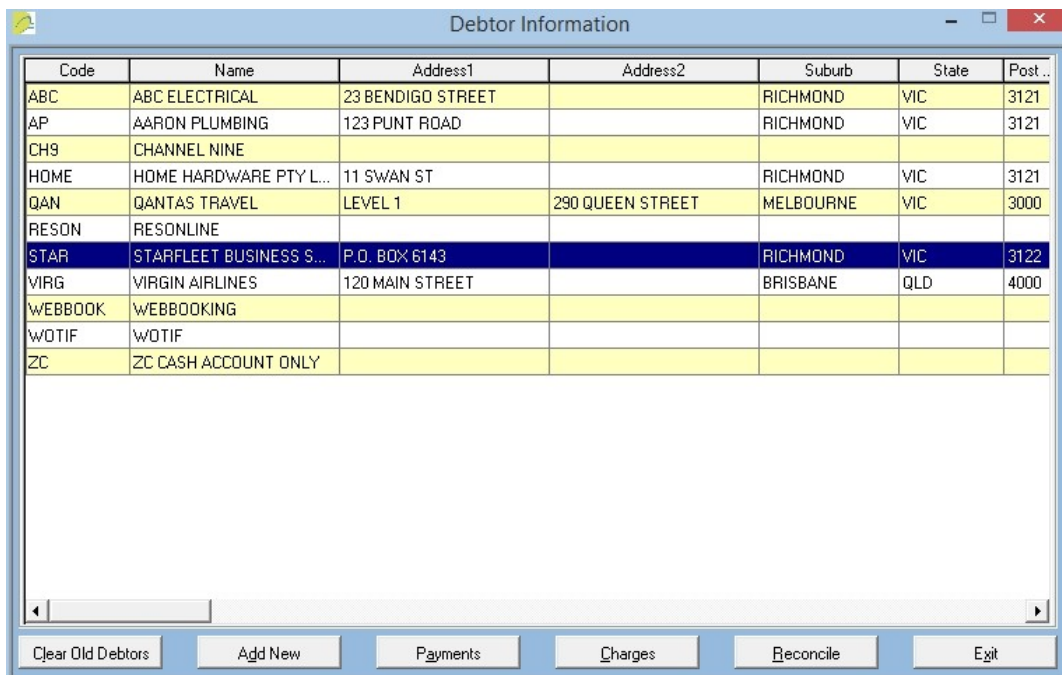
Click on the respective sub menu on the diagram for more information.

6.1 Debtor Information



K

The Debtor information is accessed by clicking on the **Debtor Information** button once, in the **Accounts** menu or the quick launch icon as above. The window below is displayed.



486

This displays the list of debtors with their address. This menu enables user to add a new debtor, post payments, charges, reconcile accounts. Click on the corresponding button in the diagram above for more information on the buttons.

6.1.1 Add New

To access this window select the Accounts menu ->Debtor Information ->Add new. The window below will be displayed.

The 'Debtor Information' window displays a form for entering debtor details. The fields are organized into two main columns. The left column includes fields for Debtor Code, Debtor Name, Address1, Address2, Country (dropdown), Suburb, State / Region, Post Code, Phone, Fax, Account Balance, Lst Mth Balance, Current Month, 30 Days, 60 Days, 90+ DAYS, and Last Invoice. The right column includes fields for Comment, Contact Sales, Contact Account, Disabled (checkbox), ABN, No Charge Back (checkbox), Credit Limit, Statement Type, E-Mail, Commission (dropdown), Type (dropdown), \$ Sales - MTD, - YTD, - LYR, \$ Costs - MTD, - YTD, - LYR, and Last Payment. At the bottom, there is a row of buttons: Print, New, Delete, Save, Iran, Hist, Notes, and Exit.

488

Customer Code

Enter the Debtor code for the new client. (maximum 8 alphanumeric characters). Keep the code as short and descriptive as possible. If you make the code an abbreviation of the Debtor name, then all the Debtors will effectively be in name sequence. e.g. STAR or STARFLEET. Enter all the details then click on the save button.

The 'Debtor Information' window is now populated with data for a new client. The Debtor Code is 'STAR'. The Debtor Name is 'STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS'. The Address1 is 'P.O. BOX 6143'. The Address2 is empty. The Country is 'AUSTRALIA'. The Suburb is 'RICHMOND'. The State / Region is 'VIC'. The Post Code is '3122'. The Phone is '+61 3 9428 4333'. The Fax is '+61 3 86400446'. The Account Balance is '11960.00'. The Lst Mth Balance is '11960.00'. The Current Month is '5200.00'. The 30 Days balance is '2800.00'. The 60 Days balance is '3960.00'. The 90+ DAYS balance is empty. The Last Invoice is '01/11/2013'. The Comment is empty. The Contact Sales is empty. The Contact Account is empty. The Disabled checkbox is unchecked. The ABN is empty. The No Charge Back checkbox is unchecked. The Credit Limit is empty. The Statement Type is '1 PART STMT PRINT'. The E-Mail is 'sales@starfleet-software.com.au'. The Commission is '0.00%'. The Type is 'CORPORATE'. The \$ Sales - MTD is empty. The - YTD is '20508.50'. The - LYR is empty. The \$ Costs - MTD is empty. The - YTD is empty. The - LYR is empty. The Last Payment is '02/11/2013' with a value of '0.00'. The buttons at the bottom remain the same: Print, New, Delete, Save, Iran, Hist, Notes, and Exit.

489

Name

Enter the full name of the client. (maximum 30 alpha numeric characters)
E.g. Starfleet Business Solutions

Street

Enter the street number and name. (maximum 30 alphanumeric characters)

Suburb

Enter the suburb name. (maximum 25 alphanumeric characters)

State/Region

Enter the state name. (maximum 12 alphanumeric characters)

Post Code

Enter the post code. (maximum 6 alphanumeric characters)

Phone

Enter a phone number or <tab> to leave blank. (maximum 30 alphanumeric characters)

Fax

Enter a fax number or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 30 alphanumeric characters)

Comment

Enter a comment or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 30 alphanumeric characters)

Contact

Enter a contact name or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 20 alphanumeric characters)

Disabled

Select the tick box to disable the debtor. This debtor code will not be able to be selected from the drop down box of debtor codes for a guest account.

No Charge Back

Select this tick box if the debtor is not to have any charges back to the account from the Front Office.

ABN Number

Enter the clients ABN number or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 15 alphanumeric characters)

Credit Limit

Enter the clients credit limit or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 8 numeric characters)

STMNT PRT TYP

Enter one of the following statement print types.

- 0 = Full Statement Print (prints ALL transactions)
- 1 = Part Statement Print (prints outstanding transactions ONLY)
- 2 = No Statements Printed (prints NO statement!)

Generally, the part statement print is recommended.

Commission

Select the commission amount to apply to the debtors reservations. If there are no amounts to select from refer to Setup -> Pay Types/Discounts -> [Discounts](#)¹⁹⁷ to setup.

E-mail

Enter the clients e-mail address or < tab > to leave blank. (maximum 30 alphanumeric characters)

Type

In setup, you can enter a number of different types of debtors. This allows you to group certain debtors together for reports or mailing lists.(eg travel agents,schools, social clubs, etc) Once the fields have

been entered, click on the **Save** button once. All the fields will be cleared, and you can enter the next client. Click the **Exit** button once to exit maintenance.

6.1.2 Payments

You can also pay and reconcile in the payments screen which is shown below. To access this select the debtor from the debtor list in the debtor information screen. Then click on the Payments button at the bottom of the screen. Enter the payment amount (this is the amount you have actually received in money), <tab> to the next field and a receipt number will be generated automatically by the system.

The screenshot shows the 'Payments Entry' window for customer 'QANTAS TRAVEL'. The 'Amount' field is set to 801.00, and the 'Receipt' number is 28. The 'Pay Type' is 'DIRECT CREDIT'. The table below shows the payment entries:

Date	Refno	Voucher	Inv Amt	Inv Comm	Nett Inv	P	Amt Paid	Comm Paid	Disc App	Tot Paid	Description	
31/10/12	0000542		890.00	-89.00	801.00	☒	801.00	89.00	0.00	890.00	HARRISON	1
31/01/13	0000570		720.00	-72.00	648.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	DUCK	2
30/10/13	0000587	Q2367	990.00	-99.00	891.00	☐	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	JACKSON	3

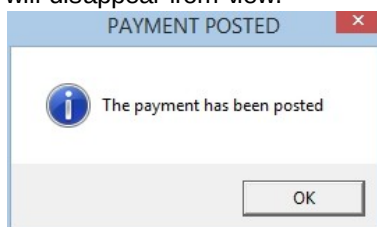
At the bottom, there are radio buttons for 'Pay' (Select, All Current, All 30 Days, All 60 Days, All 90 Days, All 120+ Days). The 'Batch No.' is empty, 'Pmt Date' is 30/10/2013, and 'Receipt Balance' is 0.00. There are 'Apply' and 'Exit' buttons.

490

Select the payment method and click in the tick box under the **P**- the computer will automatically generate the line in Yellow (becomes highlighted in Blue). If you need to adjust any of the payment fields you can adjust the Yellow field and the computer will automatically update the system with the new information. (e.g if you wish to allow a discount or adjust the commission amount).

The two Blue columns must equal one another in order to make a payment - you cannot change these amounts they can only be adjusted by changing the yellow boxes.
In this example there is a commission amount, so only the Nett invoice amount is paid off. The commission is included, although, this can be adjusted if the discount is altered.

Then click on the apply button. You will then get a prompt advising the payment is posted and the line will disappear from view.



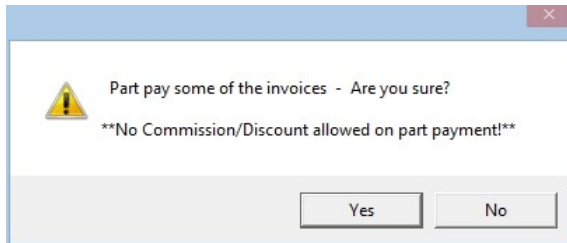
490a

You can now also adjust the view of this screen to aid when searching for an entry by clicking on the headings **Date / Refno / Inv Amt** you can change the positioning of the invoices into ascending or descending values depending on which column you have selected.

You can also click in the tick boxes at the bottom of the screen to select and pay all entries for current month, 30 days, 60 days, 90 days or 120 days. With this you can select all the entries and then go back through and untick the few you may not want to pay off.

Part Payment

You can also **part pay an invoice** with this option the blue total amounts will not equal and you will have to answer a prompt question that checks that this is a part payment. You **can not apply discount or commission off a part payment**, the commission amount will remain in full until the final balance of monies owing is paid and then the commission will be applied.



490b

6.1.3 Post Charges

To access this window click on the Accounts menu -> Debtor Information -> Charges. The window below will be displayed.

491

This window is used for posting charges that are not transferred from a guest account. Select from the list displayed by clicking on the required debtor's code. Enter the charges then as shown below. Select the Type of charge i.e Type 2, 3 or 4 (Type 3 & 4 are entries to use when correcting a Debtor account).

When entering an amount with a -minus in front this will post a credit amount. The description will display as Credit Note. An Invoice amount does not have a -minus before the amount.

492

To post the entry click on the apply button. The print button is used to print an invoice for the debtor. To return the previous window, click on the exit menu.

6.1.4 Reconcile Debtor Account Payments

To access this window, click on the Account menu,-> Debtor information-> then select the Reconcile button. The screen below will appear and you can see in the top of the box is a list of all the payments and underneath is a list of all the invoices that are to be reconciled off (payments made against them).

493

To actually complete the reconciliation process you need to tick the selected payment line (from the purple colored area) and then click in the box headed with the P to select the invoice line to match the two transactions against one another.

Please note with the colour coding only the yellow areas can be changed and the two blue columns must equal or you are only part paying the invoice and therefore cannot adjust the commission or discount amounts until payment is received.

If you click on the auto reconcile button it will automatically apply the payments to invoices as it chooses. Not the best option unless you have only one transaction - remembering you cannot void entries.

The wording that is carried over into the transaction list has been adjusted to - credit notes will be carried over as credit notes and Cash Rec Cr is for all monetary payments. By clicking on the PMT Date / Refno / AMT Paid you can change the view into ascending and descending order. The same applies for Date / Refno / Inv Amt in the bottom area.

6.1.5 Edit or Change a Debtor

To edit or change a debtor account, click on the **Debtors menu -> Debtor Information**, select debtor by double clicking on the debtors displayed. To change the details of a debtor in your system, simply edit the details on this screen then click on the save button.

The screenshot shows the 'Debtor Information' window with the following details:

- Debtor Code:** STAR
- Debtor Name:** STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS
- Address1:** P.O. BOX 6143
- Address2:**
- Country:** AUSTRALIA
- Suburb:** RICHMOND
- State / Region:** VIC
- Post Code:** 3122
- Phone:** +61 3 9428 4333
- Fax:** +61 3 86400446
- Comment:**
- Contact Sales:**
- Contact Account:**
- Disabled:** ☐
- ABN:**
- Credit Limit:**
- Statement Type:** 1
- PART STMT PRINT**
- E-Mail:** sales@starfleet-software.com.au
- Commission:** 0.00%
- Type:** CORPORATE
- Created On:** 01/01/2010
- Account Balance:** 6760.00
- \$ Sales - MTD:** 100.00
- YTD:** 15408.50
- LYR:**
- Lst Mth Balance:** 15308.50
- \$ Costs - MTD:**
- YTD:**
- LYR:**
- Current Month:** 2042.50 CR
- 30 Days:** 3960.00
- 60 Days:** 4842.50
- 90+ DAYS:**
- Last Invoice:** 30/10/2013
- Last Payment:** 30/10/2013
- 4842.50**

Buttons at the bottom: Print, New, Delete, Save, Tran, Hist, Notes, Exit.

494

6.1.6 Deleting a Debtor

To delete a debtor's account, click **Debtors -> Debtor Information**, select debtor by double clicking on the debtors name. The window below will be displayed. Click on the delete button to delete a debtor from your system. The debtor can only be deleted if there are no transactions on the account.

You cannot delete debtors that have any transactions, as this may affect your accounting reports. If you wish to remove a debtor from view then select the Disabled button located on the right hand side of the screen. This disables the particular debtor so it no longer displays in the drop down lists for staff to select from and it will no longer show up in reports such as the trial balance. The account must have a zero balance to do this.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Debtor Information" with the following fields:

- Debtor Code: STAR
- Debtor Name: STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS
- Address1: P.O. BOX 6143
- Address2: (empty)
- Country: AUSTRALIA (dropdown menu)
- Suburb: RICHMOND
- Comment: (empty)
- Contact Sales: (empty)
- Contact Account: (empty)
- Disabled: ☐ (checked)
- ABN: (empty)
- Credit Limit: (empty)
- Statement Type: 1 PART STMT PRINT

495

6.1.7 Debtor Notes

To view notes on a debtor's account, click the Debtor Information button once, find the debtor you require, then click the Notes button once. The screen below will be displayed.

Adding Notes

To add notes to a Debtor account, click the Add Notes button once. You can then add the note.

Date to Diarise

Enter the date you wish to follow up this note by clicking the Diary Date button once and selecting the date you want. Click the Print button once to print.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Debtor Notes for STAR" with a table and buttons:

Date	Note	Diary Date
22/01/2014		30/10/2013

Below the table is a large blue area with a yellow tooltip that says "Add text of note". At the bottom are buttons: Print, Add Note, Diary Date: 30/10/2013, and Exit.

496

6.1.8 OI Recovery

Password needed to access this area (available only from Starfleet).

6.1.9 Transaction List from Debtor Account

Date	Ty...	Mth	Debit	Credit	Comm	Discount	PT	Description	Ref#	OI	Guest
30/07/2009	2	5	400.00	0.00	-40.00	0.00		URBAN	0000382	3	000041
03/04/2012	2	3	360.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		PITT	0000518	3	000051
01/04/2012	2	3	720.00	0.00	0.00	0.00		HALLIGAN	0000523	3	000007
30/10/2012	2	3	1,120.00	0.00	-112.00	0.00		SHELBY	0000555	3	000055
30/01/2013	2	2	130.00	0.00	-14.30	0.00		MUNROE	0000559	3	000055
30/10/2013	2	1	342.00	0.00	-37.62	0.00		PARKER	0000585	3	000058
30/10/2013	2	1	0.00	-342.00	37.62	0.00		PARKER	0000585	3	000058
30/10/2013	2	1	342.00	0.00	-37.62	0.00		PARKER	0000585	3	000058

498

By clicking on the **Trans** button at the bottom of the screen in the Debtor Information Screen the above window will be displayed. It lists all the transactions made for this account.

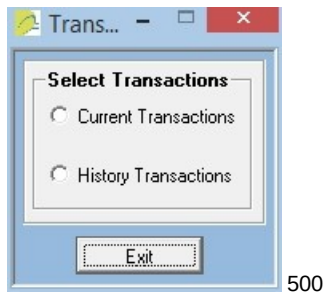
6.1.10 Debtor History

Date	Ty...	Mth	Debit	Credit	Comm	Discount	PT	Description	Ref#	OI	Guest Nur
01/09/2006	2	4	210.00	0.00	-21.00	0.00		NORTH	0000106	9	0000185/
02/04/2011	1	1	0.00	-189.00	0.00	0.00	Q	CASH REC. CR	0000106	9	
02/04/2011	1	1	0.00	-270.00	0.00	0.00	Q	CASH REC. CR	0000181	9	
01/08/2008	2	4	300.00	0.00	-30.00	0.00		MCPHERSON	0000181	9	0000236/
02/04/2011	1	1	0.00	-252.00	0.00	0.00	Q	CASH REC. CR	0000342	9	
30/01/2009	2	4	280.00	0.00	-28.00	0.00		MCPHERSON	0000342	9	0000236/
02/04/2011	1	1	0.00	-540.00	0.00	0.00	Q	CASH REC. CR	0000345	9	
30/01/2009	2	4	600.00	0.00	-60.00	0.00		WINSLET	0000345	9	0000370/

499

From the Debtor Information Screen if you click on **Hist** button, the window below will be displayed. It lists a detailed Report of all the transactions for the company.

6.2 Transaction List



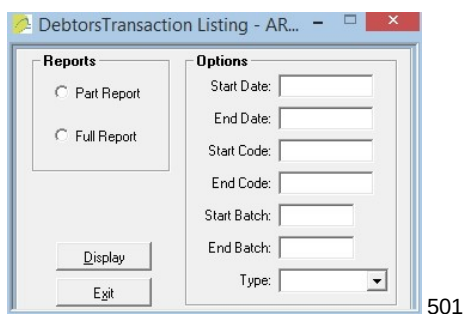
500

The Transaction Listing window is accessed by clicking on the **Transaction List** button once, in the **Accounts** menu.

The Transaction list allows reporting of all Debtor transactions for the current month, or all transactions on file. Part listings on screen or on a printed report are available. Batch totals for cash are handled by the Banking report. Choose from the first menu option of either current transactions or history transaction lists. To view the debtors transactions display or debtors history display, please click on the links below:

- [Debtor Transaction Display](#)¹⁶⁵
- [Debtor History Display](#)¹⁶⁶

6.2.1 Debtor Transaction Display



501

Part Report

Select the starting and ending codes for the report.

Full Report

List transactions for all accounts.

Start Date

Enter a start date in DDMMCCYY format to list transactions for a specific period.

End Date

Enter a end date in DDMMCCYY format to list transactions for a specific period.

Start Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

Start Batch / End Batch

Can be used if searching for a specific Batch number.

To view transactions on a Debtor account, click the Debtor Information button, find the debtor you require, then click the Trans button once. This is for an individual account as detailed in Debtor Information under Transaction Listing

The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on that columns heading. To print the report, click the print button.

Code	Batch	Date	TT	Trans Desc	P...	Debit	Credit	Discount	OI	Ref NO	Shift	PT
CH9	A01	01/04/2...	2	LOPEZ	4	657.00			3	0000443	1	
CH9	A30	30/03/2...	2	KIDMAN	4	110.00		11.00	3	0000446	1	
CH9	A30	30/03/2...	2	KIDMAN	4	110.00			3	0000446	1	
CH9	A30	30/03/2...	2	KIDMAN	4	420.00			3	0000446	1	
CH9	A02	02/09/2...	2	KARDASHIAN	4	730.00			3	0000479	1	
HOME		30/03/2...	2	INVOICE	4	200.00			3			
QAN	A31	31/03/2...	2	CROWE	4	240.00			9	0000436	1	
QAN	02	02/02/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		240.00		9	0000436	1	I
QAN	A31	31/01/2...	2	POTTER	5	594.10			9	0000440	1	
QAN	02	02/02/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		594.10		9	0000440	1	Q
QAN	30	30/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		525.50		9	0000477	1	I
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	WALES	4	525.50			9	0000477	1	
QAN	30	30/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		297.00		9	0000478	1	I
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	DUCK	4	297.00			9	0000478	1	
QAN	30	30/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		240.00		9	0000507	1	I
QAN	A02	02/04/2...	2	EVERAGE	3	240.00			9	0000507	1	
QAN	30	30/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		960.50		9	0000508	1	I
QAN	A29	29/03/2...	2	WALES	4	960.50			9	0000508	1	
QAN	A31	31/10/2...	2	HARRISON	3	890.00		89.00	9	0000542	1	
QAN	30	30/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		801.00		9	0000542	1	I
QAN	A31	31/01/2...	2	DUCK	2	720.00		72.00	3	0000570	1	
QAN	A30	30/10/2...	2	JACKSON	1	990.00		99.00	3	0000587	1	
QAN	A30	30/10/2...	2	JACKSON	1		990.00	99.00	3	0000587	1	
QAN	30	30/08/2...	2	DUCK	4	300.00			9	800000...	1	
QAN	02	02/02/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		300.00		9	800000...	1	I

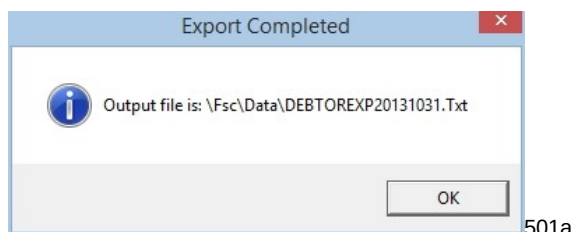
Total Amount: 13,165.00 Discount: 375.92

Display Options: ☒ Full Listing ☐ Current Month

Buttons: Export, Print, Exit

502

Export the Debtor Transactions to .Txt file. Open the Output file as .csv file format.



501a

6.2.2 Debtor History Display

To view transaction history on a Debtor account, click the Debtor Information button once, find the debtor you require, then click the Hist button once. (This is detailed more fully in the Debtor Information File under Debtor History)



503

Or from the Transaction list Icon from the main screen you will get this box click on History Transactions. Choose between the options to obtain the report you require.

DebtorsTransaction History

Reports

☐ Part Report

☐ Full Report

Options

Start Date:

End Date:

Start Code:

End Code:

Start Batch:

End Batch:

Type:

504

Part Report

Select the starting and ending codes for the report.

Full Report

List transactions for all accounts.

Start Date

Enter a start date in DDMMCCYY format to list transactions for a specific period.

End Date

Enter a end date in DDMMCCYY format to list transactions for a specific period.

Start Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on that columns heading. To print the report, click the print button.

If you have any transactions in your history they will appear hear in this report.

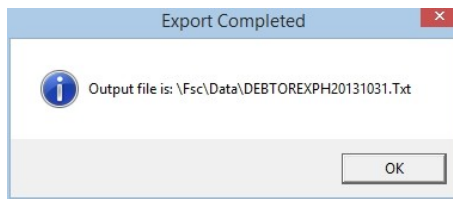
DebtorsTransaction History

Code	Batch	Date	TT	Trans Desc	P...	Debit	Credit	Discount	OI	Ref NO	Shift	PT
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		2,112.00		9	0000183	1	I
CH9	A08	08/08/2...	2	MAGUIRE	4	2,112.00			9	0000183	1	I
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		688.00		9	0000186	1	I
CH9	A08	08/08/2...	2	NEWMAN	4	688.00			9	0000186	1	I
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		516.00		9	0000293	1	I
CH9	A03	03/09/2...	2	NEWMAN	4	516.00			9	0000293	1	I
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		516.00		9	0000295	1	I
CH9	A03	03/09/2...	2	MAGUIRE	4	516.00			9	0000295	1	I
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		160.00		9	0000346	1	I
CH9	A30	30/01/2...	2	NEWMAN	4	160.00			9	0000346	1	I
CH9	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		160.00		9	0000347	1	I
CH9	A30	30/01/2...	2	MAGUIRE	4	160.00			9	0000347	1	I
HOME	A15	15/10/2...	2	EASTWOOD	4	122.00			9	0000007	1	I
HOME	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		122.00		9	0000007	1	I
HOME	A14	14/10/2...	2	EASTWOOD	1	200.00			9	0000007	1	I
HOME	14	14/10/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		180.00	20.00	9	0000007	1	Q
HOME	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		140.00		9	0000111	1	I
HOME	A01	01/09/2...	2	LOCKET	4	140.00			9	0000111	1	I
HOME	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		360.00		9	0000339	1	I
HOME	A01	01/02/2...	2	EASTWOOD	3	360.00			9	0000339	1	I
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	WALES	1	525.00			9	0000477	1	I
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	WALES	1		525.00		9	0000477	1	I
VIRG	02	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		240.00		9	0000384	1	I
VIRG	A30	30/07/2...	2	MINOGUE	3	240.00			9	0000384	1	I
WOTIF	A01	01/09/2...	2	NORTH	4	210.00			9	0000106	1	I
WOTIF	010	02/04/2...	1	CASH REC. CR	1		189.00		9	0000106	1	Q

Total Amount: 159.00 **Discount:** 159.00

504a

Export the Debtor History to .Txt file. Open the Output file as .csv file format.



505

6.3 Commission Report

The Commission Report window is accessed by clicking on the Commission List button once, in the **Accounts** menu. The following window will be displayed.



505a

Start Date

Enter a start date in DDMMCCYY format to list commissions for a specific period.

End Date

Enter a end date in DDMMCCYY format to list commissions for a specific period.

Start Code

Enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

Enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

Summarized

Tick the Summarized button to show totals only of the commissions.

Select Display once the information has been entered and the following window will display. For a hard copy click Print.

Debtors Commission Listing - AR0300C

Code	Batch	Date	TT	Trans Desc	P...	Debit	Credit	Commission	OI	Ref NO	Shift	Voucher
QAN	A31	31/03/2...	2	CROWE	4	240.00			9	0000436	1	QU3698
QAN	A31	31/01/2...	2	POTTER	5	594.10			9	0000440	1	QU78965
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	WALES	4	525.50			9	0000477	1	HRH
QAN	A02	02/09/2...	2	DUCK	4	297.00			9	0000478	1	XYZ589
QAN	A02	02/04/2...	2	EVERAGE	3	240.00			9	0000507	1	
QAN	A29	29/03/2...	2	WALES	4	960.50			9	0000508	1	
QAN	A31	31/10/2...	2	HARRISON	3	890.00		89.00	3	0000542	1	
QAN	A31	31/01/2...	2	DUCK	2	720.00		72.00	3	0000570	1	
QAN	A30	30/10/2...	2	JACKSON	1	990.00		99.00	3	0000587	1	Q2367
QAN	A30	30/10/2...	2	JACKSON	1	990.00		99.00	3	0000587	1	Q2367
QAN	A30	30/10/2...	2	JACKSON	1		990.00	99.00	3	0000587	1	Q2367
QAN	30	30/08/2...	2	DUCK	4	300.00			9	800000...	1	
STAR	A26	26/03/2...	2	CONFERENCE...	4	1,176.00			9	0000395	1	
STAR	A01	01/04/2...	2	CONFERENCE...	4	880.00			9	0000448	1	
STAR	A29	29/08/2...	2	STARFLEET	4	1,290.00			9	0000482	1	
STAR	A30	30/08/2...	2	STARFLEET	4	360.00			9	0000489	1	
STAR	A01	01/11/2...	2	STARFLEET	2	1,530.00			3	0000526	1	STAR004...
STAR	A01	01/11/2...	2	STARFLEET	2	2,430.00			3	0000546	1	
STAR	A01	01/02/2...	2	STARFLEET	1	2,800.00			3	0000564	1	
VIRG	A29	29/01/2...	2	MINOGUE	5	660.00			9	0000424	1	V001258
WOTIF	A30	30/01/2...	2	MUNROE	2	130.00		14.30	3	0000559	1	
WOTIF	A30	30/10/2...	2	PARKER	1	342.00		37.62	3	0000585	1	
WOTIF	A30	30/10/2...	2	PARKER	1		342.00	37.62	3	0000585	1	
WOTIF	A30	30/10/2...	2	PARKER	1	342.00		37.62	3	0000585	1	

Total Amount: 17,355.10 Commission: 311.92

Print Exit

505b

6.4 File List

Debtor File Listing - AR0400

Range ☐ Part Listing ☒ Full Listing	Options Start Code: End Code: Type: ALL
---	---

Mail List Display Exit

506

The File Listing window is accessed by clicking on the **File List** button once, in the **Accounts** menu. This Debtor file listing enables you to see all accounts on file.

Part Report

Select the starting and ending codes, or starting and ending rep codes for the report.

Full Report

List all debtors on file.

Start Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

Start Rep

Enter the Rep Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

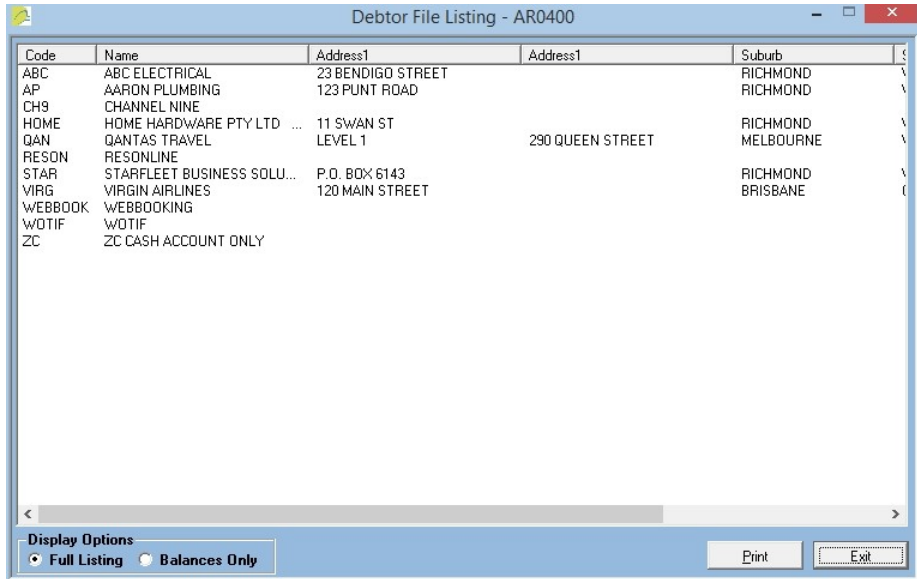
End Rep

Enter the Rep Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

Type

Enter the type of debtor you want for the report or leave blank for all.

The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on that columns heading. To print the report, click the print button once.



Code	Name	Address1	Address1	Suburb
ABC	ABC ELECTRICAL	23 BENDIGO STREET		RICHMOND
AP	AARON PLUMBING	123 PUNT ROAD		RICHMOND
CH9	CHANNEL NINE			
HOME	HOME HARDWARE PTY LTD ...	11 SWAN ST		RICHMOND
QAN	QANTAS TRAVEL	LEVEL 1	290 QUEEN STREET	MELBOURNE
RES0N	RESONLINE			
STAR	STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLU...	P.O. BOX 6143		RICHMOND
VIRG	VIRGIN AIRLINES	120 MAIN STREET		BRISBANE
WEBBOOK	WEBBOOKING			
WOTIF	WOTIF			
ZC	ZC CASH ACCOUNT ONLY			

Display Options
☒ Full Listing ☐ Balances Only
 Print Exit

507

6.5 Trial Balance



Selections

Date: 31/10/2013

Start Code:

End Code: //

Type: ALL

Display

Exit

508

The Trial Balance is accessed by clicking on the **Trial Balance** button once, in the **Accounts** menu.

This report is comprehensive and flexible. It combines sub-totals on the first character of the Debtor code (only for multiple company systems), provides a list of overdue accounts with contact names and phone numbers, and also can include transactions, so that the report can function as a statement.

Start Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all.

Type

Enter the type of debtor you want for the report or leave blank for all.

The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on that columns heading. To print the report, click the print button once.

You have 3 different options when printing this report.

1. Exclude all transactions and only show the balance, i.e. following report.
2. Include only outstanding transactions
3. Include all current transactions

Code	Name	A/C Balance	Current MTH	30 Days	60 Days	90 Days	120+ Days	C
CH9	CHANNEL NINE	2,016.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	2,016.00	0.00	
HOME	HOME HARDWARE PTY LTD	200.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	200.00	0.00	
QAN	QANTAS TRAVEL	2,340.00	891.00	648.00	801.00	0.00	0.00	
STAR	STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTI...	11,602.50	2,800.00	3,960.00	4,842.50	0.00	0.00	
VIRG	VIRGIN AIRLINES	297.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	297.00	0.00	
WOTIF	WOTIF	2,868.08	304.38	115.70	2,088.00	0.00	360.00	
		19,323.58	3,995.38	4,723.70	7,731.50	2,513.00	360.00	

Display Options: ☐ Full Listing ☒ Balances only

Print Option: ☒ Excl. Trans ☐ Incl. All Trans ☐ Incl. Outstanding Trans Only

Print Exit

509

6.6 Sales Report

Debtor Sales Report - AR0700

Reports: ☐ Part Report ☐ Full Report

Selections: Start Code: End Code: Type: ALL

Display Exit

510

The Debtors Sales Report is accessed by clicking on the **Sales Report** button once, in the **Accounts** menu.

The purpose of this program is to provide sales and cost-of-sales for the month-to-date, year-to-date and previous year.

Sub-totals are provided on a change in the first character of the Debtor's code (for multiple company systems), as well as an overall total.

The program can provide a summary report which prints only the sub-totals and overall totals, and a full report where Debtors with no sales are optionally included.

Part Report

Select the starting and ending codes, or starting and ending rep codes for the report.

Full Report

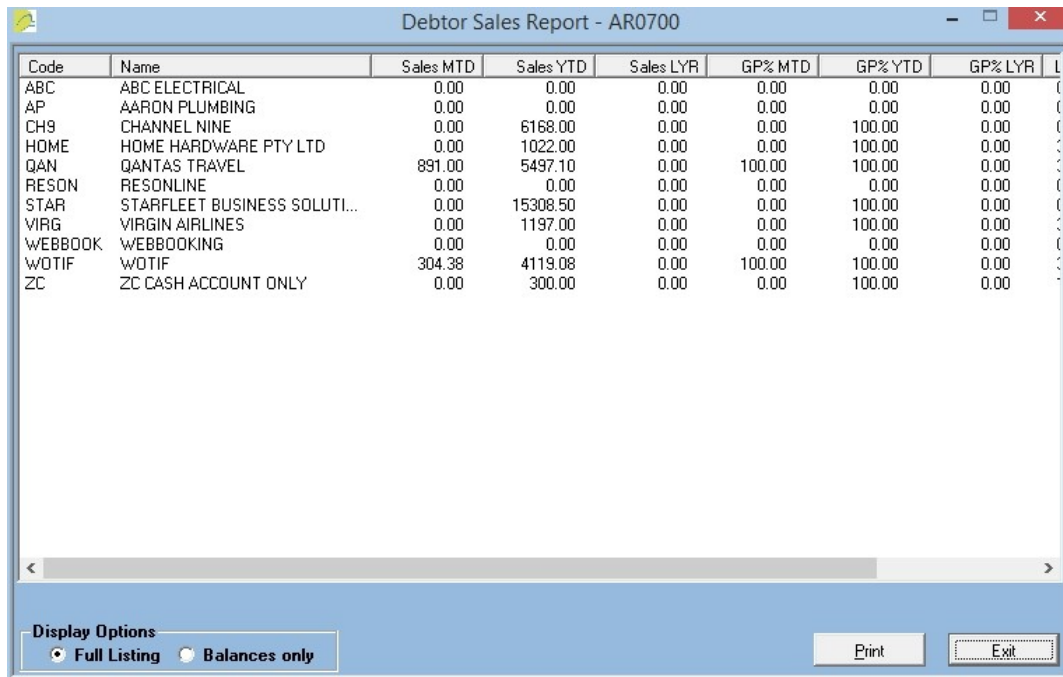
List all sales on file.

Start Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to start the report with or leave blank for all.

End Code

If you selected a part report, enter the Debtor Code you wish to end the report with or leave blank for all. The following report will be displayed. The report can be sorted by any column by clicking on that columns heading. To print the report, click the print button once.



Code	Name	Sales MTD	Sales YTD	Sales LYR	GP% MTD	GP% YTD	GP% LYR	L
ABC	ABC ELECTRICAL	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	(
AP	AARON PLUMBING	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	(
CH9	CHANNEL NINE	0.00	6168.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	0.00	(
HOME	HOME HARDWARE PTY LTD	0.00	1022.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	0.00	>
QAN	QANTAS TRAVEL	891.00	5497.10	0.00	100.00	100.00	0.00	>
RESON	RESONLINE	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	(
STAR	STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTI...	0.00	15308.50	0.00	0.00	100.00	0.00	(
VIRG	VIRGIN AIRLINES	0.00	1197.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	0.00	>
WEBBOOK	WEBBOOKING	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	(
WOTIF	WOTIF	304.38	4119.08	0.00	100.00	100.00	0.00	>
ZC	ZC CASH ACCOUNT ONLY	0.00	300.00	0.00	0.00	100.00	0.00	>

Display Options: ☒ Full Listing ☐ Balances only

Print Exit

511

6.7 Statement Print

Debtor Statement Print

Debtors Statements

☒ All
 ☐ Part List
 ☐ Single

Start Code: End Code:

Debtor Type:

Refresh display

Details

Print as Tax Invoice ☐
 Print company header ☒
 Use blank paper ☒

Detailed statement ☒
 Print Nett Amount ☐
 Statement Date:

Add Message to bottom of all Statements:

	Account code	Account name	Email
☒	CH9	CHANNEL NINE	
☒	HOME	HOME HARDWARE PTY LTD	
☒	QAN	QANTAS TRAVEL	
☒	RESON	RESONLINE	
☒	STAR	STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS	sales@starfleet-software.com.au
☒	VIRG	VIRGIN AIRLINES	
☒	WOTIF	WOTIF	
☒	ZC	ZC CASH ACCOUNT ONLY	

NOTE: Accounts with invalid or missing email address will not be sent

512

The Statement Print sub-menu is accessed by clicking on the **Statement Print** button, in the **Accounts** menu. The purpose of this sub-menu is to print statements for a range or all debtors.

All

Print all statements.

Part List

Select the starting and ending codes for the statements.

Single

The Start and End codes will be the same as it is only one Debtor statement will be selected.

Start Code: Enter in Debtor code to start from.

End Code: Enter in the Debtor code to end.

Debtor Type: Select the Debtor type, i.e. Travel Agent or Company. If printing Statements for All then do not select a debtor type

Refresh Display: Select this if any of the details have been changed.

Tick one or more of the options below to include in the statement:-

- Print as Tax Invoice
- Print Company Header
- Using Blank Paper (to print the statements on a blank paper)
- Detailed Statement (for a detailed statement printed)
- Print Net Amount (to print the net amount)

Statement Date

This enables you to be able to print your statements at any stage of the month and will include any invoices up to and including that date selected

Message

This program gives you the option of typing in a message on the statement (max 30 characters) that will appear on the bottom of the statement.

To Print the Statements select the Print button. To Email debtor, ensure all Debtors have valid email address entered on Debtor Information. The statement will be attached to the email as a PDF.

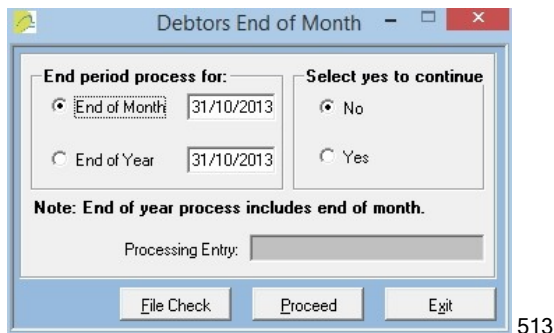
6.8 Month End

This procedure must be run at the end of every month so the balances in the debtors accounts are aged correctly.

At the end of month make sure you have reconciled your Debtors then print a Full Trial Balance with all transactions, Banking report and Statements.

The next step is to click on the File Check button just to check all the debtors accounts are showing the correct balances. Then proceed as detailed below.

The End of Month menu is accessed by clicking on the **End Of Month** button once, in the **Accounts** menu.

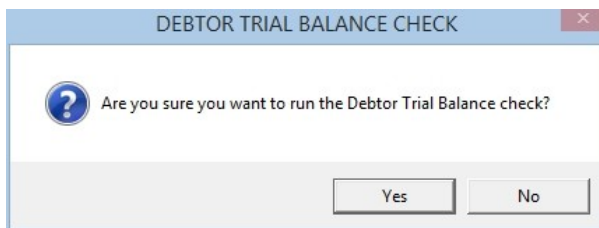


513

*******End of Year is ONLY run at the end of the financial year. It is not necessary to run End of Month at the same time as End of Year will complete the process.*******

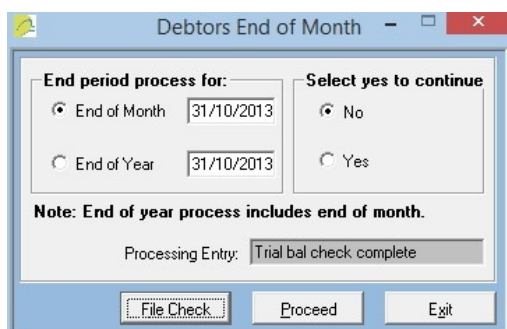
If you happen to go over the end of month for your statement printing with the dates available in the month end statement print area you are able to back date the statements to print at the end of the month.

At the end of month, this program must be run to age all Debtor Information by one month. Make sure you have reconciled your Debtors first then print a Full Trial Balance with all transactions, Banking report and Statements.



514

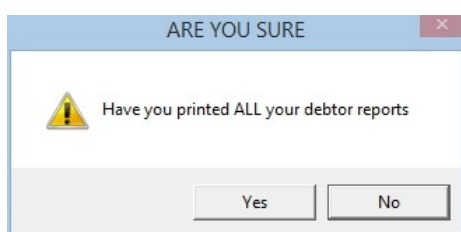
The screen following is displayed when the debtors trial balance check is complete



515

******Ensure a backup is done first, and run this program ONCE only!******

To run the End of Month procedure, select "End of Month", then select "Yes". You then click the Proceed button once.



516

The above message will appear for you to answer and then if you click Yes you will prompt the month end to start. It shouldn't take long, once the box disappears it has finished.

6.8.1 Month End Reconciliation Procedures

The following steps are only applicable to 'open item' Debtor Information. The purpose of reconciling Debtor Information is to clear the transactions, or invoices which have been paid or adjusted, without the payment or adjustment having been matched to an invoice in a Debtor account. The steps to reconcile a Debtor account are as follows.

- Print A Debtor Trial Balance (refer to [Trial Balance](#))¹⁷⁰
- Highlight Transactions
Look for invoices and matching payments which have not been reconciled.
ie: Reconciled invoices and matching payments will have a transaction type '9'. Any other invoices and matching payments which do not have these transaction types will need to be reconciled manually. For example an invoice may have a transaction type '3' and the matching payment may also have a transaction type '3'.
- Begin The Debtor Reconciliation
See [Reconcile Debtor Account Payments](#)¹⁶¹ on how to reconcile debtors.

6.9 Travel Agent Information

This option allows you to setup Travel Agent information, pay commission to the Travel Agent, and display commission owing to the Travel Agent. The following screen is a display of all the Travel Agent details in the system. To add a new Travel Agent, select the Add button. Enter in the name, address and contact information, the debtor code if there is already a current one, if not then setup. The same code can be used for the Agent Code, select Save.

Travel Agent Information

General | Commission Details | Commission Due | Forthcoming Bookings

Name / Address

Debtor Code: STAR

Agent Code: STAR

Agent Name: STARFLEET TRAVEL

Address 1: P.O. BOX 6143

Address 2:

Country: AUSTRALIA

Suburb: RICHMOND

State: VIC Post Code: 3122

Comment:

Contact Details

Contact:

Phone: +61 3 9428 4333

Fax: +61 3 8640 0446

E-Mail: sales@starfleet-software.com.au

Delete Save Exit

517

Commission Details

Here you select the type of commission that will be paid to the Travel Agent.

1. % of First night accommodation. – Regardless of how long the guest will stay, the agent will be paid a percentage of the first nights accommodation.
2. % of Total accommodation. – A percentage of the guests total accommodation will be paid to the travel agent.
3. % of Total amount spent. – A percentage of the total amount of the guests bill will be paid to the travel agent.
4. Flat rate per night. – A flat rate will be paid to the travel agent regardless of what the guest will spend per day.
5. Flat rate per stay. – A flat rate will be paid to the travel agent regardless of what the guest will spend for their entire stay.

Travel Agent Information

General | Commission Details | Commission Due | Forthcoming Bookings

Commission Type

☐ % of First Night Accommodation

☒ % of Total Accommodation

☐ % of Total Amount Spent % amount: 15.00

☐ Flat Rate amount per night

☐ Flat Rate amount per stay \$ amount:

Delete Save Exit

518

Commission Due

The commission due tab will display all commission due to the travel agent. Only those reservations that have been checked out will be displayed here.

To pay an agent, all you have to do is double click in the 'Paid' column of the row you want. You can select as many entries as you like. You then select the Pay Agent button.

Travel Agent Information

General | Commission Details | Commission Due | **Forthcoming Bookings**

Group Name	Arrival	Departure	Accom Rt	Tot Accom	Tot Spend	Comm Due	Paid?

Unpaid Paid Print Pay Agent Delete Save Exit

519

Forthcoming Bookings

The following screen will display any forthcoming bookings that the travel agent has made.

Travel Agent Information

General | Commission Details | Commission Due | **Forthcoming Bookings**

Account#	Res#	Guest/Group Name	Arrival	Departure	Comm Rate	Status

Click the 'Update Rate' button to modify each booking commission rate above to the value set in the agent commission details

Print Update Rate Delete Save Exit

520

To edit a travel agent, double click on the agent code to open the information screen and add/edit any of the details.

Travel Agent Listing

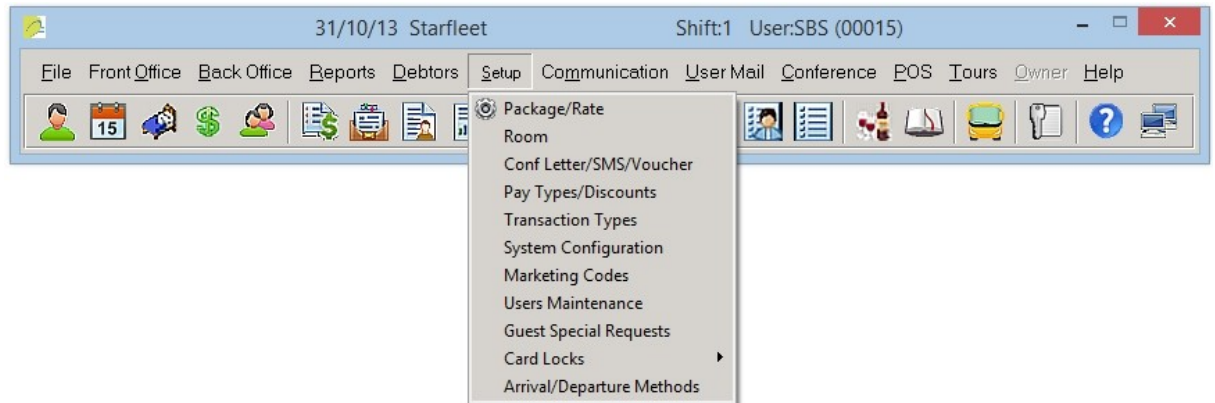
Agent Cd	Agent Name	State	Phone	Contact	Commission
STAR	STARFLEET TRAVEL	VIC	+61 3 9428 4333	Contact	15.0 % total accom

To Edit a Travel Agent Double Click on the Agent Code

Print Add Exit

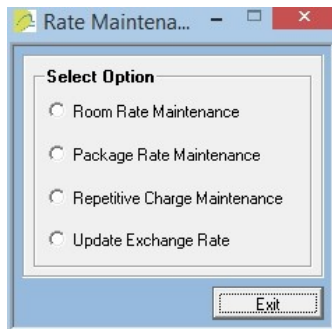
521

7 Set Up



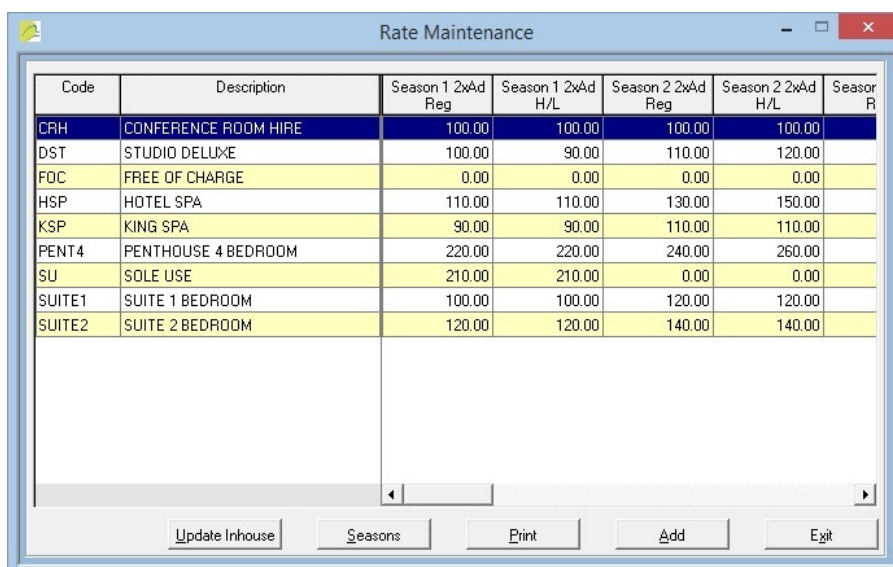
222

7.1 Package/Rate



223

To setup Room and Package Rates select **Setup -> Package/Rate**. The above screen will display. Select the option you require to create, change or delete rates as required. If you select **Room Rate Maintenance**, the following screen appears.



224

Double click on a line to edit or delete the rate already loaded into the system. Or click on **Add** to insert a new rate. See [Special Rates](#) ¹⁸¹ for information.

7.1.1 Update In House

When a rate code is updated the current In House guest reservations can be altered to reflect the new rate. Select the **Update In House** button to do this automatically.

7.1.2 Seasons

Code	Description	Season 1 2xAd Reg	Season 1 2xAd H/L	Season 2 2xAd Reg	Season 2 2xAd H/L	Season R
CRH	CONFERENCE ROOM HIRE	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	
DST	STUDIO DELUXE	100.00	90.00	110.00	120.00	
FOC	FREE OF CHARGE	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
HSP	HOTEL SPA	110.00	110.00	130.00	150.00	
KSP	KING SPA	90.00	90.00	110.00	110.00	
PENT4	PENTHOUSE 4 BEDROOM	220.00	220.00	240.00	260.00	
SU	SOLE USE	210.00	210.00	0.00	0.00	
SUITE1	SUITE 1 BEDROOM	100.00	100.00	120.00	120.00	
SUITE2	SUITE 2 BEDROOM	120.00	120.00	140.00	140.00	

Update Inhouse Seasons Print Add Exit

Update the season end dates

227

Rates can have seasons applied so you need to setup the dates of the season by clicking on the button at the bottom of the screen. You can then enter rates for up to 4 seasons - this can be four years or summer & winter seasons over two years or however you would like to work it. Once the season dates are entered when bookings are made they are automatically categorized into the appropriate season and those rates applicable to that season will appear in the rate drop down box.

If a guest stay overlaps the season changes, the rate is calculated at the starting season rate that applied on check in.

To set the seasons click on the season button. The window below is displayed which will enable you to set the seasons. The dates entered **MUST** be the **END** date of the season. Click Save, then Exit.

Enter Season End Dates

Season 1 End Date 31/03/2014

Season 2 End Date 30/06/2014

Season 3 End Date 30/09/2014

Season 4 End Date

Save Exit

228

7.1.3 Add/Edit Rates

Rate Maintenance

Standard Rate | **Special Rates**

Rate Cd: DST Description: STUDIO DELUXE

Room Type: ☐ All ☒ 1-KING SPA ☐ 2-HOTEL SPA ☒ 3-STUDIO DELUXE ☐ 4-SUITE 2 BED ☐ 5-SUITE 1 BED

Variable Rate ☐ Requires voucher ☐ Requires debtor

Debtor (A/R):

Charge Type: ☒ Daily ☐ Weekly ☐ Monthly ☐ Web Bkg

First night discount: 0.00

Every night discount: 0.00

Exchange Rate: 0.00

High/Low Rate Days: ☐ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☐ Sat

	Regular	High/Low
One Adult:	80.00	80.00
Two Adults:	100.00	90.00
Three Adults:	150.00	150.00
Four Adults:	0.00	0.00
Extra Adult:	0.00	0.00
One Child:	30.00	30.00
Extra Child:	0.00	0.00
Extra Infant:	0.00	0.00

Season 1 | Season 2 | Season 3 | Season 4

Save Duplicate Print Delete Exit

225

Rate Cd: Enter in abbreviated rate code, maximum of eight characters.

Description: Full description of the abbreviated rate code.

Room Type: If the rate code applies to all room types select All, or tick just the room type the rate code will apply to.

Variable Rate: If this option is selected it allows the user to alter the rate amount.

Requires Voucher: A voucher number is required on the reservation when this rate code is used.

Debtor (A/R): If the rate requires a A/R Debtor code enter it here. That rate will then only be useable with that Debtor.

Requires Debtor: Select if the rate code applies to a specific Debtor (i.e. Travel Agent or Company) tick this option.

Charge Type: Select how the rate is to be charged, Daily, Weekly, Monthly or Web Bkg (to be used with Starfleet Web Booking link).

First night discount: Enter the discount amount (\$0.01 - \$99.99) if offering this for the first night of a stay.

Every night discount: Enter the discount amount (\$0.01 - \$99.99) if offering this for every night of a stay.

Exchange Rate: Used only when room rates are in one currency and the local currency is in another. For example room rates might be in Rupiah (Indonesia) and the exchange rate is tied to \$US. The exchange rate is also entered in Set Up->System Configuration-> [Tax/Currency](#) 215

High/Low Rate Days are applied when there is a lower rate to be charged over part of the week and the remaining days has a higher rate. To select these days go to **System Configuration -> Daily Update** and tick the days to have the higher rate. If there is a rate that does not have a High/Low amount then have the same rate apply in both columns.

When making a booking for a period when the new seasons rates are not yet setup the rate code will be able to be selected however the amount will be zero and you will be prompted with a message asking if this is correct or not - if there should be a rate you will have to reselect the rate code as the blank code and input the rate manually or go in and setup the rates to continue with the booking. The blank code will be the top blue line when selecting the rate code field in reservation entry.

Duplicate will allow you to create a new rate code (with the number 1 on the code). The code and description can then be edited to suit.

7.1.4 Special Rates

Click on the Special Rates tab, and the window below is displayed.

Rate Maintenance

Standard Rate | **Special Rates**

January 2014

Date: 26/01/2014

Description: AUSTRALIA DAY W/END

One Adult: 100.00 One Child: 35.00

Two Adults: 120.00 Extra Child: 35.00

Three Adults: 170.00 Extra Infant: 0.00

Four Adults: 0.00

Extra Adult: 0.00

Please note: No discount will be applied on these special rates & these rates are not applicable to web booking type rates.

Date	Desc	1 Adult	2 Adult	3 Adult	4 Adult
24/01/2014		100.00	120.00	170.00	0.00
25/01/2014		100.00	120.00	170.00	0.00
26/01/2014		100.00	120.00	170.00	0.00

Add/Update

New

Delete

To update/delete an entry, please click to select the one to be updated/deleted.

226

Enter, or select from the calendar, the date the Special Rate will apply, enter the Description i.e. Easter, Xmas or long weekend.

Here you can set special rates for the adults and children the same as setting up a rate code. These Special rates will be applied on the dates specified. If the guest has been arrived a few days before then the rate selected in the reservation will apply until the date of the special rate comes in to effect. The same applies if the guest is still In House after the dates of the special rate.

To exit this window, click on the Standard Rate tab.

7.1.5 Package Rate Maintenance

A Package code is used when there are additional items i.e. breakfast and dinner are included

Package Maintenance

Pkg Code	Rm Type	Description	Start Date	End Date	Twin Sh PP	Sir
BB1		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	100.00	
BB2		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	100.00	
BB3		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	100.00	
BB4		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	110.00	
BB5		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	100.00	
BB6		BED & BREAKFAST	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	130.00	
CON	*	CONFERENCE PACKAGE	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	120.00	
GET		GETAWAY PAMPER PACKAGE	01/01/2013	31/12/2014	360.00	
S3P2		STAY 3 NIGHTS PAY 2	26/10/2013	31/12/2014	160.00	

To change a package double click on the package code.

Print Add Exit

229

To change a package, double click on the package code. The window below is displayed.

Package Maintenance

Pkg Code: GET Description: GETAWAY PAMPER PACKAGE Stop Sell ☐

Start Date: 01/01/2013 End Date: 31/12/2014 ☐ Repetitive Number of Nights: 02

Room Type: ☐ All ☒ 1-KING SPA ☐ 2-HOTEL SPA ☒ 3-STUDIO DELUXE ☒ 4-SUITE 2 BED ☐ 5-SUITE 1 BED

Debtor (A/R):

Price PP ☐ Exchange Rate 0.00

Min. Pax per Room:

Items & Price **Other details**

Twin Share (PP): 360.00 Single: 360.00 Extra Adult: 0.00 Extra Child: 0.00 Infant: 0.00

Day	Entry	Trans	Twin Sh PP	Single	Extra Adult	Extra Child	Infant	Descripti
1	1	ACC	80.00	80.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
1	2	DIN	40.00	40.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
1	3	BRK	20.00	20.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
1	4	MAS	80.00	80.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
2	1	ACC	80.00	80.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
2	2	DIN	40.00	40.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
2	3	BRK	20.00	20.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	

Any other night charge package:

Remove Items Add Items

Print Duplicate Save Delete Exit

230

Pkg Code: short description for package.

Description: package description.

Start Date: date the package rate will start.

End Date: date the package rate will end.

Stop Sell: by selecting this the package will not be available to select when making a reservation. Untick once the package can be sold again.

Repetitive: tick if package is to be charged

Number of Nights: enter the number of nights this package applies to.

Room Type: tick the room type the package applies to or select All if it applies to all room types.

Debtor (A/R): enter the Debtor Code if the package applies to a specific debtor.

Price PP: If selected this option will force all entries to be charged on a Per Person basis.

Min Pax per Room: The minimum pax per room in the case of Per Person charging.

Exchange Rate: If not using the local currency to sell rates and packages, enter the Exchange rate used to calculate the rate in local currency.

Items & Price: enter the items and prices included in the Package.

Twin Share (PP): the amount displayed is the price PER PERSON.

Single: the amount displayed is the price for SINGLE guest.

Extra Adult: the amount displayed is the price an extra adult.

Extra Child: the amount displayed is the price for an extra child.

Infant: the amount displayed is the price for an infant.

Remove Items: click on the item to highlight items, then select the Remove Items button

Add Items: click on to add additional items to the package.

Other Details: details entered here will display on the guest Conf letter. If no details are entered the information displayed will be the Package description.

Print: print a hard copy of the Package details.

Duplicate: this will duplicate the Package, the code will have 1 on the end. The code, description, item entries and amounts can edited or removed then saved.

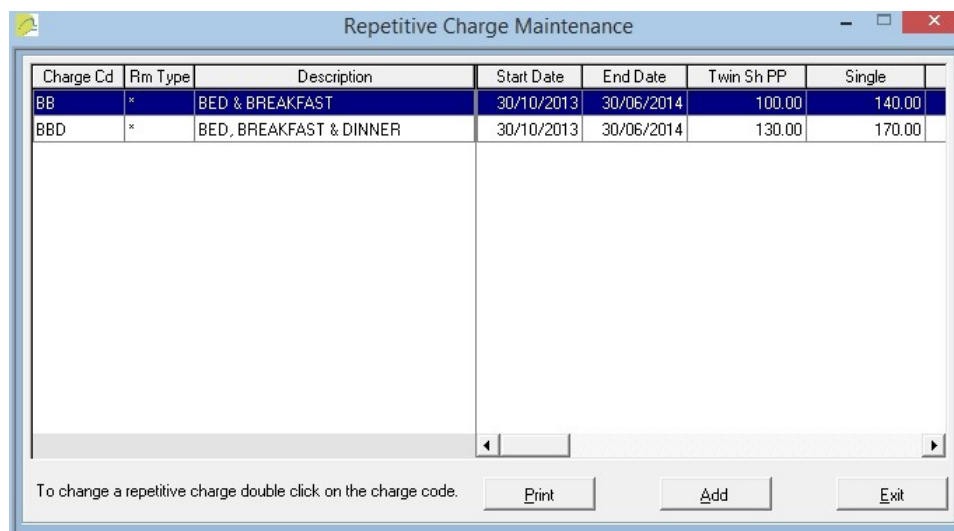
Save: when the Package setup is completed

Delete: do not delete a Package rate that has already been used on a guest reservation. This will affect the historical reporting data.

Exit to return to the previous window.

7.1.6 Repetitive Charge Maintenance

A Repetitive Charge can be setup and used when there is only one or two charges to apply to the guest account, i.e. Accommodation and Breakfast. These individual items will display on the guest account. When the individual items are not to be shown on the guest account use a Package rate, refer to [Package Rate Maintenance](#)¹⁸¹.



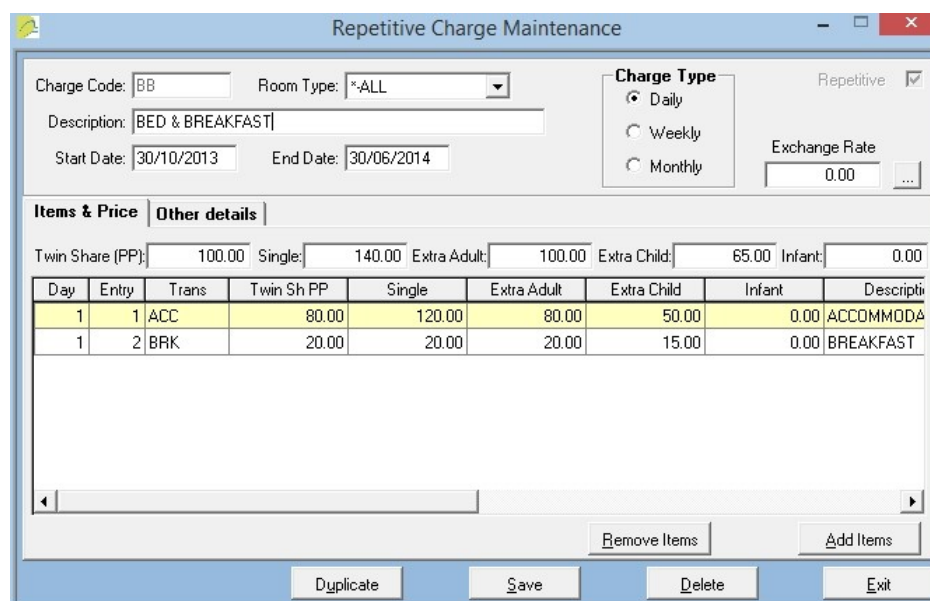
The screenshot shows the 'Repetitive Charge Maintenance' window. It contains a table with the following data:

Charge Cd	Rm Type	Description	Start Date	End Date	Twin Sh PP	Single
BB	*	BED & BREAKFAST	30/10/2013	30/06/2014	100.00	140.00
BBD	*	BED, BREAKFAST & DINNER	30/10/2013	30/06/2014	130.00	170.00

Below the table, there is a text box with the instruction: 'To change a repetitive charge double click on the charge code.' At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Print', 'Add', and 'Exit'.

231

To edit double click on the code. Here you can add items, remove items, duplicate, save or delete charge. Click the exit button to return to the previous window.



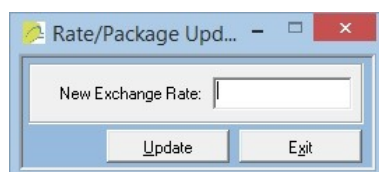
The screenshot shows the 'Repetitive Charge Maintenance' window with detailed settings. The 'Charge Code' is 'BB' and 'Room Type' is '*:ALL'. The 'Description' is 'BED & BREAKFAST'. The 'Start Date' is '30/10/2013' and 'End Date' is '30/06/2014'. The 'Charge Type' is 'Daily'. The 'Exchange Rate' is '0.00'. Below these settings, there is a table with the following data:

Day	Entry	Trans	Twin Sh PP	Single	Extra Adult	Extra Child	Infant	Description
1	1	ACC	80.00	120.00	80.00	50.00	0.00	ACCOMMODA
1	2	BRK	20.00	20.00	20.00	15.00	0.00	BREAKFAST

At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Duplicate', 'Save', 'Delete', and 'Exit'.

232

7.1.7 Update Exchange Rate



The screenshot shows the 'Rate/Package Update' window. It has a text box labeled 'New Exchange Rate:' and two buttons: 'Update' and 'Exit'.

232a

This is linked to the room rates so when the exchange rate is changed the room rates change also to reflect the new exchange rate.

7.2 Room

The Room menu is accessed by selecting **Setup -> Room**. Rooms need to be added here first before they will display on the Room Allocation screen.

The screenshot shows the 'Room Maintenance' window. It contains a table with the following columns: Room#, Type, Status, Cond, Wing, Grouping, Attrib 1, Attrib 2, Attrib 3, Attrib 4, Attrib 5, Attrib 6, Acc #, Guest Name, and Re. The table lists 18 rooms with various attributes. Below the table are several buttons: Room Type Setup, Bed Config Codes, Room Facilities, Print, Call Limit, Add, and Exit.

Room#	Type	Status	Cond	Wing	Grouping	Attrib 1	Attrib 2	Attrib 3	Attrib 4	Attrib 5	Attrib 6	Acc #	Guest Name	Re
01	1	O	D									0000550	REYNOLDS	01
02	1	O	D									0000126	JONES	01
03	1	V	D									0000000		01
04	2	O	D									0000564	HARRISON	01
05	2	V	D									0000000		01
06	2	V	C									0000000		01
07	3	O	D									0000558	CARTWRIGHT	01
08	3	V	C									0000000		01
09	3	O	D									0000554	SKYWALKER	01
10	3	O	D									0000555	HOOD	01
11	3	O	D									0000556	TUCK	01
12	1	V	C									0000000		01
13	1	V	C									0000000		01
14	1	O	D									0000552	BURNS	01
15	2	V	C									0000000		01
16	2	V	C									0000000		01
17	2	O	D									0000553	SIMPSON	01
18	4	V	D									0000000		01

238

For room maintenance the numbers of all rooms (you can include Conference Rooms if you wish) and room types must be entered here. Information displayed in this section for each room includes status, condition, current guest name and next guest names and up to 6 room attributes. The Room Type **MUST** be added first before a new room can be created.

Click on the links below to access the information on Room Type Setup, Bed Configuration Codes, Room Facilities, Print, Call Limit, Add and Delete Room.

- [Room Type Setup](#) ¹⁸⁴
- [Bed Configuration Codes](#) ¹⁸⁶
- [Room Facilities](#) ¹⁸⁶
- [Print](#) ¹⁸⁷
- [Call Limit](#) ¹⁸⁸
- [Add New Room](#) ¹⁸⁸

7.2.1 Room Type Setup

The screenshot shows the 'Room Type Maintenance' window. It contains a table with the following columns: Room Type, Description, Total Rooms, Classifi, People /Room, and Require Cleaning. The table lists 8 room types. Below the table are summary statistics and buttons: Add, Print, and Exit.

Room Type	Description	Total Rooms	Classifi	People /Room	Require Cleaning
1	KING SPA	6	N	2	☒
2	HOTEL SPA	6	N	4	☒
3	STUDIO DELUXE	5	N	3	☒
4	SUITE 2 BED	6	N	5	☒
5	SUITE 1 BED	4	N	3	☒
6	PENTHOUSE	1	N	8	☒
7	RESTAURANT	1	C	150	☐
8	CONFERENCE	1	C	150	☐

Totals: Rooms: 28 Casual rooms: 0 Conference rooms: 2

233

This option is used to setup room type descriptions. A maximum of 36 room types can be entered. The Room Types are numbered Alpha-numerically, 0 - 9 and A - Z. The screen above displays the current room type configuration, listing room type, room type description, number of rooms of this type, **Classification Y = Casual rooms N = Motel rooms C = Conference rooms**, maximum number of persons per room and if cleaning is required. **Conference room types are not calculated in to the occupancy statistics.** If adding Restaurant rooms to the room allocation screen then set these up with the Conference code C. The same can be done for 'dummy rooms' that are not Accommodation rooms.

Room Type	Description	Total Rooms	Classifi	People /Room	Require Cleaning
1	KING SPA	6	N	2	☒
2	HOTEL SPA	6	N	4	☒
3	STUDIO DELUXE	5	N	3	☒
4	SUITE 2 BED	6	N	5	☒
5	SUITE 1 BED	4	N	3	☒
6	PENTHOUSE	1	N	8	☒
7	RESTAURANT	1	C	150	☐
8	CONFERENCE	1	C	150	☐

Totals: Rooms: 28 Casual rooms: 0 Conference rooms: 2

Add Print Exit

235

Click on the Add button to add new room types or double click on a current room type to edit or delete. The screen below will be displayed.

Room Type Cd: 1

Room Description: KING SPA

No of Rooms: 6

No of people per room: 2

Min. No of rooms for warning: 0

Cleaning required ☒

Transaction code:

Classification: ☐ Backpacker ☒ Motel ☐ Conference

Save Delete Exit

236

Room Type Cd

This will be Room Type code/number. This is between 0 - 9 or A - Z

Room Description

Enter the room type description.

No of Rooms

This field will populate itself once Rooms have been created, it can not be changed manually.

Number of People per Room

Enter the number of people this room will accommodate.

Min No of Rooms for warning

This will allow you to set the minimum number of rooms in the Availability screen in the Front Office menu. When a room type reaches this set number of rooms the colour of available rooms will change from black to red indicating to staff low levels of rooms.

Transaction Code

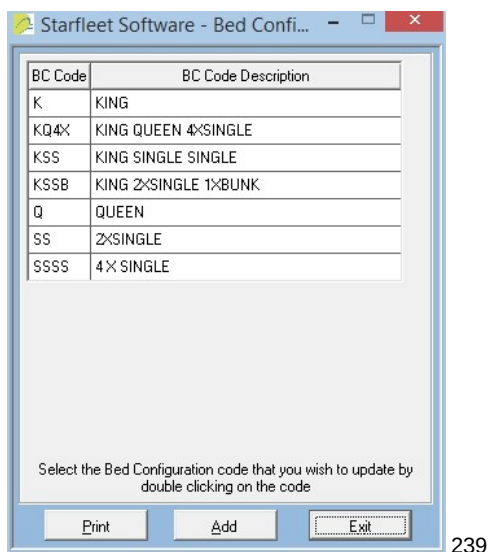
To use a different accommodation transaction code other than default, during night audit posting.

Dummy Room

If a 'Dummy Room' is required that is not to be used as an Accommodation room, the room type MUST be setup as a Conference Room. Conference Room reservations are not included in occupancy statistics, therefore any 'reservations' entered in this dummy room will not be included in the Occupancy Statistic reporting.

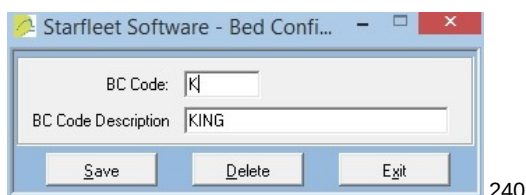
7.2.2 Bed Configuration Codes

Click on the **Bed Configuration Codes** button, and the following screen will be displayed. These configuration codes can then be selected in the guest reservation. This information will display on the Housekeeping report so the bedding configuration can be setup as requested before the guest arrives.



239

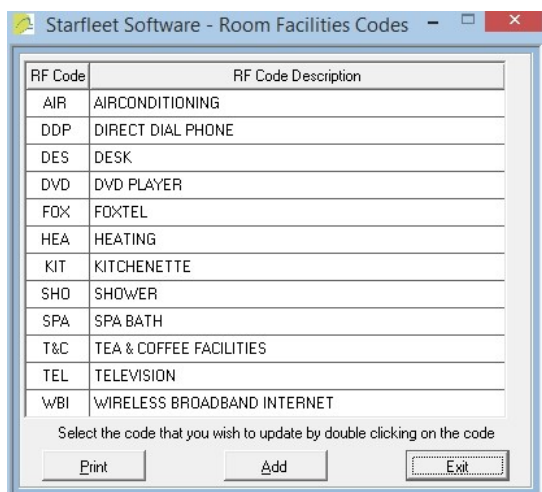
To change or edit a bed configuration code, select the code, then double click. The window below will be displayed. Here the Bed Configuration Code or description can be edited. Click the Save button to save the changes or click the Delete button to delete the code all together. Click the Exit button to return to the previous code.



240

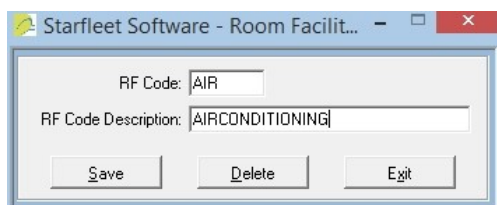
7.2.3 Room Facilities

Click on the **Room Facilities** button, and the window below will be displayed. This setup is used to display on your website when using **Starfleet On Line Web Booking** link.



241

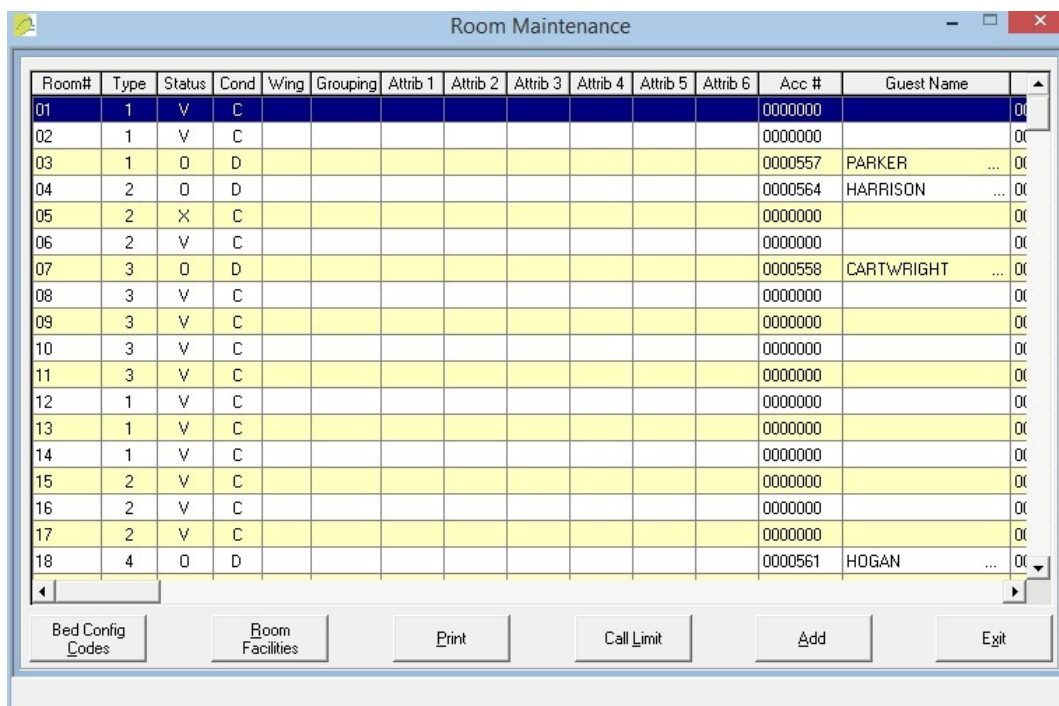
Select the code you wish to change, then double click. The window below will be displayed to enable you to edit or delete a code. If the code is new, click on the add button, then add the code, and description, then save.



242

7.2.4 Print

To print a listing of rooms and their details, press the print button once. This will generate a complete listing of rooms in your system.



252

7.2.5 Call Limit

To use this option go to Communication ->PABX ->Set Call Limit. Refer to [Set Call Limit](#)^[226] to setup.

7.2.6 Add New Room

244

Room number

Enter the number of the room you wish to add to the system. Eg: 01.

If a PABX is connected to this system, and the translation table (refer to PABX setup) is not in use, room numbers must correspond to the PABX extension numbers.

Type

Select the Room Type refer to: [Room Type Setup](#)^[184] if not already created.

Wing

This is used if you wish to group different room types and rooms into a wing. This may be a separate building or just a floor or part of a floor. This is useful for housekeeping reports if you wish to allocate an area for each person to clean and then you can print rooms by wing.

Room Grouping Code

This is used for Backpacker accommodation or if you have a backpacker style setup in a couple of rooms. Each bed will be setup as a room and can be grouped together to book the room as 'Sole Use'. eg room "100" has 4 beds setup as 4 room numbers (100A,100B,100C,100D) If the sole use option is setup and someone would like to have a room to themselves, by ticking the sole use check the system will take all that GROUP "100" out and allocate to the one guest.

Sole use master room

This only applies if there are two rooms that interconnect and can be booked as one reservation, i.e. a two bedroom and one bedroom can be booked as one three bedroom. The Master Room is the 'main' room. See [Sole Use Set Up](#)^[189]

Status

The Status will default to V - Vacant when setting up a new room. **V – Vacant, O – Occupied, X – On Maintenance.**

Condition

The Condition will default to C - Clean when setting up a new room. **C - Clean, D - Dirty.**

Attributes

Enter the room types three characters code attributes, up to six attributes are available

Bed Config

Enter the room setup here. (eg 1D2S – 1 double bed, 2 single or 0D4S – 0 double beds, 4 single beds) Some rooms will be able to be made up in a number of ways. This will then be shown on the housekeeping report. It is suggested that the most common setup be placed in the first box. Refer to [Bed Configuration Codes](#) ¹⁸⁶ to setup.

Room Facilities for Web Booking Only - refer to [Room Facilities](#) ¹⁸⁶ for information.

Maintenance

Rooms can be put in maintenance from the room allocation screen in Front office. This is done by double clicking on the room number in the Room Allocation screen. Enter the details in the Room Maintenance screen that will appear.

7.2.7 Sole Use Set Up

Sole Use is used when there are interconnecting rooms that can be booked as a larger Apartment for one reservation. When setting up one room is selected as the 'Master Room'. The Room Grouping code can be the 'Master' room number. The second room also has the same Room Grouping code. When a reservation is made the option 'Sole Use' is selected. This will then link the rooms by the Room Grouping code.

The 'Master' room has **Sole use master room** ticked. Room Grouping code is the room number.

Room Maintenance

Room Number: 21 Type: 4-SUITE 2 BED Wing: ☐

Room Grouping Cd: 21 ☒ Sole use master room Status: 0 Condition: D

Attributes:

Bed Config:

Room Facilities For Web Booking Only:

Room Description: KeyCard Room Num: 00000000

Account Code: 0000347 Group (Y/N): ☐

Reservation #: 0000588 Guest Name: FLINSTONE M/M

Next Guest Res #: 0000000 Next Guest Name:

Maintenance Description: Start date: End date: Apply To Rm Grp: ☐ Completed

☐ Completed

☐ Completed

Save Delete Exit

245a

The second room has the same Room Grouping code as the Master room.

Room Maintenance

Room Number: 22 Type: 5-SUITE 1 BED Wing: ☐

Room Grouping Cd: 21 ☐ Sole use master room Status: 0 Condition: D

Attributes:

Bed Config:

Room Facilities For Web Booking Only:

Room Description: KeyCard Room Num: 00000000

Account Code: 0000347 Group (Y/N): ☐

Reservation #: 0000588 Guest Name: FLINSTONE M/M

Next Guest Res #: 0000000 Next Guest Name:

Maintenance Description: Start date: End date: Apply To Rm Grp: ☐ Completed

☐ Completed

☐ Completed

Save Delete Exit

245b

The Room Maintenance screen will display the 'Master' room with a m in the Room Grouping Code column.

20	4	V	C							0000000		00
21	4	O	D	21 m						0000347	FLINSTONE	00
22	5	O	D	21						0000347	FLINSTONE	00
23	4	V	C	23 m						0000000		00
24	5	V	C	23						0000000		00
25	4	O	D	25 m						0000026	NICHOLSON	00
26	5	V	C	25						0000000		00

245c

7.2.8 Change Room Details

The screenshot shows the 'Room Maintenance' window with the following fields and values:

- Room Number: 01
- Type: 1-KING SPA
- Wing:
- Room Grouping Cd:
- Sole use master room: ☐
- Status: V
- Condition: C
- Attributes:
- Bed Config: K, SS
- Room Facilities For Web Booking Only:
- Room Description:
- KeyCard Room Num: 00000000
- Account Code: 0000000
- Group (Y/N):
- Reservation #: 0000000
- Guest Name:
- Next Guest Res #: 0000577
- Next Guest Name: REYNOLDS
- Maintenance Description:
- Start date:
- End date:
- Apply To Rm Grp: ☐
- Buttons: Save, Delete, Exit

246

If you need to change any room details you may do so by double clicking on the room number on the Room Maintenance screen to open the above screen. Select the field to change or enter details.

Room number

The room number can not be changed.

Type

Enter the Room type (i.e.: - 9 corresponding to the room types setup in Room Type Maintenance).

Status

Enter the status of the room (i.e.: V = Vacant or O = Occupied). Always check the status if guests are already in house prior to changing any room status to be vacant.

Condition

Enter the condition of the room (i.e.: C = Clean or D = Dirty)

Account code

The account code of the current guest is displayed in this section.

Reservation number

The reservation number of the current guest is displayed in this section.

Guest name

Displays the name of the guest currently occupying this room.

Wing

This is used if you wish to group different room types and rooms into a wing. This may be a separate building or just a floor or part of a floor. This is useful for housekeeping reports if you wish to allocate an area for Housekeeping to clean and then you can print rooms by wing.

Room Grouping Cd

This is used when there is a sole use or backpacker set up. There will be a number of beds in the room, i.e. four. The room number could be 25 so the beds or 'rooms' would be numbered 25A, 25B, 25C, 25D. These four beds will then display as separate 'rooms' on the Room Allocation screen. The Room Grouping code will then be 25. This will then link the four beds together as one room for the purpose of a sole use booking allowing the guest/s sole use. Tick the option 'Sole Use' when entering the reservation, refer to [Sole Use Set Up](#)¹⁸⁹ and [Backpacker Bookings](#)⁶⁴.

Next guest Res

Displays the reservation number of the next guest allocated this room.

Next guest

Displays the name of the next guest allocated this room.

Attributes

Enter up to six 3 character room attribute codes. Use the first attribute to indicate anything that is special regarding this room i.e. smoking or non smoking room (eg: N/S = Non Smoking Room) as this will appear above the room number when allocating rooms and next to the room number on Room Availability screen in Quick Vacancy.

7.2.9 Room On Maintenance

More details refer to [Room Maintenance](#)⁷⁹

7.2.10 Deleting a Room

The screenshot shows the 'Room Maintenance' window. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Save', 'Delete', and 'Exit'. The 'Delete' button is highlighted with a red rectangle. The window contains various fields for room details, including Room Number, Type, Wing, Room Grouping Cd, Attributes, Bed Config, Room Facilities, Room Description, KeyCard Room Num, Account Code, Reservation #, Next Guest Res #, Guest Name, Next Guest Name, and a table for Maintenance Description with Start date, End date, and Apply To Rm Gp checkboxes.

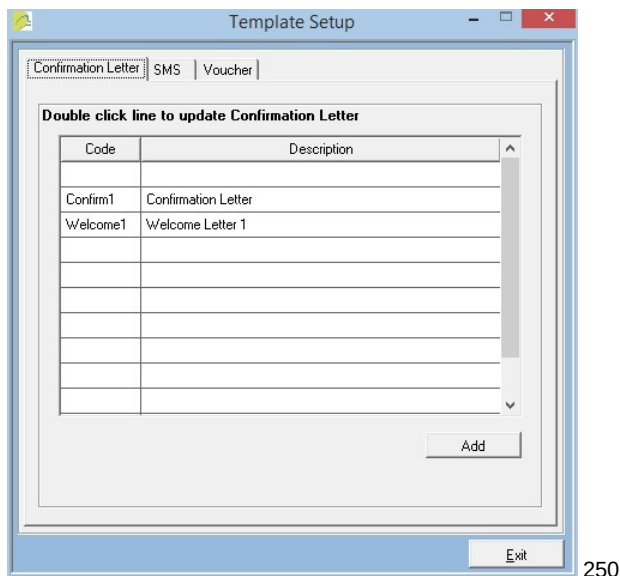
249

To delete a room simply double click on the room you wish to delete and select the Delete button. You will then have to confirm that you wish to delete this room. **Rooms with future bookings can not be deleted. These bookings will need to be transferred to another room first.**

7.3 Conf Letter/SMS/Voucher

7.3.1 Confirmation Letter

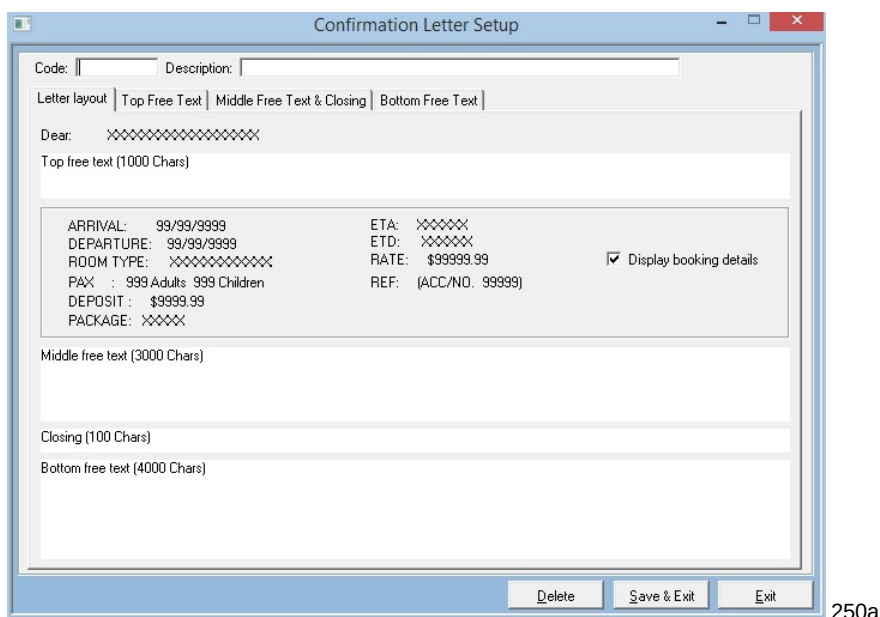
Customize your own Confirmation or Welcome letters. To edit an existing Confirmation letter, double click on the line to open the letter. Edit/Change details or Delete if required, Save & Exit. Refer to Set Up -> System Configuration -> [Conf Letter](#) ²⁰⁵ for configuration details.



250

Select **Add** to create a new Welcome or Confirmation Letter, enter a code to use for the letter ie: Confirm1 and Description. Confirmation letter layout allows for free text to be entered in three areas, **Top Free Text**, **Middle Free Text & Closing** and **Bottom Free Text**. Click on each of these headings to enter your required text in these fields.

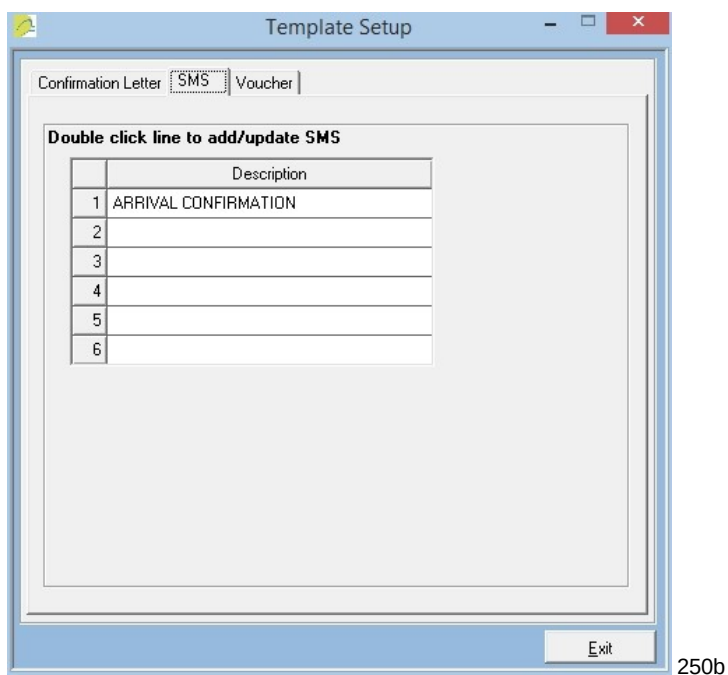
Tick **Display booking details** will show these details on the letter, then Save & Exit.



250a

7.3.2 SMS

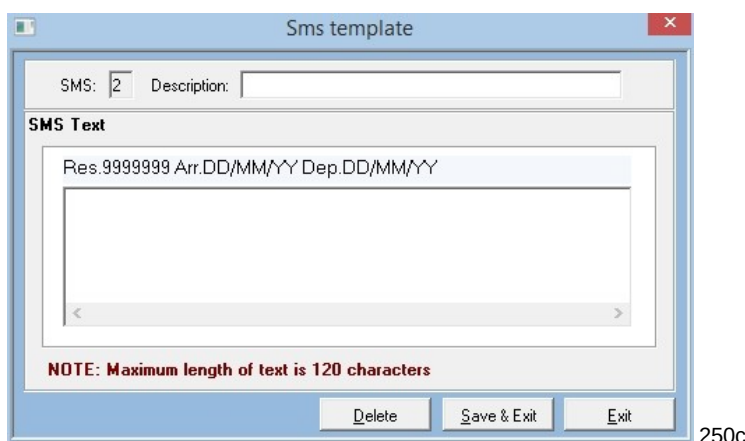
Double click on a blank line to create or edit an SMS message template.



250b

Enter a description for the SMS you wish to send. Do not type past the end of the screen, use the <enter> key to return to the start of the next line.

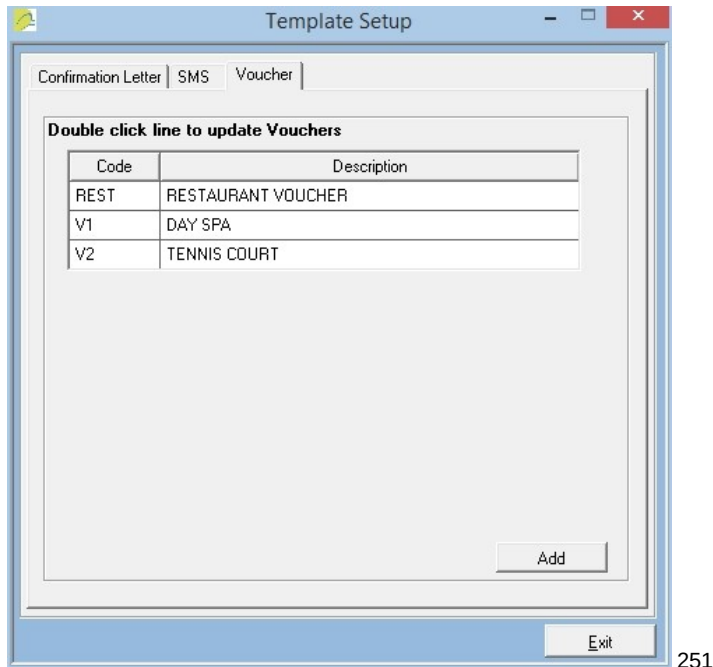
Please contact Starfleet to set up your account before using this option.



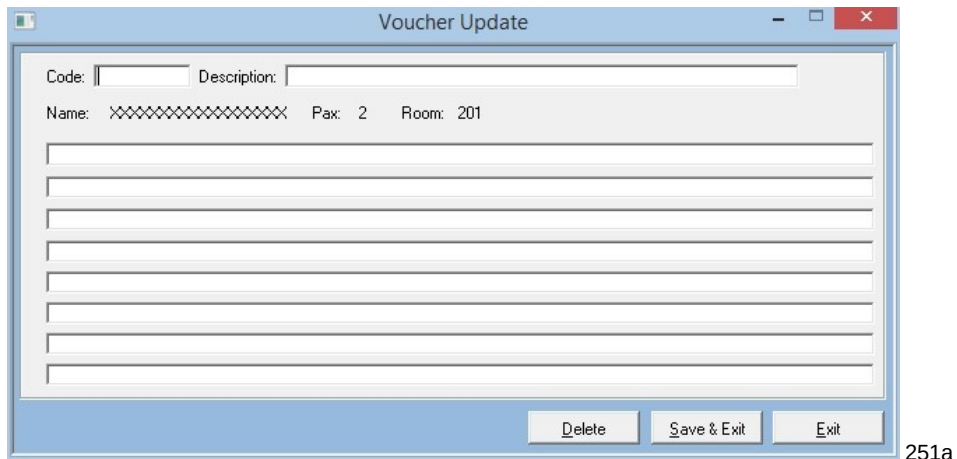
250c

7.3.3 Voucher

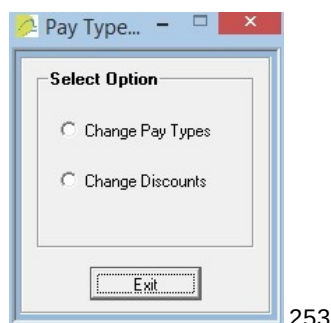
The Vouchers tab gives us the option of creating different Vouchers to be issued to Guest's much in the same way as the Confirmation Letter. The option to prompt for voucher print on Check In is available and existing vouchers can be edited or deleted by double clicking on the description line. Refer to [Printer Set Up](#)¹⁸ to set specific printer for vouchers.



Click Add to create new voucher. Enter Code and description. When entering text do not type past the end of the line, use the mouse cursor to start on a new line. Save & Exit.



7.4 Pay Types/Discounts



253

This menu is accessed by selecting the Pay Types / Discounts button. Payment types used in the Front Office System are setup using this program.

There are two options to select from. Select one of the following for more information:

- [Change Pay Type](#)¹⁹⁵
- [Change Discount](#)¹⁹⁷

7.4.1 Change Pay Types

Change Pay Types will display the following screen.

Pay Type	Description	System Type	Surcharge Amount	Surcharge as a %	Surcharge TransType	Debtor Account	GL Code	Front Office	POS	Tour
A	AMEX		2.00	☒	SUR		1-1170	☒	☒	☒
C	CASH	C	0.00	☒	MIS		1-1150	☒	☒	☒
D	DINERS		2.00	☒	SUR		1-1170	☒	☒	☒
E	EFTPOS	E	0.00	☒	MIS		1-1185	☒	☒	☒
I	DIRECT CREDIT ...		0.00	☒	MIS		1-1175	☒	☒	☒
Q	CHEQUE	Q	0.00	☒	MIS		1-1160	☒	☒	☒
V	VISA/MC		0.00	☒	MIS		1-1160	☒	☒	☒

General Ledger Code

Bank Account	1-1220	Debtor discount applied	6-1600
GL Contra Account	1-1180	Debtor commission applied	6-4215

Buttons: Print, Add, Exit

254

Select Add to create a new pay type. To setup a Surcharge refer to [Credit Card Surcharge](#)¹⁹⁶. G/L (General Ledger Code) must be entered if using Accounting link, refer to separate documentation if using this module.

255

To edit an existing pay type double click on the pay type, the following screen will display. Edit or add the information, Save and Exit.

256

To delete select the Delete button. It is recommended not to delete any Pay Type that has previously been used. By unticking Use in Front Office, Use in POS and Use in Tour, this will disable the Pay Type. The Pay Type then can not be accessed but the past history is kept intact. A Pay Type that has not been used can be deleted if not required.

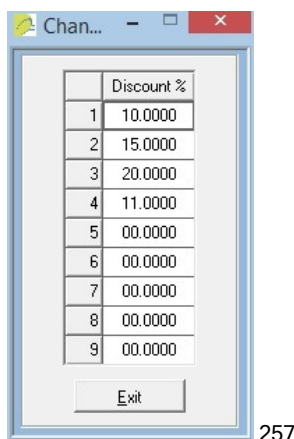
7.4.2 Credit Card Surcharge

You may wish to have a Credit Card Surcharge applied to some credit card types. Add a new Transaction Type and this can be named SUR - C/C SURCHARGE, select DR (debit) and apply GST. Now in SETUP go to Pay Types/Discounts -> Change Pay Type. Double click on the Credit Card to apply the Surcharge to. Enter in the Surcharge percentage and select the SUR transaction.

256a

7.4.3 Discounts

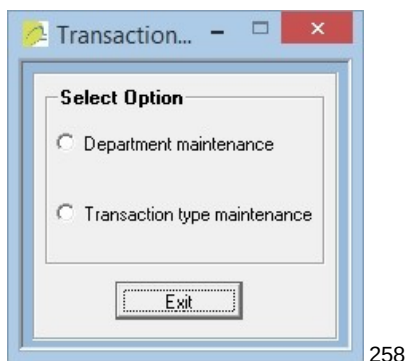
If you wish to set Discount amounts select Change Discount Types and, the next screen will appear. These discount codes (1 – 9) are used to calculate percentage discounts in programs such as Reservations. These Discount amounts need to be entered if a Commission amount is to be applied to a Debtor as this also used for the Commission amount.



257

7.5 Transaction Types

This menu is accessed by selecting Transaction Types in the Set up menu. This program is used to configure transaction departments and transaction types for use in the Front Office system. Each transaction type must have a valid department code therefore we need to configure the transaction departments first. To do this select Department Maintenance.



258

- [Department Maintenance](#) ¹⁹⁸
- [Transaction Types Maintenance](#) ¹⁹⁹

7.5.1 Department Maintenance

Code	Description	Print Seq.
1	ACCOMODATION	1
2	TOURS	2
3	RESTAURANT/BAR	3
4	MISCELLANEOUS	4
5	CONFERENCE	5
6	SHOP	6

To edit a department code double click on the department code or to add a new department, click on the add button.

Print Add Exit

259

These transaction departments (1 – 18) are used in the revenue reports such as Transaction List, Weekly Summary etc, to group transaction types into departments thus giving both individual transaction revenue and their department revenue.

To change a department type simply double click on the line you wish to change or to add a new department select the Add button. The following screen below will appear.

Department Code:

Description:

Print Sequence:

Save Delete Exit

260

The print sequence determines in which order the departments appear in the report and can be changed anytime you like without having to re-shuffle the department numbers. You may only have one Department allocated to any Department and Print Sequence number. When you have finished select the Save button.

To delete a Department Code select the Department by double clicking it and the press the delete button.

To edit a department code, double click on the department code . The following screen will appear.

Department Code:

Description:

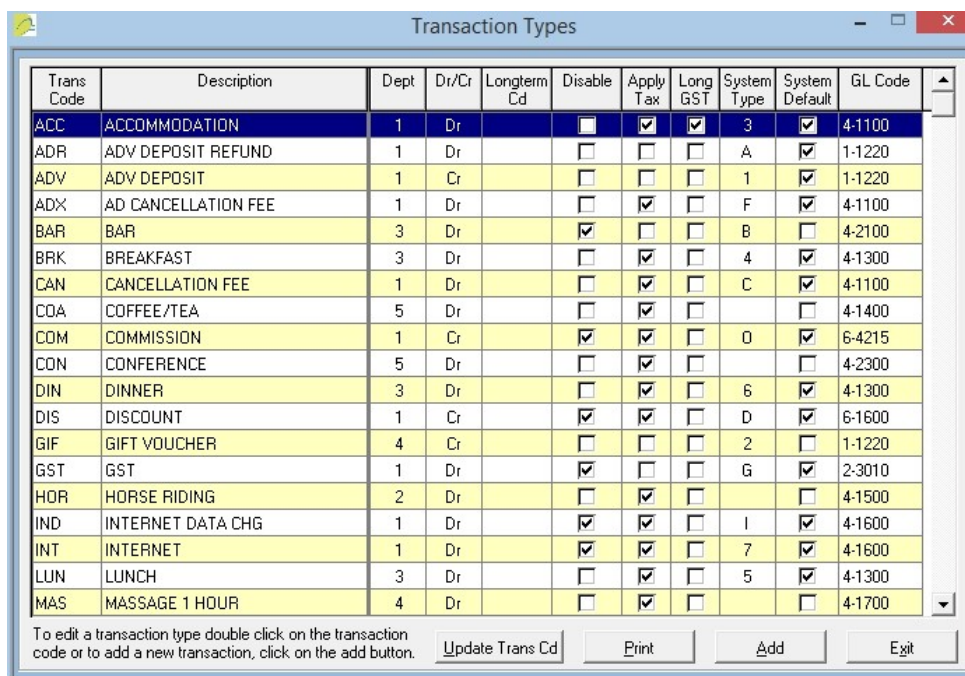
Print Sequence:

Save Delete Exit

261

7.5.2 Transaction Types Maintenance

All transaction types used in the Front Office system must be setup here, eg item such as: Accommodation, Laundry, Phones, Breakfast Food, Dinner Liquor, Payment etc. Each transaction code can have up to three alphanumeric characters and you can setup as many transaction codes as you like using a 3 character combination.



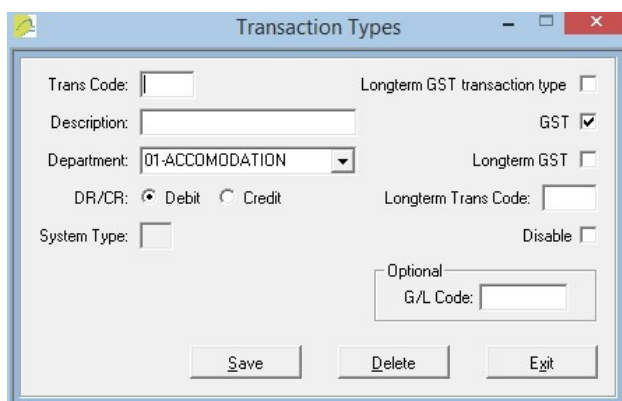
Trans Code	Description	Dept	Dr/Cr	Longterm Cd	Disable	Apply Tax	Long GST	System Type	System Default	GL Code
ACC	ACCOMMODATION	1	Dr		☐	☒	☒	3	☒	4-1100
ADR	ADV DEPOSIT REFUND	1	Dr		☐	☐	☐	A	☒	1-1220
ADV	ADV DEPOSIT	1	Cr		☐	☐	☐	1	☒	1-1220
ADX	AD CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	F	☒	4-1100
BAR	BAR	3	Dr		☒	☐	☐	B	☐	4-2100
BRK	BREAKFAST	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	4	☒	4-1300
CAN	CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	C	☒	4-1100
COA	COFFEE/TEA	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1400
COM	COMMISSION	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	0	☒	6-4215
CON	CONFERENCE	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-2300
DIN	DINNER	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	6	☒	4-1300
DIS	DISCOUNT	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	D	☒	6-1600
GIF	GIFT VOUCHER	4	Cr		☐	☐	☐	2	☐	1-1220
GST	GST	1	Dr		☒	☐	☐	G	☒	2-3010
HOR	HORSE RIDING	2	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1500
IND	INTERNET DATA CHG	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	I	☒	4-1600
INT	INTERNET	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	7	☒	4-1600
LUN	LUNCH	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	5	☒	4-1300
MAS	MASSAGE 1 HOUR	4	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1700

To edit a transaction type double click on the transaction code or to add a new transaction, click on the add button.

Update Trans Cd Print Add Exit

262

To add a new Transaction Type select the Add button.



Trans Code: Longterm GST transaction type ☐

Description: GST ☒

Department: 01-ACCOMMODATION Longterm GST ☐

DR/CR: ☒ Debit ☐ Credit Longterm Trans Code:

System Type: ☐ Disable ☐

Optional G/L Code:

Save Delete Exit

263

The following entries will now need to be entered.

Trans code

Enter the code for this new transaction type. (maximum 3 alphanumeric characters)
If the code already exist the system will reject it and ask you to re-enter another code.

Description

Enter the description for this transaction type. (maximum 20 alphanumeric characters)

Department

Enter a valid department for this transaction type. Refer to [Department Maintenance](#)¹⁹⁸ if a department is not setup.

Debit/Credit

Select 'DR' for debit transactions such as Accommodation, Minibar, and Facsimile etc.
Select 'CR' for credit transactions such as Payment, Advance Deposit etc.

Disable

Select tick box to disable this transaction.

GST

Select tick box to apply GST to this transaction.

Long Term G.S.T

Select tick box to apply GST to apply Long term G.S.T (applies to Accommodation 28 days and over).
Refer to [Tax/Currency](#) ²¹⁵ to setup Long Term GST amount.

General ledger code

If you are using the Accounting Link Module, you must enter your General Ledger code.

General ledger contra code

Please add the contra General Ledger Code for the transaction. i.e.: the opposite code for the General Ledger Code. Please refer to separate documentation if using Accounting link module.

The system comes with the following pre-defines transaction types:

System type	Trans code	Description
3	ACC	Accommodation
A	ADR	Adv Deposit Refund
1	ADV	Advance Deposit
F	ADX	Advance Cancellation fee
4	BRK	Breakfast
C	CAN	Cancellation fee
6	DIN	Dinner
D	DIS	Discount
G	GST	GST
7	INT	Internet
5	LUN	Lunch
M	MIS	Miscellaneous
P	PAK	Package
0	PAO	Paid Out
2	PAY	Payment
B	RBC	Restaurant/Bar
R	RBT	Bed Tax
H	RMH	Room hire
9	ROU	Rounding
E	TCG	Tour charge
L	TEL	Telephone
8	TIP	Tips
T	TRA	Transfer transaction
V	VID	Void entry
X	XFR	Xfer to debtor
Z	Z	Owner expenses

You can change the code and description of these transactions but you must not interchange them or use it for other transaction types. These codes can not be deleted. If not required for use then disable the code.

7.5.3 Editing Transaction Types

On the menu bar select Set Up -> Transaction Types -> Transaction type maintenance.

Transaction Types

Trans Code	Description	Dept	Dr/Cr	Longterm Cd	Disable	Apply Tax	Long GST	System Type	System Default	GL Code
ACC	ACCOMMODATION	1	Dr		☐	☒	☒	3	☒	4-1100
ADR	ADV DEPOSIT REFUND	1	Dr		☐	☐	☐	A	☒	1-1220
ADV	ADV DEPOSIT	1	Cr		☐	☐	☐	1	☒	1-1220
ADX	AD CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	F	☒	4-1100
BAR	BAR	3	Dr		☒	☐	☐	B	☐	4-2100
BRK	BREAKFAST	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	4	☒	4-1300
CAN	CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	C	☒	4-1100
COA	COFFEE/TEA	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1400
COM	COMMISSION	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	0	☒	6-4215
CON	CONFERENCE	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-2300
DIN	DINNER	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	6	☒	4-1300
DIS	DISCOUNT	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	D	☒	6-1600
GIF	GIFT VOUCHER	4	Cr		☐	☐	☐	2	☐	1-1220
GST	GST	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	G	☒	2-3010
HOR	HORSE RIDING	2	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1500
IND	INTERNET DATA CHG	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	I	☒	4-1600
INT	INTERNET	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	7	☒	4-1600
LUN	LUNCH	3	Dr		☐	☐	☐	5	☒	4-1300
MAS	MASSAGE 1 HOUR	4	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1700

To edit a transaction type double click on the transaction code or to add a new transaction, click on the add button.

Update Trans Cd

Print

Add

Exit

265

To edit an existing Transaction Type double click on the Transaction Code you wish to edit and the following screen below will be displayed. Edit the transaction code then click the save button to save changes.

Refer to [Transaction Types Maintenance](#)¹⁹⁹, for descriptions of the fields and prompts displayed if required

Transaction Types

Trans Code: ACC

Longterm GST transaction type ☐

Description: ACCOMMODATION

GST ☒

Department: 01-ACCOMMODATION

Longterm GST ☒

DR/CR: ☒ Debit ☐ Credit

Longterm Trans Code:

System Type: 3 Accommodation

Disable ☐

Optional
G/L Code: 4-1100

Duplicate

Save

Delete

Exit

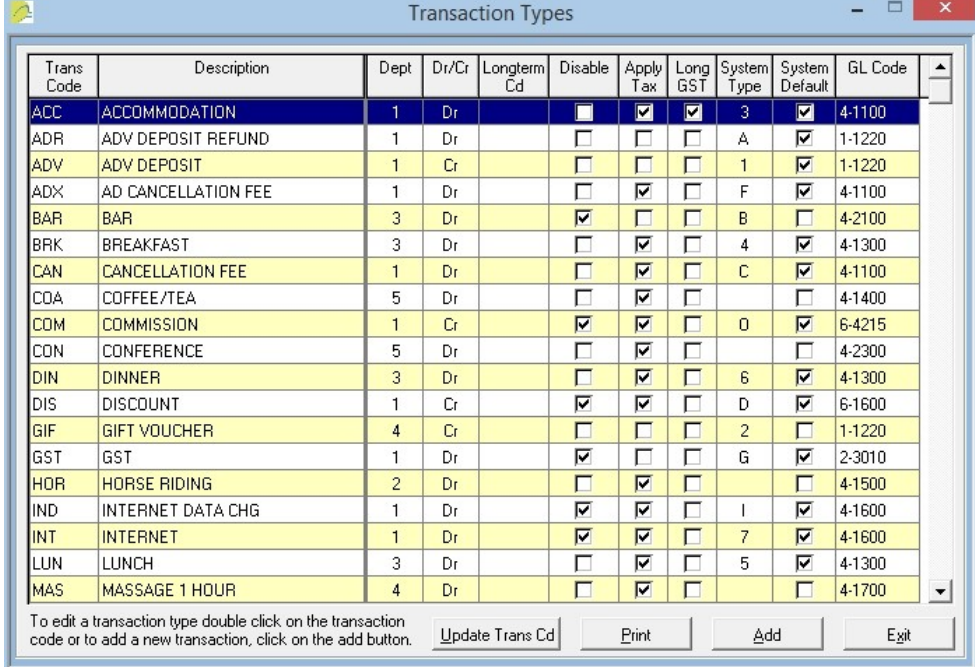
266

7.5.4 Deleting Transaction Types

Deleting Transaction Types is password protected. Please contact Starfleet.

7.5.5 Long Term Accommodation Transaction type

Click on Setup menu, then click transaction type, select transaction type maintenance, the following screen will be displayed.



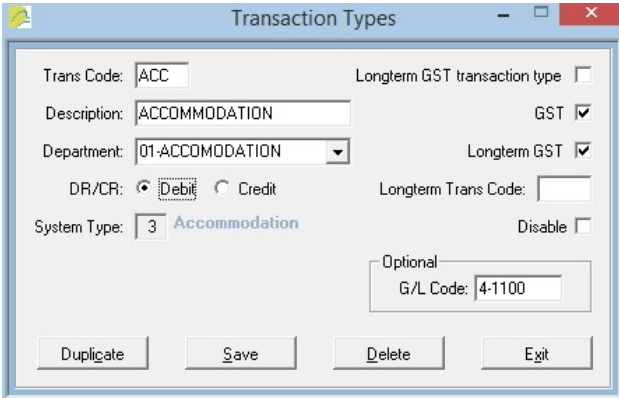
Trans Code	Description	Dept	Dr/Cr	Longterm Cd	Disable	Apply Tax	Long GST	System Type	System Default	GL Code
ACC	ACCOMMODATION	1	Dr		☐	☒	☒	3	☒	4-1100
ADR	ADV DEPOSIT REFUND	1	Dr		☐	☐	☐	A	☒	1-1220
ADV	ADV DEPOSIT	1	Cr		☐	☐	☐	1	☒	1-1220
ADX	AD CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	F	☒	4-1100
BAR	BAR	3	Dr		☒	☐	☐	B	☐	4-2100
BRK	BREAKFAST	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	4	☒	4-1300
CAN	CANCELLATION FEE	1	Dr		☐	☒	☐	C	☒	4-1100
COA	COFFEE/TEA	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1400
COM	COMMISSION	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	0	☒	6-4215
CON	CONFERENCE	5	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-2300
DIN	DINNER	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	6	☒	4-1300
DIS	DISCOUNT	1	Cr		☒	☒	☐	D	☒	6-1600
GIF	GIFT VOUCHER	4	Cr		☐	☐	☐	2	☐	1-1220
GST	GST	1	Dr		☒	☐	☐	G	☒	2-3010
HOR	HORSE RIDING	2	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1500
IND	INTERNET DATA CHG	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	I	☒	4-1600
INT	INTERNET	1	Dr		☒	☒	☐	7	☒	4-1600
LUN	LUNCH	3	Dr		☐	☒	☐	5	☒	4-1300
MAS	MASSAGE 1 HOUR	4	Dr		☐	☒	☐		☐	4-1700

To edit a transaction type double click on the transaction code or to add a new transaction, click on the add button.

Update Trans Cd Print Add Exit

269

To add a long term accommodation transaction type, first double click on the ACC transaction type as if you were going to update it. Then click on the Duplicate button. Enter any code you wish for the new code, then make sure that the long term GST option is selected. Then click on the Save button to save the new transaction you have just created. Now, double click on the ACC code again. In the Long term Trans Code field put the code of the transaction you have just created. Now after 28 days, the guest will be charged reduced GST(as required by Law) using the long term accommodation transaction type.



Trans Code: ACC Longterm GST transaction type ☐

Description: ACCOMMODATION GST ☒

Department: 01-ACCOMMODATION Longterm GST ☒

DR/CR: ☒ Debit ☐ Credit Longterm Trans Code:

System Type: 3 Accommodation Disable ☐

Optional G/L Code: 4-1100

Duplicate Save Delete Exit

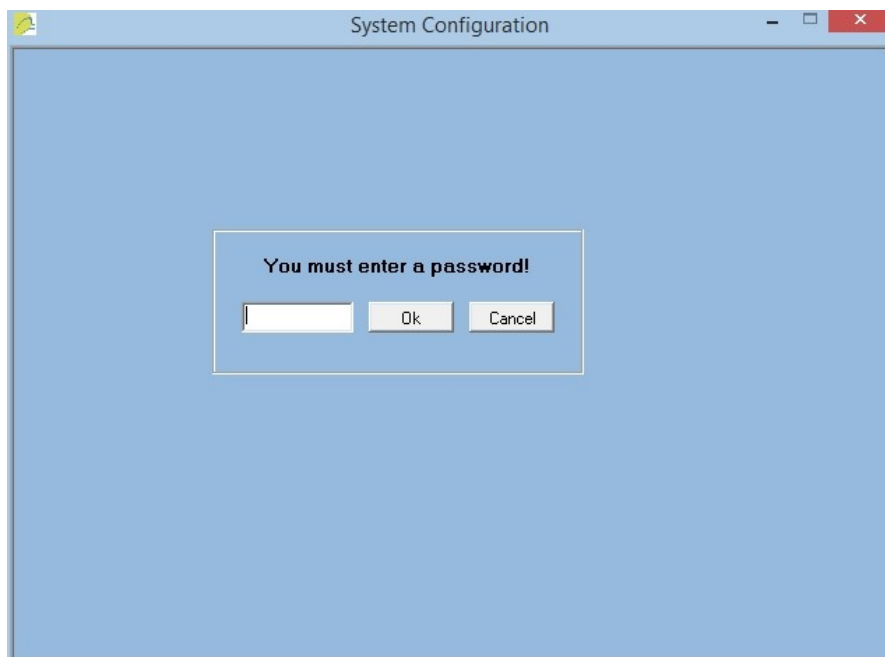
270

7.6 System Configuration

This menu accessed by clicking on **System Configuration** in the **Setup** menu.

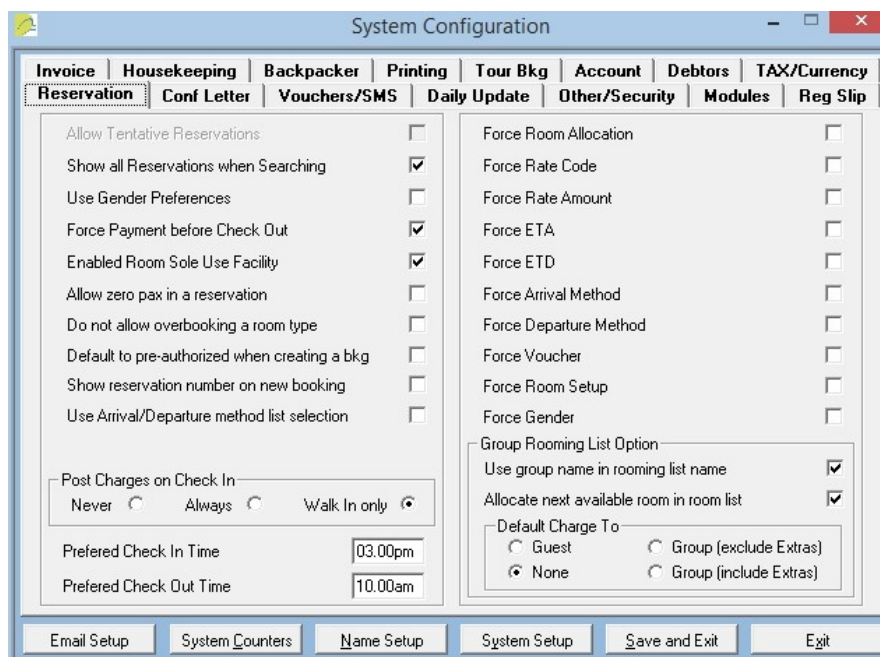
This sub menu allows you to set certain parameters in the system, and to enable or disable certain functions.

You will require a password to access this option, please contact your administrator for this.



271

Once you have entered a valid password, the following screen will appear.



272

7.6.1 Reservation

273

- Allow Tentative Reservations is now selected through the Guest reservation as Unconfirmed Booking, so this is no longer available.
- Show all Reservations when Searching (default and is always on).
- Use Gender Preferences - Used for backpackers for Male and Female dorms.
- Force Payment before Check Out (Cannot check guest out unless balance is zero).
- Enabled room sole use facility - Used for Backpackers where one person / group wants sole use of a dorm.
- Allow zero pax in a reservation or not.
- Do not allow over booking a room type when making a new booking.
- Default to pre-authorized when creating a booking (allows charges from a POS to room accounts).
- Display arriving guests button in Book Room.
- Show reservation number on new booking.
- Use Arrival/Departure method list selection - allows a pre-entered list of arrival / departure methods.
- Allow you to auto post accommodation charges on check in - options are Never, Always or Walk in/Day use.
- Enter the Preferred Check In Time that will appear on your Confirmation Letter (HH:MM AM or PM).
- Enter the Preferred Check Out Time that will appear on your Confirmation Letter (HH:MM AM or PM).
- Force room allocation - that is a room number must be entered at reservation time.
- Force rate code.
- Force rate amount.
- Force ETA.
- Force ETD.
- Force Arrival method.
- Force Departure method.
- Force Voucher.
- Force Room Setup.
- Force Gender.
- Use the group name in the rooming list.
- Allocate the next available room in the rooming list.
- Default Charge To: select the default for charges on a Group booking. This example None is selected.

7.6.2 Conf Letter

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' window with the 'Conf Letter' tab selected. The window has a menu bar with options: Housekeeping, Backpacker, Printing, Tour Bkg, Account, Debtors, TAX/Currency, Reservation, Conf Letter, Voucher, Daily Update, Other/Security, Modules, Reg Slip, and Invoice. The 'Conf Letter' tab is active, showing 'Options For Conf Letter' on the left and 'Default Confirmation Slip Comment for (B)' on the right. The 'Options For Conf Letter' section includes a 'Type of Confirmation Letter' with four radio buttons: 'Standard A4' (selected), 'Details with Remittance Print (B)', 'Booking Confirmation', and 'Booking Slip with Registration'. Below these are three checkboxes: 'Using Blank Paper' (checked), 'Prompt on New Reservation' (unchecked), and 'Left Justified Property Header' (unchecked). The 'Default Confirmation Slip Comment for (B)' section has two text input fields labeled 'LINE 1' and 'LINE 2'. At the bottom of the window are buttons for 'Email Setup', 'System Counters', 'Name Setup', 'System Setup', 'Save and Exit', and 'Exit'.

286

Options for Confirmation Letter

- Type of Confirmation Letter to be used. For most properties the Standard A4 option will be selected.
- Using Blank paper - only select if using blank paper. If using letterhead leave unticked.

Default Confirmation Slip Comment for (B) is only used when **Details with Remittance Print (B)** is selected.

Refer to **Set Up -> Conf Letter/Sms/Voucher -> [Confirmation Letter](#)**^[192] to set up and edit Confirmation Letter Templates.

7.6.3 Daily Update

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' window with the 'Daily Update' tab selected. The window has a menu bar with options: Invoice, Housekeeping, Backpacker, Printing, Tour Bkg, Account, Debtors, TAX/Currency, Reservation, Conf Letter, Vouchers/SMS, Daily Update, Other/Security, Modules, and Reg Slip. The 'Daily Update' tab is active, showing 'Daily Update Options' on the left and 'Newspaper Options' on the right. The 'Daily Update Options' section includes a list of nine checkboxes: 'Show Vacant Rooms on Update' (unchecked), 'Charge Reservation Once Only' (unchecked), 'Allow Daily, Weekly or Monthly Charging' (unchecked), 'Allow voiding of previous day transactions' (unchecked), 'Delete "No Shows" in Night Audit' (unchecked), 'Prompt For Credit Card Surcharge' (unchecked), 'Restricted Access To Transaction Reversal' (unchecked), 'Only allow auto disc / comm on debtor' (unchecked), and 'Apply Discount on Extras' (unchecked). Below these is a 'Day End' button. The 'Newspaper Options' section has a table with five rows: '1 THE AGE', '2 THE SUN', '3 WEEKLY TIMES', '4 FINANCIAL REVIEW', and '5'. Below the table is a 'Reconciliation Report Status' section with a 'Date of last report' field set to '12/10/2004'. At the bottom of the window are buttons for 'Email Setup', 'System Counters', 'Name Setup', 'System Setup', 'Save and Exit', and 'Exit'.

29

- Show all vacant rooms on the Daily Update.
- Charge Reservation Once Only (regardless of the length of time the guest is staying).
- Apply Discount on Extras (apply any discount % set for any guest account to be taken off any guest extras that apply).
- Allow Daily, Weekly or Monthly Charging.
- Allow voiding of previous day transactions. (NOT recommended as this will affect transaction and revenue history records).
- Delete "No Shows" in Night Audit.
- Prompt for Credit Card Surcharge.
- Restricted Access To Transaction Reversal. User must have admin level to enter reverse amounts.

Newspaper Options

If guests have an option to order a daily newspaper during their stay the newspaper selection offered can be entered here. By selecting the drop down "News" field on the Guest Information screen the newspaper can then be selected. Refer to [Housekeeping](#)^[80] report to print the Newspaper report.

High/Low Rate Days

You also have the option here to select your High or Low Rate Days to apply these to your rates. Just tick the days you wish to be either high or low rates.

NOTE: in rates setup [Add/Edit Rates](#)^[180] you have a normal rate and this HIGH/LOW rate so it cant be both it needs to be either a higher or a lower rate.

Day End (Night Audit Reports)

This program allows you to select reports to process when the Night Audit is run at the end of each day.

Click the Day End button to open the following window below.

Report Name	Selected
Daily Update	☒
Transaction List	☐
Transaction List (Reversals)	☐
Guest Accounts Balances	☐
Guest Acc Bal Inhouse	☐
Security Deposits	☐
Guest Arrivals	☐
Guest Departures	☐
Housekeeping	☐
Booking List	☐
Daily Occupancy	☐
Cancellations	☐
Phone Calls	☐
Daily Summary	☐
Guest Notes	☐
Notes for the day	☐
Daily Statistics	☐

Buttons: Save and Exit, Exit

291

Tick the box to print these reports automatically at end of day or untick to skip. Select Save & Exit to update your options. The Daily Update is only printed when selected here. All the remaining reports can be manually selected to print directly from the Front Office menu.

7.6.4 Other/Security

System Configuration

Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | Debtors | TAX/Currency
 Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | **Other/Security** | Modules | Reg Slip

Other Options

Track Statistics for Area ☒
 Track Statistics for Segments ☒
 Display namelist on new accounts ☒
 Is an Electronic Cash Drawer Fitted ☐
 Display booked by in daily info report ☐
 Apply PCI higher level security ☐
 Do not store credit card details ☐
 Change encryption key

Room Allocation with index ☐
 No. of rooms/screen 30
 Show Day Use in Availability Screen ☒
 Show Pax line in Availability Screen ☒
 Display First Name on Room Allocation Screen ☐
 Merge Name on Room Allocation Screen ☒
 Room Allocation Screen - Tool Tip on Click ☐

	Description	TT1	TT2	TT3	TT4	TT5	TT6
1	DEFAULT (cannot change)						
2	ACCOMMODATION	ACC					
3							
4							
5							

Recover System Counters?
 Recover

Setup System Accounts
 Sys Accounts

Clear

Email Setup | System Counters | Name Setup | System Setup | Save and Exit | Exit

287

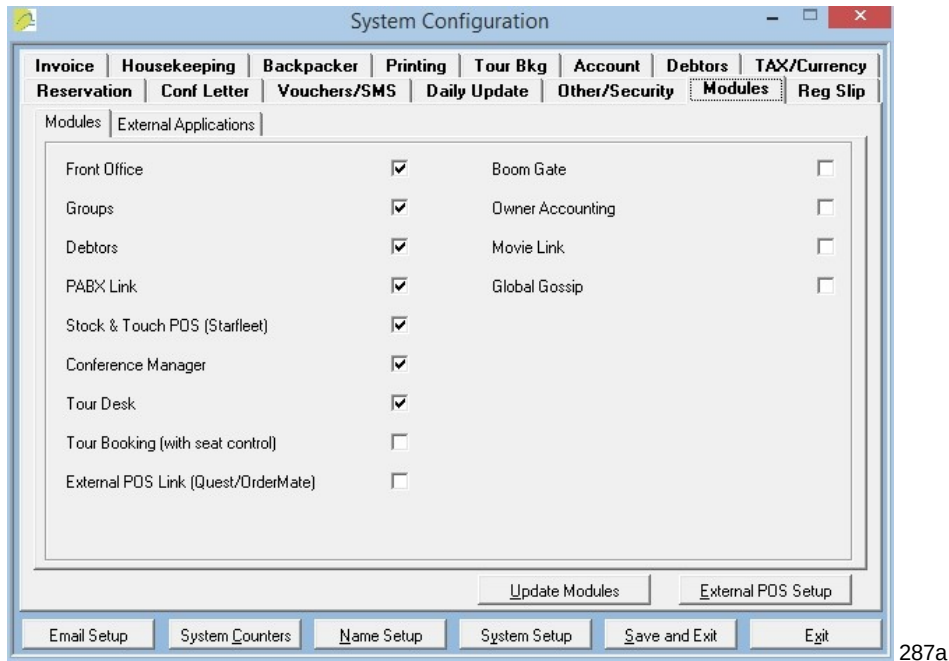
- Track Statistics for Area.
- Track Statistics for Segments.
- Display the name list when entering new accounts. This will display a drop down field with previous guest names to select from when entering in a new Guest Reservation. If the guest has stayed previously by selecting the correct name details these details do not need to be re entered.
- Is an Electronic Cash Drawer Fitted. (please select if there is one).
- Display booked by in daily info report. (displays the User ID of who made the booking).
- Apply PCI higher level security. Refer to [Change User Password](#)^[20] and [PCI DSS Compliance](#)^[20]
- Do not store credit card details. Refer to [Clear Credit Card Data](#)^[17]
- Room Allocation with index.
- No of rooms/screen. Room Allocation screen will fit approx 39 rooms, with properties with less than 39 rooms you can chose the amount of rooms you would like displayed.
- Show Day use in Availability screen.
- Show Pax line in Availability Screen. (displays many people are In House in the Availability screen).
- Display First Name on Room Allocation Screen.
- Merge Name on Room Allocation Screen. (shows as one continuous booking from arrival to departure)
- Room Allocation Screen - Tool Tip on click. (when selected will only show guest details when you click instead of hovering over them).

Recover System Counters - DO NOT USE - contact Starfleet Software.

Set up System Accounts

- Set up System account numbers for Cash Account, Tour Desk, Owners Account (Owners Accounting module), House Account & Staff Account.

7.6.5 Modules



287a

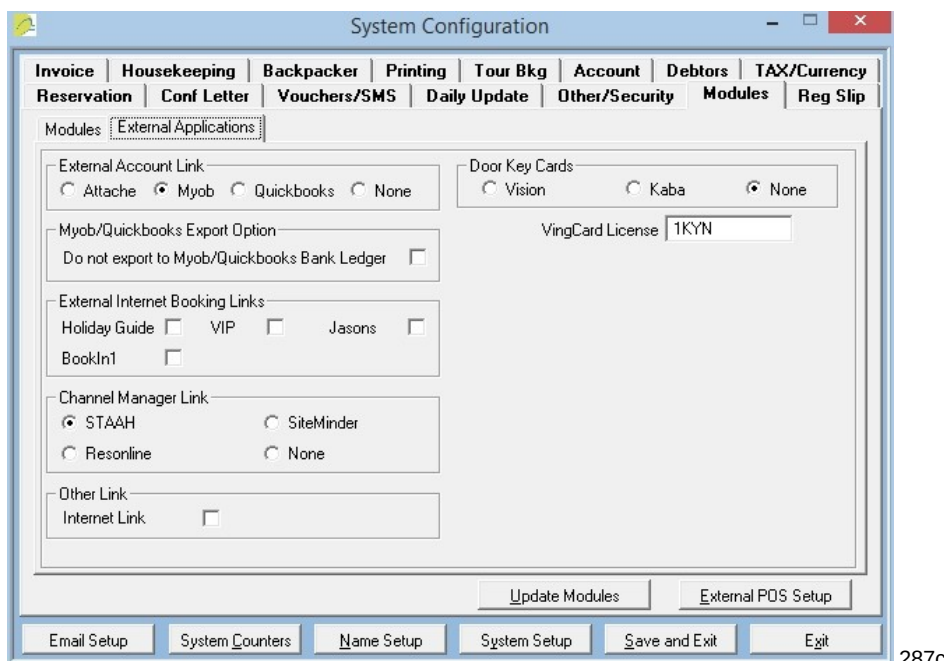
The **Modules** tab will show the active program modules. These can only be activated by Starfleet Software.

Update Modules: these are Starfleet Software Modules, to activate this is password accessed by Starfleet Software.

External POS Set up: refer to Starfleet for information. Separate documentation is available.

External Applications

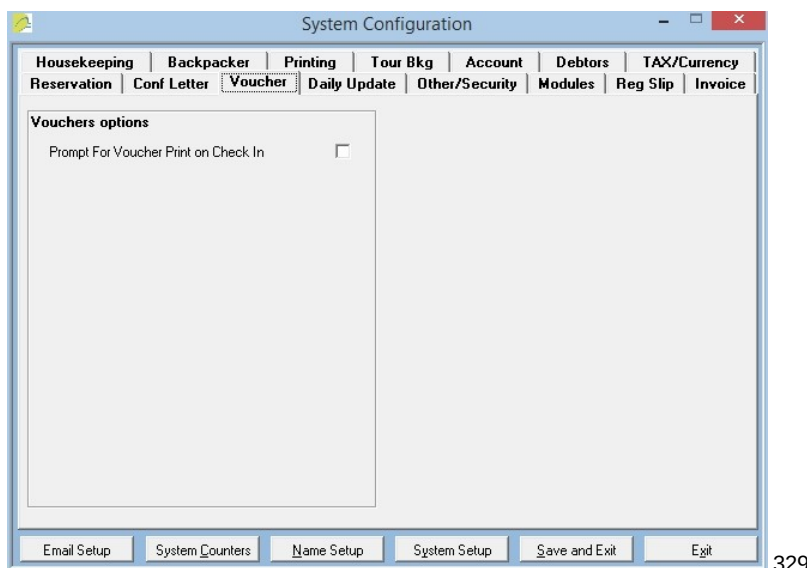
There are a number of links to external programs such as MYOB and Quickbooks (Accounting link), Internet bookings, Internet and Door Key Cards. These external applications are password accessed and activated by Starfleet Software.



287c

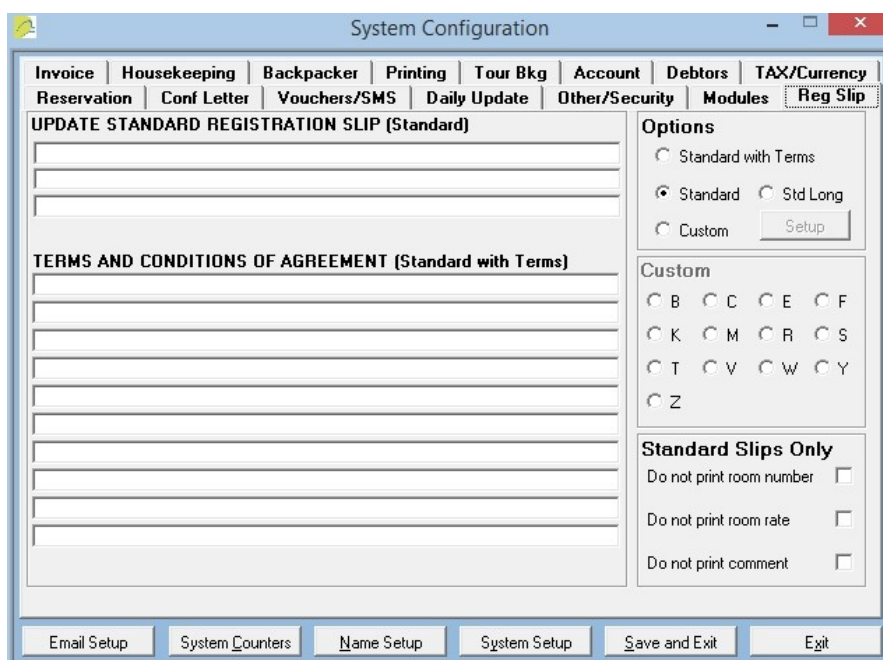
7.6.6 Vouchers

If a Voucher is required on arrival tick the option to **Prompt for Voucher Print on Check In**. Refer to [Voucher](#)¹⁹⁴ to create Voucher templates. Refer to [Printer Set Up](#)¹⁸ for Voucher printer selection.



329

7.6.7 Reg Slip



275

There are three options for registration slips.

- **Standard with Terms** - You are able to add text to this registration slip using the text boxes provided. You can enter any text specific to your property.
- **Standard** - Will print preformatted registration slip. (most commonly used).
- **Custom** - This enables the user to customize the registration slip. If this option is required please contact Starfleet Software for costing.
- **Std Long** - This will give three areas to add text. If one of the fields is not used then this will not show as a blank area when the Registration Slip is printed.

Registration slip long template

Property Header

Guest details

Guest name: Phone:
 Address: Email:
 Email: Car req:
 Company:

Booking details

Arrival date: Room number: Num. of nights:
 Departure date: Res. number: Total charge:
 Voucher: Adults: Children:
 Comment:

Payment details

Method of payment: ☐ Cash ☐ Direct Bill (Accommodation)
☐ Eftpos ☐ Direct Bill (All charges)
☐ Credit Card ☐ Other

Credit card no. Expiry: .../...
 Name on card: Terms & Conditions

Signature/date details

NOTE: Do not exceed the free text area size - press <Enter> key to go to the new line

Save & Exit Exit

275a

7.6.8 Invoice

System Configuration

Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | Other/Security | Modules | Reg Slip
 Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | Debtors | TAX/Currency

Invoice Options

Type of Invoice
☒ Standard A4 ☐ Custom Type

Select one of the following Custom Types:-
☐ Type 'A' ☐ Type 'Flag' ☐ Type 'M' ☐ Type 'T'
☐ Type 'B' ☐ Type 'H' ☐ Type 'O' ☐ Type 'V'
☐ Type 'C' ☐ Type 'I' ☐ Type 'P' ☐ Type 'Z'
☐ Type 'E' ☐ Type 'K' ☐ Type 'R'

Comments for standard guest invoice
 (3 Lines, each 80 characters long)
 1.
 2.
 3.

Left Justified Property Header in Standard A4 ☒
 Allow Summary Invoices ☐
 Deduct Debtor Payment from Invoice Total ☒
 Enable Printer Selection (for Standard Invoice only) ☐

Change of Management Right Date:

Email Setup System Counters Name Setup System Setup Save and Exit Exit

276

Invoice Options:

- Select Standard A4 or Custom Type.
- If you require a customized type this option is password protected, please contact Starfleet.
- Left Justified Property Header in Standard A4 - print property header on top left of invoice.
- Allow Summary Invoices.
- Deduct Debtor Payment from Invoice Total (
- Enable Printer Selection (for Standard Invoice only) - allow to select which printer to use.

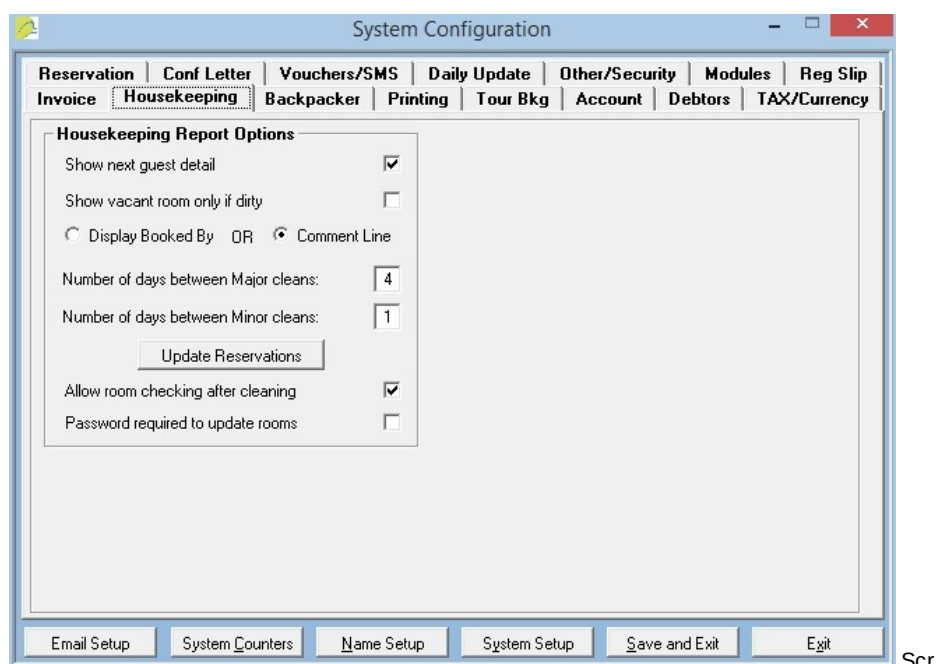
Comment line for standard guest invoice

Enter up to 3 lines of comments to display on the standard guest invoice

Change of Management Right Date:

When a Property has a change of Ownership the date the new owner takes over is entered.

7.6.9 Housekeeping



- Show the next guests details on the housekeeping report.
- Show vacant room only if dirty.
- Display Booked by or Comment line
- The number of days between a Major clean of a room.
- The number of days between a Minor clean of a room.

The update reservation button will update all reservations in the system still to arrive to the new housekeeping regime selected.

- Allow room checking after cleaning
- Password required to update rooms

7.6.10 Backpacker

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' window with the 'Backpacker' tab selected. The window is divided into several sections:

- Backpacker Options:**
 - Radio buttons: ☐ All Backpackers, ☐ Some, ☒ None
 - Fast check in and check out: ☐
 - Accommodation to be charged at night audit: ☐
 - Backpacker accommodation transaction:
 - Set time for late checkout warning1(hh:mm):
 - Set time for late checkout warning2(hh:mm):
 - Late check out slip comment:
 - Exclude this transaction from list of deposits to be refunded in check out: ☐
 - Use hardware date: ☐
- Check In charges:**

Tran Type	Description	Amount
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00
- Check Out charges:**

Tran Type	Description	Amount
		0.00
		0.00
		0.00

At the bottom of the window are buttons: Email Setup, System Counters, Name Setup, System Setup, Save and Exit, and Exit.

280

- Backpacker Options, this option will allow you to Charge set items such as Key Deposits on check in and receive monies.
- Fast check-in/check-out for Backpacker bookings.
- Accommodation to be charged at night audit instead of check in.
- Backpacker accommodation transaction allows you to select a different accommodation code to the default. This is useful for properties that have a mixture of rooms and backpackers.
- Set time for late check out warning to warn you when a guest hasn't yet departed. This will display in the Backpacker departure screen.

Check In Charges / Check Out Charges

In the right hand table select the transaction(s) that you require to charge on check in and check out.

7.6.11 Printing

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' window with the 'Printing' tab selected. The window contains the following options:

- Print Receipt on Payment: ☐
- Print Two Receipts: ☐
- Receipt Print Type: ☐ 40 Col, ☒ 80 Col, ☐ 80 Col R
- Print One Line Receipt: ☐
- Print Booking Slip: ☐
- Print A4 Booking Slip: ☐
- Use large logo on invoices/statements: ☐

At the bottom of the window are buttons: Email Setup, System Counters, Name Setup, System Setup, Save and Exit, and Exit.

278

- Automatically print a receipt on all payments received.
- Print two receipts automatically on all payments received.
- Specify which type of receipt you would like printed, a 40 Col wide or an 80 Col wide.
- Print a one line receipt.
- Do you require a booking slip printed.
- Do you require an A4 booking slip.
- Select if using the large logo on invoices and statements.

7.6.12 Tour Booking

System Configuration

Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | Other/Security | Modules | Reg Slip
 Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | Debtors | TAX/Currency

Disclaimer

Motto

Comment

Options

Force service date on open booking ☐

Tour booking requires invoice update ☐

Email Setup | System Counters | Name Setup | System Setup | Save and Exit | Exit

279

If using the Tour Desk booking module this setup enables you to input your own disclaimer, motto and comment to appear on your booking slips for the client.

You can also check against the following items to allow access.

- Force service date on open booking
- Tour booking requires invoice update

7.6.13 Account

System Configuration

Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | Other/Security | Modules | Reg Slip
 Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | Debtors | TAX/Currency

Surname: ☐ Title: ☐ First Name: ☐

Company: ☐ Card No: ☐

Address 1: ☐ Contact: ☐

Address 2: ☐ Phone(s): ☐ Fax: ☐

Suburb: ☐ Car: ☐

State: ☐ Postcode: ☐ E-mail: ☐

☒ Forced entry on guest/group account information

Email Setup | System Counters | Name Setup | System Setup | Save and Exit | Exit

281

This screen is the layout configuration setup in your system for guest and group details. The only option you have is to tick to allow or untick the box to disallow the forced entry of information on to guest/ group account information

7.6.14 Debtors

System Configuration

Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | Other/Security | Modules | Reg Slip
 Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | **Debtors** | TAX/Currency

Debtor

Debtor Types	
1	CORPORATE
2	TRAVEL AGENT
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	

Print debtor invoices ☐
 Click to enter 'Trading as' details

Transfer nett and comm amounts to debtors ☒
 Forced voucher number on transfer to debtors ☐
 Display a range when paying/reconciling entries ☐
 Send email statement without pop-up ☐

Debtor Statement Type
☒ Standard ☐ Custom

Select one of the Following Custom Types:
☐ Type 'B' ☐ Type 'C' ☐ Type 'Z'

Use the following as the reference number:
 Guest ☐ Account ☒ Reservation ☐ Voucher
 Note: Only the first 8 characters of voucher # will be used

Bank Details for Debtors Statement:
 Pay To:
 Bank:
 BSB No: Account:

Export debtor transactions to remote debtor ☐
 Remote Debtor Datapath:
 Debtor message on all print/email statements

Email Setup | System Counters | Name Setup | System Setup | Save and Exit | Exit

282

Debtor Types. This option allows you to enter different types of debtors (for example Corporate, Travel Agent etc).

Tick/untick against the following:

- Print Debtor Invoices (prints Debtor statements as tax invoices - specific application for some users only).
- Transfer nett and commission amounts to debtors. (when transferring to the debtor it transfers the gross amount which then shows nett and commission amounts individually).
- Forced Voucher Number on Transfer to debtors (requires a voucher / reference number)
- Display a range when paying / reconciling entries (no longer used).
- Send email statement without popup prompt.

Debtor Statement Type

Standard or Custom (Custom are specially modified just for the client requesting them). If using Custom select the Type, selection is password restricted by Starfleet Software.

Use the following as the reference number

Guest, Account, Reservation or Voucher. Reservation number is the default.

Bank Details for Debtor Statement

These details will display on debtor statements.

7.6.15 Tax/Currency

System Configuration

Reservation | Conf Letter | Vouchers/SMS | Daily Update | Other/Security | Modules | Reg Slip | Invoice | Housekeeping | Backpacker | Printing | Tour Bkg | Account | Debtors | **TAX/Currency**

TAX Options

Tax Type: ☒ GST ☐ VAT ☐ TAX

Enter TAX as %: 10.00 Enter Start Date: 01/07/2000

Previous TAX in %: 0.00

Long Term GST in %: 5.50

Number of Days when Long Term Applies: 28

Do All Prices include TAX: ☒

Predominantly Long Term: ☐

Unit Owner Remits the TAX: ☐

Last day of current Financial Year: 30/06/2005

Currency

Symbol: Short Name:

Name:

Currency Multiplier: 000001

Email Setup | System Counters | Name Setup | System Setup | Save and Exit | Exit

274

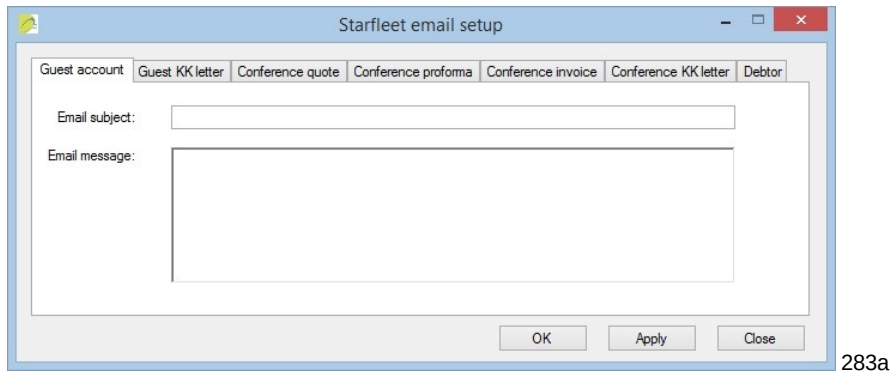
Tax Options

- Select the Tax Type.
- Enter the GST as a percentage figure.
- Enter the start date that the GST will apply from (DD/MM/YYYY).
- Enter any GST as a % value that was applicable prior to the above GST.
- Enter the Long Term GST as a % value.
- The number of days the long term residents have on the normal rate before it reverts to the Long Term GST.
- Number of Days when Long Accommodation Term Applies. (Australia is 28 days)
- Do all prices include TAX.
- Are your guest predominantly Long Term.
- Does the owner of the units remit the TAX (if applicable - only for Owner Accounting).
- Last day of current Financial Year allows you to set the date for your end of Financial year.

Currency

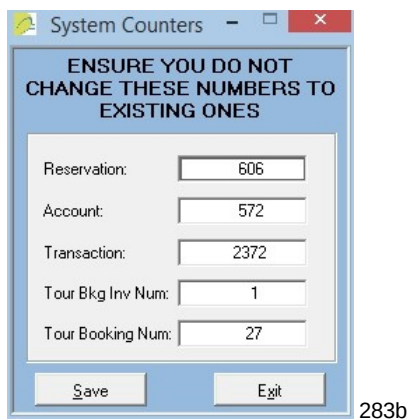
Enter the Symbol (i.e.\$ or R), Short Name (i.e. AUD, USD, Rp), full Name and conversion multiplier. Used only when the currency is of very low value (i.e. Rupiah where there is around 9000 to one dollar.)

7.6.16 Email Set Up



An email subject line and message can be setup for each email option. This will display on the email cover page when emailing the selected account, invoice, Confirmation Letter or Quote. If left blank a default generic message will be used. If there is a prompt this is not configured contact Starfleet Software.

7.6.17 System Counters



NOTE: DO NOT change these unless advised by Starfleet!

7.6.18 Name Set Up

To edit Name details contact Starfleet Software, Ph: +61 3 9428 4333. This option is password protected.



285a

7.6.19 System Set Up

284

The System Setup can only be accessed by Starfleet Software.

7.7 Marketing Codes

This program is used to add, change or delete Source, Area and Market Segment Codes which are used when creating reservations to assist in your properties market research. A record will be kept of the revenue generated, number of room nights and the number of people for each code, which can then be reproduced in the form of a report in the Reports -> [Marketing Statistics](#)¹³⁵.

To access this option in Setup select Marketing Codes.

292

To select one of the codes to change click the white circle nearest the word. Click on the links below to access the relevant information.

- [Source Code Maintenance](#) ²¹⁸
- [Area Code Maintenance](#) ²¹⁹
- [Segment Code Maintenance](#) ²¹⁹

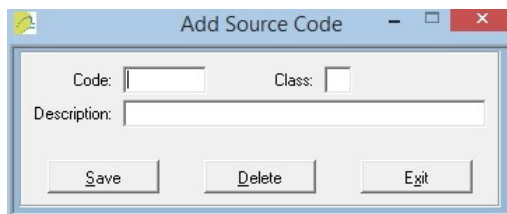
7.7.1 Source Code Maintenance



293

Double click on the Code that you wish to Edit. The window below is displayed.

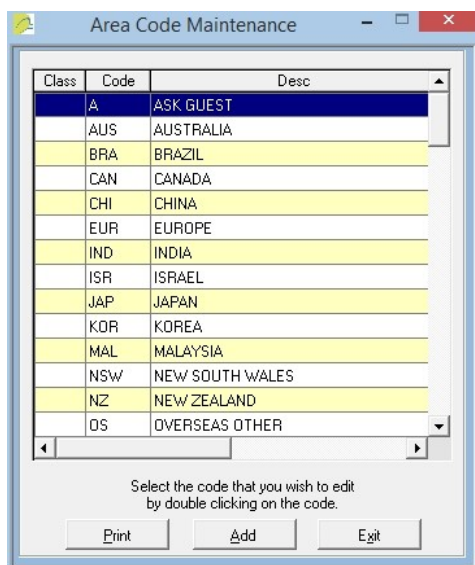
Edit the fields that need to be changed, select <enter> to move the cursor to the next field, then click on the Save button.



294

ADD a new code select the Add button. The window above will be displayed with the code, class and description empty. Enter the area code, class and a brief description, up to a maximum of 30 characters. Click on the save button.

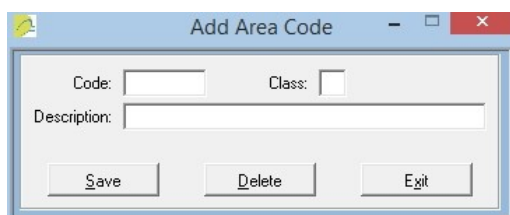
7.7.2 Area Code Maintenance



295

Double click on the Area Code that you wish to Edit. The window below is displayed.

Edit the fields that need to be changed, select <enter> to move the cursor to the next field, then click on the Save button.



296

ADD a new code select the Add button. The window above will be displayed with the code, class and description empty. Enter the area code, class and a brief description, up to a maximum of 30 characters. Click on the Save button.

7.7.3 Segment Code Maintenance



297

Double click on the Code that you want to Edit. The window below is displayed.
Edit the fields that need to be changed, select <enter> to move the cursor to the next field, then click on the save button.

298

ADD a new code simply press on the Add button. The window above will be displayed with the code, class and description empty. Enter the code, class and a brief description, up to a maximum of 30 characters. Click on the Save button.

7.8 User Maintenance

This menu allows you to set user passwords and option level codes. To access, select Setup, then User Maintenance. **Only the Administrator level can access this option.**

299

Enter your User ID and password, then <enter>, the window below will be displayed.

Name	Initials	Num	Level	Change	Date	Pg
Starfleet	SBS	15	99	03/02/2003	17/01/2014	xxx

300

Add User

Click on Add and a new window will appear like the one below.

303

Users name

Enter the user's name.

Locked

Refer to [Change User Password](#)^[20] for information on changing passwords and [PCI DSS Compliance](#)^[20]

User initials/I.D

Enter a unique User I.D.

User No.

The next available number will be generated, this can not be changed.

User level

Enter required User level, 1 - 99 (99 Administrator), 1 - 50 Restricted levels.

Enter the password

Enter a unique user password. Once entered this will not be displayed, will show as xxxxxx when accessing the User ID details.

POS Password

If the User only has access to POS then enter the password here. This would be used in the case of Bar or Restaurant staff who don't have access to or use the Front Office.

Modules

Tick the modules that user is able to access.

Once you are finished, click the save button and exit this program. The user may now log on to the system.

Generate password

The new password will be displayed in the following prompt.



303a

Double click on a User name to edit or delete. The following window will be displayed.

User Name: Starfleet ☐ Locked

User ID: SBS User No: 00015

Level: 99 (Valid values are 1 to 99. Use 99 for administrator)
(1 to 50 for restricted levels.)

Password: Generate password

POS Password:

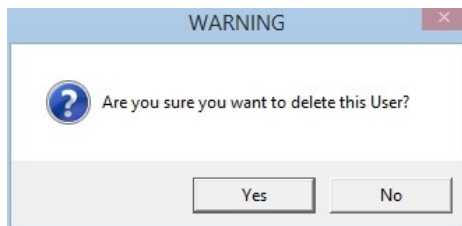
PLEASE SELECT WHICH PROGRAMS YOU REQUIRE ACCESS

FRONT OFFICE	☒	USER MAIL	☒
BACK OFFICE	☒	TOUR BOOKINGS	☒
REPORTS	☒	CONFERENCE MANAGER	☒
ACCOUNTS	☒	STOCK	☐
SETUP	☒	POS	☒
PABX LINK	☒	OWNER ACCOUNTING	☐
MNGR DRAW	☐	TAB DRAW	☐
Kaba Authorisation number: 000		Credit card details access	☐

Save Delete Exit

301

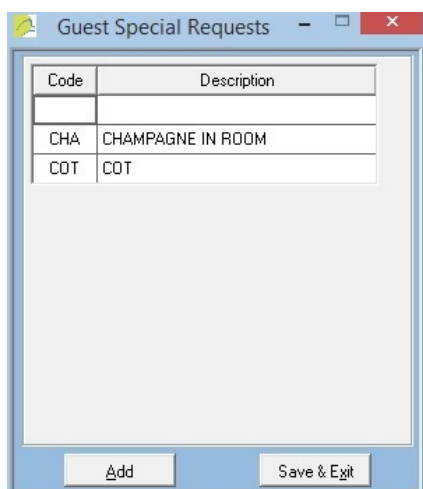
Any field can be edited/changed. Click on the Save button after the changes have been made. To delete a user click on the Delete button. A message below will be displayed.



302

Confirm Yes or No to exit and return to the User Maintenance screen.

7.9 Guest Special Request



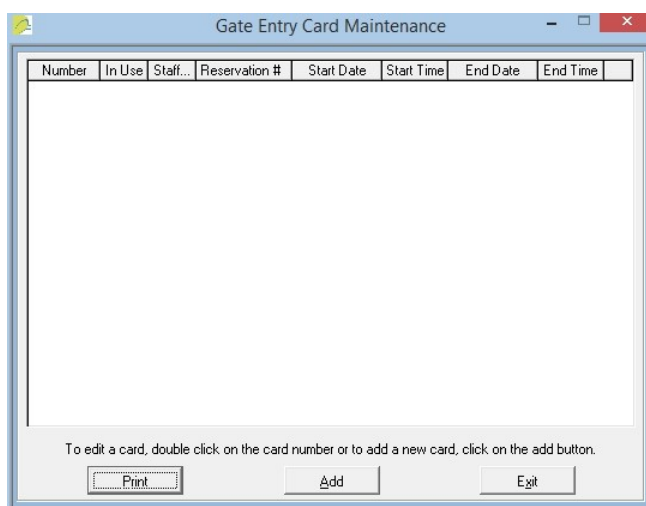
313

To Add items for Guest Special requests click on the Add button, enter the Code and Description. These are case sensitive, they must be in upper case. Save & Exit.

7.10 Card Locks

7.10.1 Gate Cards

To access this menu, select the Setup menu, then select Card Locks ,Gate Cards or Kaba Locks. The window following will be displayed.



314

Deleting a Card

Double click on the item you wish to delete or change. The window below will be displayed.

This will bring up a window similar to the one below. Then click on the delete button to remove that card, or just edit the information then click the save button.

315

Add a Card

Click on the add icon and the window below will be displayed.

316

Enter the details as requested such as:

- Card Number
- Tick whether the card is a staff card or a card in use or both
- If a guest card add the reservation number
- Insert the start date
- Insert the start time (in 2400 hr time)
- Insert the end date
- Insert the end time (in 2400 hr time)

Click on the save button to start card use or disuse.

7.10.2 Kaba Locks

To enter the Kaba Card setup click on Setup, Card Locks, then Kaba Locks. The screen below will be displayed.

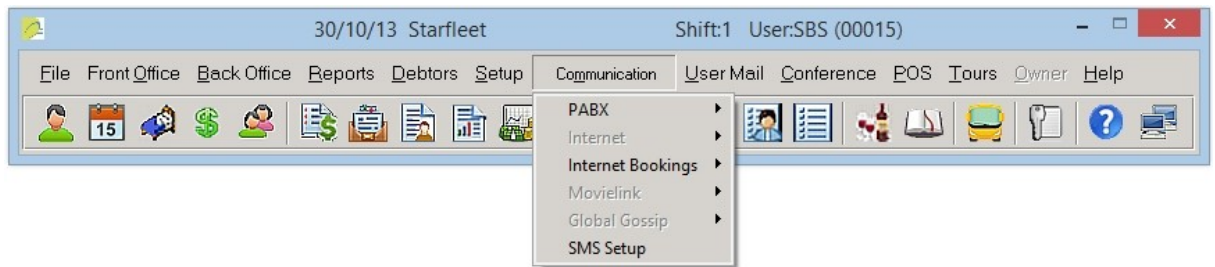
	Description	
1		☐
2		☐
3		☐
4		☐
5		☐
6		☐
7		☐
8		☐

Room #	Room ID
01	0
02	0
03	0
04	0
05	0
06	0
07	0
08	0
09	0
10	0
11	0
12	0
13	0
14	0

316a

A full manual on Kaba Setup and operation will be supplied when installing this link.

8 Communication



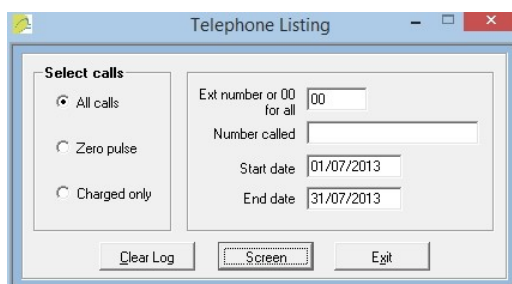
318

8.1 PABX

Allows you to configure your PABX settings, set call limits and print a phone report.

8.1.1 Phone Report

To print or display Phone Report, go to **Communication -> PABX -> Phone Report** menu.



319

If the PABX module is installed, all telephone calls made from telephone extensions will be recorded. Calls made from guest rooms will be charged automatically. This telephone report can be printed, listing telephone extension numbers, the telephone number dialled, the time the call was made, the duration of the call, the total cost of the call, the date the call was made and the call status. ie: ADMIN for Administration phone calls, CHG TO for calls charged to a guest account, VACANT for calls made from vacant rooms.

Select Calls

Select which calls appear on the report between All calls, Zero Pulse or Charged Only

Extension # 00 for All

Enter an extension number if you want a phone listing on a particular extension only, otherwise enter 00 to list all extensions.

Start Date (DDMMCCYY)

Enter the date you wish the phone listing to start with.

End Date (DDMMCCYY)

Enter the date you wish the phone listing to end with.
Following is an example of the phone report.

Telephone Listing

Date: 15/07/2013 To 31/07/2013

Ext #	Number Called	Time	Duration	Pulses	Amount	Date	Call Status
311	1300633423233	12:05	00:03:5	000000	0.80	30/07/2013	ADMIN
311	6931063	12:10	00:00:1	000000	0.00	17/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	69312063	12:11	00:00:3	000000	2.00	17/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0459249400	12:44	00:31:1	000000	46.50	20/07/2013	ADMIN
311	99486267	12:53	00:04:0	000000	3.20	18/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0293306806	13:01	00:00:5	000000	0.80	30/07/2013	ADMIN
311	1324613	13:09	00:04:2	000000	0.80	30/07/2013	ADMIN
311	132356313	13:15	00:03:3	000000	0.80	30/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0448211921	14:15	00:42:2	000000	64.50	19/07/2013	ADMIN
311	9976	14:58	00:00:1	000000	0.00	19/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	99763810	15:00	00:00:1	000000	0.00	19/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	0400993798	15:10	00:01:1	000000	1.50	31/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0413573534	15:17	00:03:0	000000	4.50	16/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0413573534	15:23	00:02:5	000000	4.50	16/07/2013	ADMIN
311	1800252719	16:05	00:00:4	000000	0.00	18/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	99486267	16:21	00:03:0	000000	2.40	19/07/2013	ADMIN
311	041634	16:24	00:00:0	000000	0.00	19/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	0416377365	16:24	00:09:4	000000	15.00	19/07/2013	ADMIN
311	60562791	16:52	00:00:1	000000	0.00	31/07/2013	NOT CHAR...
311	60562791	16:55	00:00:5	000000	0.80	31/07/2013	ADMIN
311	60563377	16:56	00:10:1	000000	0.80	31/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0418694019	17:10	00:01:3	000000	3.00	31/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0400341400	18:53	00:00:3	000000	1.50	17/07/2013	ADMIN
311	0400341400	19:01	00:01:1	000000	1.50	17/07/2013	ADMIN
311	69259190	19:48	00:02:4	000000	6.00	31/07/2013	ADMIN
311	69259190	19:58	00:00:5	000000	2.00	31/07/2013	ADMIN

Total Calls: 437 Total Amount: 2,585.40

Print Exit

320

If you wish to print this report, just click on the **Print** button once. To exit back to the menu, click the **Exit** button once.

Clear Log

It is advised that at the end of the month you do a print out of all logged calls for the month, and when doing the month end balancing, clear the first 3 weeks of the month. This way if any current guests are in house you will have the last weeks calls still on the computer. The rest you should file in a folder after you have printed.

8.1.2 Set Call Limit

The call limit function will allow you to set limits on any room in-house, this will not stop guests making a call. To access this menu click on **PABX** menu. Then select **Set Call Limit**. The screen below will appear.

Set Room Call Limit

Room #	Comment	Amt	Room #	Comment	Amt	Room #	Comment	Amt	Room #	Comment	Amt	Room #	Comment	Amt
01		0.00	21		0.00									
02		0.00	23		0.00									
03		20.00	24		0.00									
04		20.00	25		0.00									
05		0.00	26		0.00									
06		0.00	27		0.00									
07		0.00	28		0.00									
08		0.00	CON		0.00									
09		0.00	RES		0.00									
10		0.00												
11		0.00												
12		0.00												
13		0.00												
14		0.00												
15		0.00												
16		0.00												
17		0.00												
18		20.00												
19		0.00												
20		0.00												

To set a call limit on a room, double click on that room and enter the details.

Print Exit

321

To enter a call restriction, simply double click on the Room Number and enter the call amount limit and a reason. The following screen appears over the main screen. Once a limit has been entered the entry displays as above. Note: Limit will not be accepted without a reason. All limits on rooms will be disabled upon check out. If a guest exceeds this limit a warning will appear for you to action, as your policy advises.

8.1.3 PABX Setup

The PABX setup is accessed by clicking on the PABX setup menu.

Note: This program is only applicable when your PABX has been linked to the Front Office System. Contact Starfleet Software to order this link if required.

This program is used to setup PABX information such as call charges and room extensions. This program creates a log file which keeps track of numbers called, room numbers, duration of each call and other relevant information for each outgoing call. Guest accounts are updated automatically.

If room extension numbers differ from the room numbers setup in the Front Office System, a translation table can be created to ensure calls made from these extensions are charged to the correct rooms.

Calls which can not be charged to a room appear on a call activity report. (i.e. Print Calls in the Reports menu). If the setup is for TCP/IP please contact Starfleet Software to configure the setup.

8.1.3.1 Change PABX Type

When you select the PABX Setup button, the following screen will be displayed.

PABX Type

This is setup by Starfleet Software when the PABX module is installed. DO NOT CHANGE.

Call Alarm

Tick to activate call alarm. (Refer to "TIMEOUT" above). Default should be ticked.

Translation

If your PABX extension numbers differ from your room numbers, you must use a translation table. This is so each PABX extension can be charged to a room number.

Ticking this prompt will allow use of a translation table, which will match extension numbers to room numbers, otherwise, leave blank and calls from room extensions will be charged to the corresponding room number automatically. Refer to [PABX Translation Table Set up](#)²²⁹

Hide Number

Ticking this option replaces part of the phone.

Bi-Directional

Some PABX can have Bi-directional communications and if so this is configured by Starfleet.

Credit Limit

Tick to set credit limit on a room otherwise leave blank. Refer to [Set Call Limit](#)²²⁶.

TCP Link

If communications to the PABX is via a TCP/IP connection this will be configured by Starfleet.

Costing Type

This is setup by Starfleet Software when the PABX module is installed. **DO NOT CHANGE.**

Alarm Timeout

The Front Office System monitors the last time a telephone call was logged by the PABX system. The system will alert you if a call has not been logged within the time set (in minutes). If a fault occurs in the PABX or the cabling to the PC you will be alerted and be able to investigate - only if this option is ticked!

Error Log

Tick to use PABX error log text file, to log all data/info received from the computers COM port connected to the PABX.

Logging

Tick to log all calls or leave blank to log only calls which are not charged to a room. Default should be ticked.

Limit Exceed Alarm

Tick to activate the credit limit alarm otherwise leave blank.

Auto apply credit limit at check In

A credit limit can be set up on the guest room before check in. This option when ticked will automatically apply this limit. Enter the amount on the room number in Communication -> PABX -> Set Call Limit.

Default credit limit

Enter a default credit limit amount for all room phone charges.

Notify clean room code

Some PABX systems can have a number entered on the phone in the room by the housekeeper. This can trigger a code in the received data from the PABX to Starfleet and enable us to set the room to clean.

Thereafter

Enter the charge for subsequent pulses. (Eg: .65). For time costing PABX this value is ignored.

Actual

Enter the actual cost of the pulses. (Eg: .45). For time costing PABX this value is ignored.

Dial out

Tick if PABX log shows dial out prefix otherwise leave blank. This is only relevant for time costing PABX.

Status Line

Tick to display status line on the PABX screen. This assists in checking the incoming data if there are problems.

8.1.3.2 PABX Translation Table Setup

This program is used when the PABX extension numbers differ from the room numbers in the Front Office system, or some rooms have multiple extensions. The translation table must contain all room numbers and extension numbers in either case.

To access this select the Translation Table button. The following screen is displayed. To add a new extension simply click in the blank room number, enter the room number and < tab > to the Extension 1, 2 or 3 and enter the PABX extension number, Save. To edit or delete details double click on the room or extension number. Select Print to print a list of the room numbers and corresponding extension numbers.

	Ext 1	Ext 2	Ext 3	Ext 4	Ext 5	Ext 6
01	101					
02	102					
03	103					
04	104					
05	105					
06	106					
07	107					
08	108					
09	109					
10	110					

Room Number:

Extension 1:

Extension 2:

Extension 3:

Extension 4:

Extension 5:

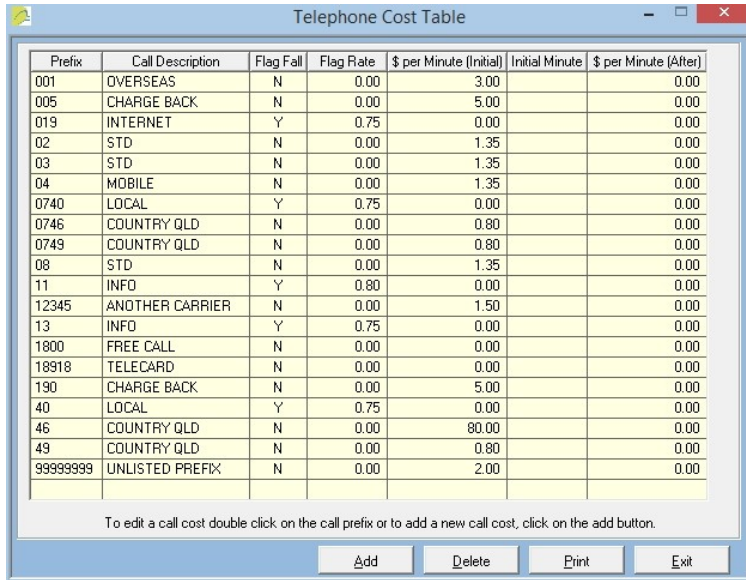
Extension 6:

324

8.1.3.3 PABX Phone Cost Table

This program is used when the PABX is charging by duration of a call instead of pulses. This table is used by the PABX to look up a call's cost/min, by matching the prefix of the numbered called. If no match is found then it will use the 'Unlisted prefix' (99999999) cost.

You can add as many combinations of phone prefixes as you like, below is an example of some of them. Select the Cost Table button in the PABX Setup window, and the following screen will appear.



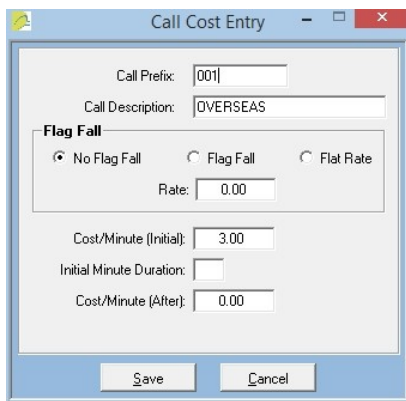
Prefix	Call Description	Flag Fall	Flag Rate	\$ per Minute (Initial)	Initial Minute	\$ per Minute (After)
001	OVERSEAS	N	0.00	3.00		0.00
005	CHARGE BACK	N	0.00	5.00		0.00
019	INTERNET	Y	0.75	0.00		0.00
02	STD	N	0.00	1.35		0.00
03	STD	N	0.00	1.35		0.00
04	MOBILE	N	0.00	1.35		0.00
0740	LOCAL	Y	0.75	0.00		0.00
0746	COUNTRY QLD	N	0.00	0.80		0.00
0749	COUNTRY QLD	N	0.00	0.80		0.00
08	STD	N	0.00	1.35		0.00
11	INFO	Y	0.80	0.00		0.00
12345	ANOTHER CARRIER	N	0.00	1.50		0.00
13	INFO	Y	0.75	0.00		0.00
1800	FREE CALL	N	0.00	0.00		0.00
18918	TELECARD	N	0.00	0.00		0.00
190	CHARGE BACK	N	0.00	5.00		0.00
40	LOCAL	Y	0.75	0.00		0.00
46	COUNTRY QLD	N	0.00	80.00		0.00
49	COUNTRY QLD	N	0.00	0.80		0.00
99999999	UNLISTED PREFIX	N	0.00	2.00		0.00

To edit a call cost double click on the call prefix or to add a new call cost, click on the add button.

Add Delete Print Exit

325

To add a new cost setting click on the Add button. To alter an existing entry, double click on the line the prefix number is on, or select Add to set up a new Prefix.



Call Prefix: 001

Call Description: OVERSEAS

Flag Fall

☒ No Flag Fall ☐ Flag Fall ☐ Flat Rate

Rate: 0.00

Cost/Minute (Initial): 3.00

Initial Minute Duration:

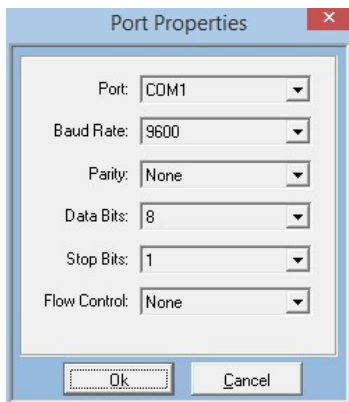
Cost/Minute (After): 0.00

Save Cancel

326

8.1.3.4 PABX Port Set UP

The following screen is displayed when the Port Setup button is clicked once. You will need to know the COM port your PABX is connected to and the relevant settings. Your PABX technician should be able to give these to you.



Port: COM1

Baud Rate: 9600

Parity: None

Data Bits: 8

Stop Bits: 1

Flow Control: None

Ok Cancel

327

Port

Select any valid COM ports connected to your PC. Normally, the PABX will be connected to COM 1 or COM 2. Your PABX technician can advise you which port he has used.

Baud Rate

Select the correct baud rate for your PABX.

Parity

Select the correct parity for your PABX.

Data Bits

Select the correct number of data bits for your PABX.

Stop Bits

Select the correct number of stop bits for your PABX.

Flow Control

Select the correct flow control for your PABX.

If ANY of these settings are incorrect, your PABX connection is unlikely to function properly, if at all.

8.2 Internet (Data)

Please contact Starfleet for separate manual on this link.

8.3 MovieLink

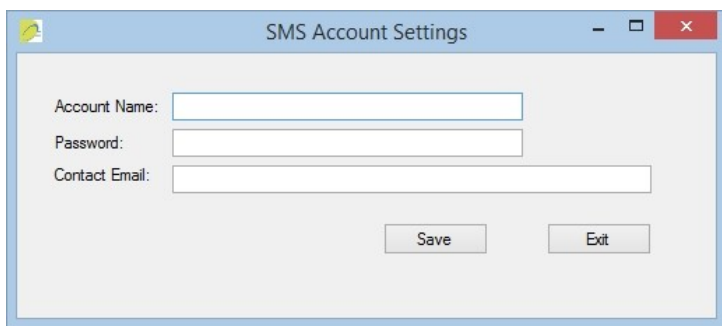
Please contact Starfleet for separate manual on this link.

8.4 Global Gossip

Please contact Starfleet for separate manual on this link.

8.5 SMS Setup

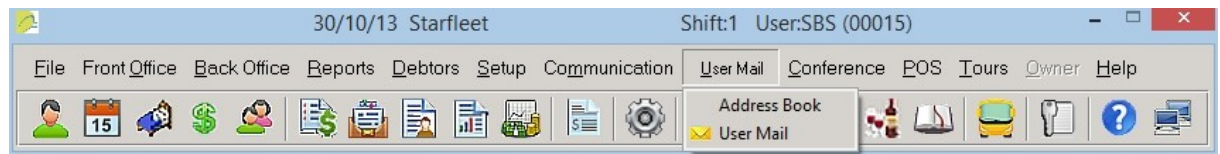
This option requires an account to be setup with Message Media (contact Starfleet for set up details). Once you have your account name and password enter this with your contact email and Save.



328

To create the SMS message go to System Configuration -> [Vouchers / SMS](#)²⁰⁹, double click a line to open. Up to six preset SMS messages can be created. This option is available in Front Office and Conference.

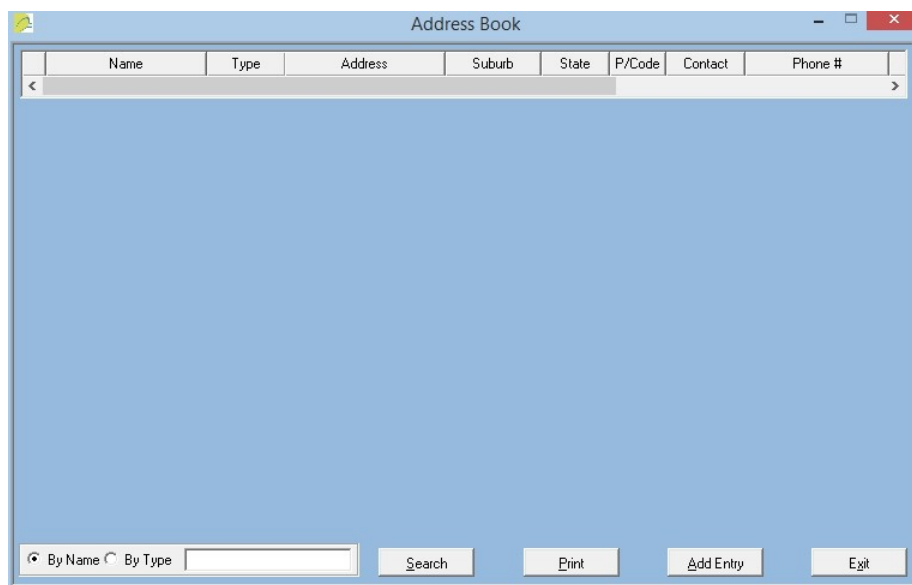
9 User Mail



334

9.1 Address Book

This is used to store address and phone details on either staff, suppliers or groups or anyone in which you wish to keep their details handy on file. Select User Mail, then select address book. The screen below will be displayed.



335

9.1.1 Add Address Book Entry

 A screenshot of the 'New Entry' form. It contains several input fields for adding a new entry: Name, Mobile #, Type, E-Mail, Address, Comment, Country (dropdown), Notes 1, Suburb, Notes 2, State/Region, Notes 3, Post Code, Entered (pre-filled with 30/10/2013), Contact, Phone #, and Fax #. There are also buttons for 'Print', 'Save', 'Delete', and 'Exit'.

336

Add Entry The fields are not mandatory so you add as much data as you like.

Note: It is suggested that you enter the surname first followed by a coma then first name to make searching easier once you have a lot of names entered.

Name: Enter guest name (surname first)

Type: Enter the type of person i.e staff, supplier or group, etc

Address: Enter the address details

Suburb: Enter the suburb name

State/Region: Enter the state or Region name

Postcode: Enter the postcode

Contact: If the entry is for a Supplier enter the name of the person you would speak to

Phone: Enter the phone number

Fax: Enter the fax number

Mobile: Enter the mobile number

Email: Enter the email address

Comment: Enter any comments (e.g if staff maybe the area they work in)

Notes: Enter any further comments (e.g for staff what days they can or can not work). Only the first line will display on the screen, the rest will appear when you double click on the name. Once you have entered all the details click on the Save button.

9.1.2 Delete Address Book Entry

The 'New Entry' dialog box is shown with the following details:

- Name: Starfleet Business Solutions
- Type: Software
- Address: P.O. Box 6153
- Country: AUSTRALIA
- Suburb: HAWTHORN WEST
- State/Region: VICTORIA
- Post Code: 3122
- Contact:
- Phone #: +61 3 9428 4333
- Fax #: +61 3 8460 0446
- Mobile #:
- E-Mail: info@starfleet-software.com.au
- Comment:
- Notes 1:
- Notes 2:
- Notes 3:
- Entered: 30/10/2013

Buttons at the bottom: Print, Save, Delete, Exit.

337

- Click on the address book icon and search either by Name or Type, then click on the search button.
- Once the selected name appears double click on the line wanted
- This will display the information as above.
- Click on the delete button to remove the details

The 'DELETE RECORD' dialog box is shown with the following details:

- Text: Are you sure you want to delete this record
- Buttons: Yes, No

338

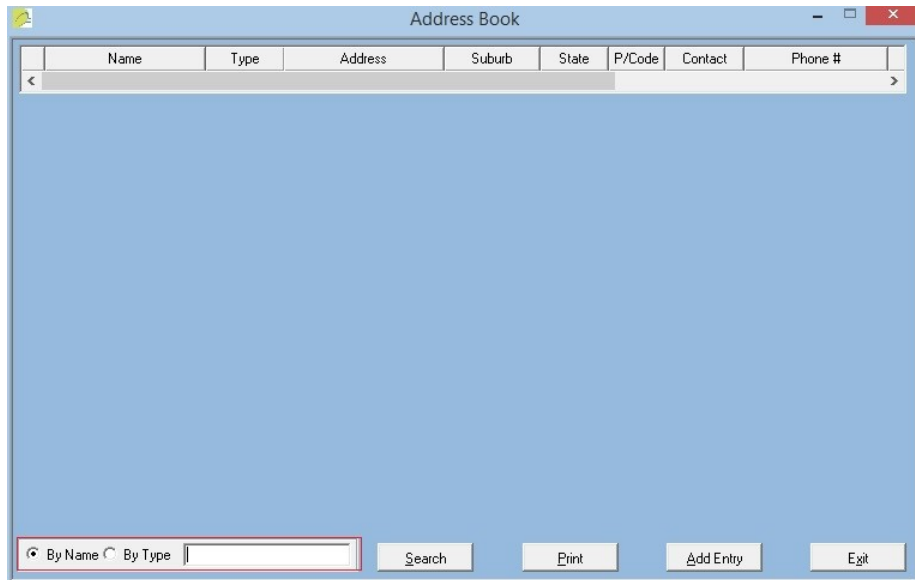
A message will be displayed to ask if you want to delete record. Click yes to confirm or no to cancel.

9.1.3 Search For An Address Book Entry

Click on the address book, then select the type of search you would like to do either by name or type.

- By Name - Select the Name button, type the name you are searching for, click on the Search button and it will list all names in alphabetical order (This is why surname is the best way to enter names)
- By Type - Select the Type button and enter the type (i.e. Staff, Supplier or Group) you are searching for, click on the Search button. The entries will display in alphabetical order.

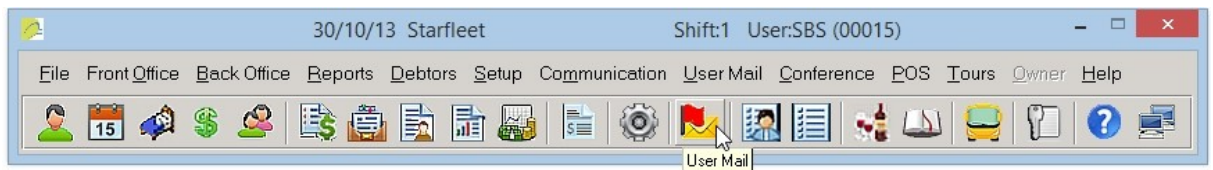
The window below will be displayed. To print the list, click the **print** button. To exit this window click on the **exit** button. Note: when searching this is case sensitive.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Address Book" with a standard Windows-style title bar (minimize, maximize, close buttons). Inside the window, there is a table with the following headers: Name, Type, Address, Suburb, State, P/Code, Contact, and Phone #. Below the table is a large blue rectangular area, likely a placeholder for search results. At the bottom of the window, there is a search section with two radio buttons: "By Name" (selected) and "By Type". To the right of these buttons is a text input field. Further right are four buttons: "Search", "Print", "Add Entry", and "Exit".

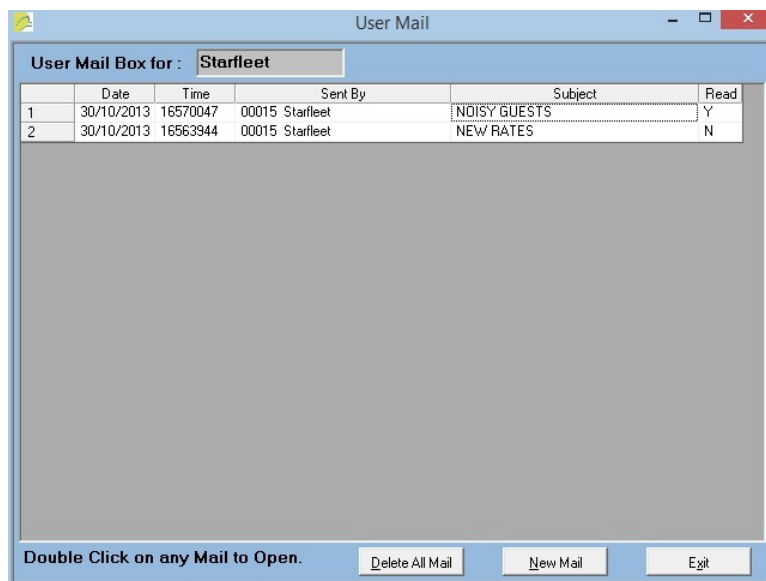
339

9.2 User Mail



M

This allows you to send mail to different users on the internal system. When the user logs in at the start of their shift an envelope will display on the task bar to inform you that you have mail. To access this click on the envelope. The window below will be displayed. If there is a message to be read there is a red flag alerting the user that there is unread mail.

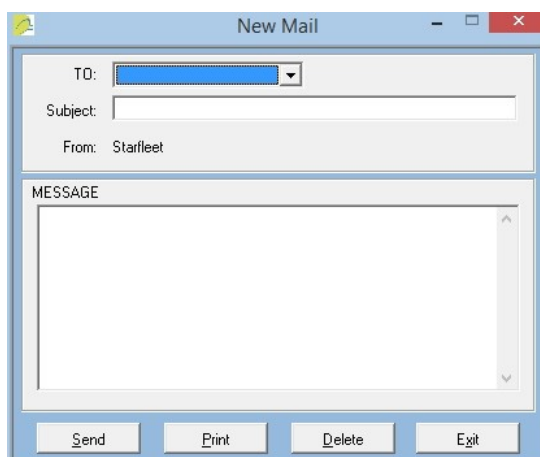


340

This displays the date, sender, subject and Y is mail has been read or N if the mail has not been read. To read the message, double click on the message.

9.2.1 Add User Mail

Click on the new mail button to add a message, box below will appear.



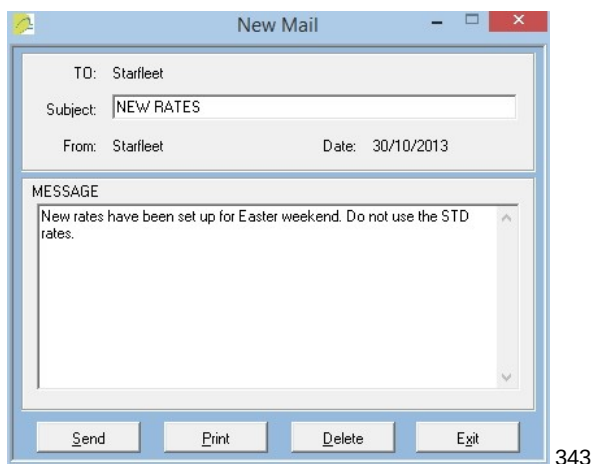
342

- Click on the drop down box at the top to select the recipient or to send to ALL.
- Type in the Subject title for your message
- Enter your message
- Print if hard copy is needed; however the message will stay in the system until you delete it.
- Click on the **Send** button to send the mail to the other user(s).
- Then click on the **Exit** button to return to the previous screen.

9.2.2 Read User Mail

Click on User Mail, then double click on the line you wish to read. The message/s will be displayed in a window.

At the end of the messages there will be either a Y or N under the heading Read. The N means these messages have not been read yet. Once you open them the N will automatically update to a Y, meaning the message has been read. Print the message by clicking on the **Print** button.



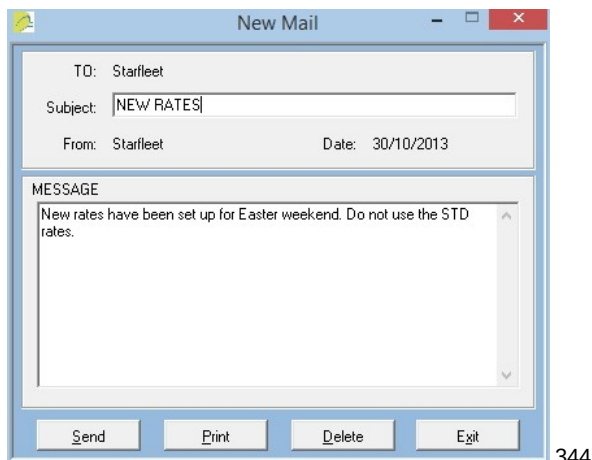
343

9.2.3 Delete User Mail

Once you have opened the user mail and read the message you have the following options.

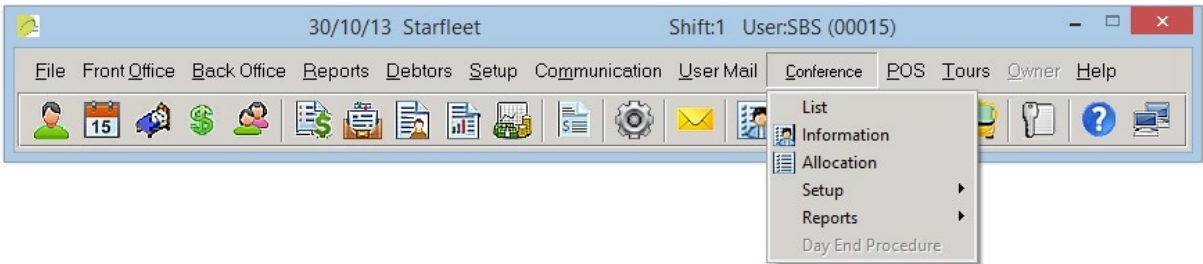
- To print if you wish to print and obtain a hard copy and then you can delete the message.
- You can leave the message and exit.
- You can **Delete** the message.

Then click on the **Exit** button to go back to the previous screen.



344

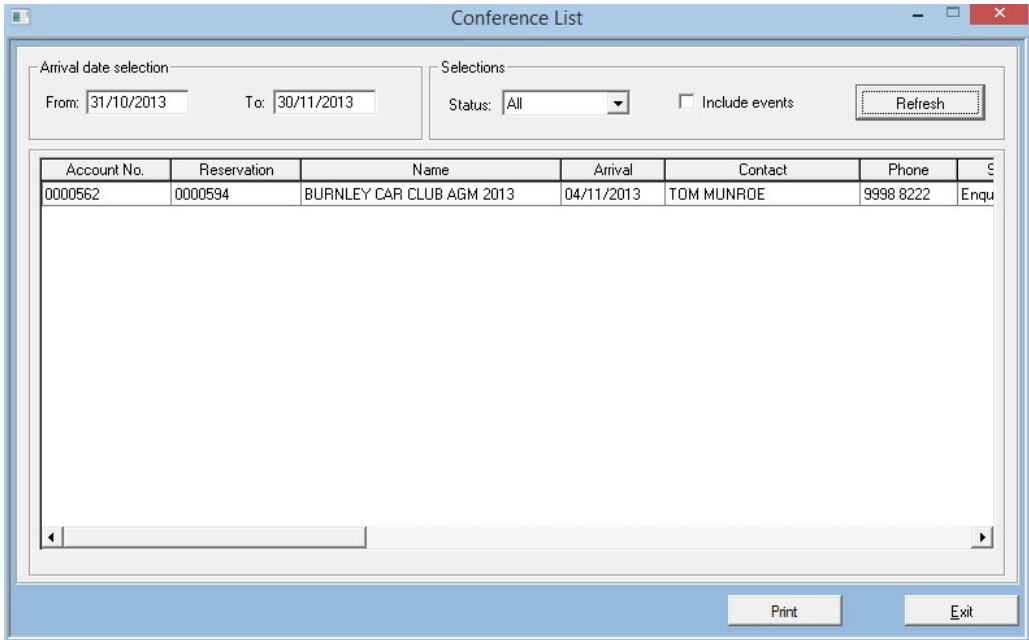
10 Conference



345

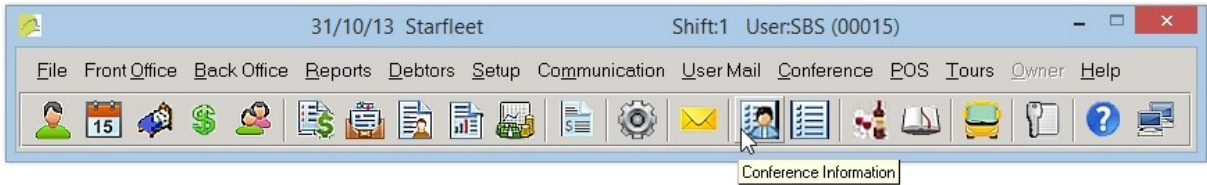
10.1 List

This will display a list of forthcoming Conferences. Select the Conference you wish to view or change, double click to open the Conference Information.



345a

10.2 Information



N

The Conference Information option allows you to **Add or Change** Conference details, including name and address as well as making a booking. Next to the suburb and postcode fields are the postcode lookup icons. Depending on the country selected in the country field the suburb, state and postcode can be selected from the postcode lookup screen. For more information refer to [Postcode Lookup](#)^[25], or click on the postcode icon next to the suburb or postcode fields.

346

- **Account:** displays the Company name, address, contact details, booking status and type of Conference.
- **Charges/Payments:** displays the Charges/Payments screen.
- **Reservation:** enter a new reservation or to edit a current reservation.
- **Print:** gives the option to print or email Quotation or Proforma Invoice. Select Tax Invoice or Conf letter for the option to print or email. Select Running Sheet for print option.
- **Ok to receive SMS:** allows an SMS message to be sent to arriving Conference Group. Refer to [SMS Setup](#)^[231] and [Vouchers / SMS](#)^[209] to create setup.
- **Exit:** will exit from the current screen.

10.2.1 Conference Account

To create a new Conference account, click on the **New** button, enter the Conference details as shown below. (Please note that if the Conference group is already has an Accommodation booking, you can use the same account number. It is the same if you have already created the Conference and wish to create an Accommodation booking, you can use the same account number.) Enter all the information required, then click on the **Save** button

10.2.1.1 Account Details

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Account Details | Conference Activities | Transactions | Itinerary | Tasks

A/R: STAR Phone 1: +61 3 9728 4333

Company Name: STARFLEET BUSINESS SOLUTIONS Phone 2:

Address Line 1: P.O. BOX 6143 Mobile: ☐ Ok to receive SMS

Address Line 2: Fax No: +61 3 8640 0446

Country: AUSTRALIA Contact:

Suburb: HAWTHORN E-mail: sales@starfleet-software.com.au

State / Region: VIC Postcode: 3122 Status: In Progress Type: CONFERENCE

Comments1:

Notes Delete Duplicate New Save

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

347

- **Notes:** add notes relevant to the reservation. These notes can be printed, refer to [Guest Mail & Notes](#) ⁶¹
- **Delete:** this button will delete the Conference Information **ONLY** if there is **NO** reservation.
- **Duplicate:** this will duplicate the account details, a new reservation can then be entered.
- **New:** click on **New** to create a new account and reservation. This does not duplicate the account on the screen.
- **Exit:** to close and Exit form the Conference Information screen.

10.2.1.2 Conference Activities

This is a display of all the activities and their charges for the entire conference. To print this report, click on the print button at the bottom of the screen. To Add or Change Conference Activities refer to [Conference Activities](#) ²⁴³ on the Reservation screen.

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Account Details | **Conference Activities** | Transactions | Itinerary | Tasks

	Date	Time S	Time F	Activity	Description	Location	# Extra	\$ Extra	# Adults	\$ Adult	# Child
1	30/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA	CAFE	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
2	30/10/2013	1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	0	0.00	30	30.00	0
3	30/10/2013	1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA	CAFE	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
4	31/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA	MEET	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
5	31/10/2013	1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	0	0.00	30	30.00	0
6	31/10/2013	1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA	MEET	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
7	30/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE	BOARD	0	0.00	30	0.00	0
8	31/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE	BOARD	0	0.00	30	0.00	0

Print

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

348

10.2.1.3 Transactions

This screen will display all the transactions charged to the conference so far. If any transactions have been Voided by ticking the option to Hide void transactions, these will not display.

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Account Details | Conference Activities | **Transactions** | Itinerary | Tasks

☐ Hide void transactions

Res#	Date	Trans#	Code	Description	Comments	Extra	Room	Amount	G
0000593	30/10/2013	0002374	COA	COFFEE/TEA	...		CONF	300.00	27.0
0000593	30/10/2013	0002375	LUN	LUNCH	...		CONF	900.00	81.0
0000593	30/10/2013	0002376	COA	COFFEE/TEA	...		CONF	300.00	27.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002383	PAK	PACKAGE	0000554/0000581		09	130.00	11.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002384	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...	0000554/0000581		09	70.00	6.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002385	DIN	DINNER	0000554/0000581		09	40.00	3.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002386	BRK	BREAKFAST	0000554/0000581		09	20.00	1.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002387	PAK	PACKAGE	0000555/0000582		10	130.00	11.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002388	ACC	ACCOMMODATI...	0000555/0000582		10	70.00	6.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002389	DIN	DINNER	0000555/0000582		10	40.00	3.0
0000578	30/10/2013	0002390	BRK	BREAKFAST	0000555/0000582		10	20.00	1.0

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

349

10.2.1.4 Itinerary

This is a display of all the activities for the conference. You have the option of displaying the whole conference itinerary, or the itinerary for just one of the days by selecting the appropriate date. You can print the itinerary by clicking on the Print button.

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Account Details | Conference Activities | Transactions | **Itinerary** | Tasks

	Date	Time S	Time F	Activity	Description	Location	# Adults	# Child	# Infants	Details
1	30/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA	CAFE	30	0	0	
2		1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	30	0	0	
3		1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA	CAFE	30	0	0	
4	31/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA	MEET	30	0	0	
5		1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	30	0	0	
6		1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA	MEET	30	0	0	
7	30/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE	BOARD	30	0	0	
8	31/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE	BOARD	30	0	0	

Print Display ☒ All days ☐ Selected day Enter Date:

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

350

To enter items into the itinerary field go to the Reservations button which is located at the bottom of the screen. Refer to [Conference Activities](#) ²⁴³ to Add or Change items as this will also display as the Itinerary Report.

10.2.1.5 Tasks

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Credit Card

Account Details | Conference Activities | Transactions | Itinerary | **Tasks**

Date	Time	Task	Completed
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			
//			

Print Save

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

352

The Tasks screen will display all the tasks to be completed for the Conference. Enter all your tasks in the table and click on the Save button. You only have room for a maximum of 10 tasks. To print the tasks, select the Print button.

Date: enter the date the task is to be completed. (DDMMYYYY format).

Time: enter the time the task is to be completed. (HHMM – 24 hr format).

Task: enter a description of the task to be completed.

Completed: enter 'Y' when the task has been completed.

10.2.2 Charges/Payments

Charges and payments are posted in this screen. The Conference account can also be Finalized here. Click on the Finalize button and any charges not posted will then be posted, this will be in the case of any Extras that have been setup on the Account. The Conference status will then change to Completed.

Conference Information

Account Code: 0000551 Last Activity: 30/10/2013 Balance: 2,150.00

Name: STARFLEET Pay Method: CASH Operator: m15c15

Credit Card

Account balance: 1,500.00 Status: Arrived

Date	Description	Pkg	PT	Amount	GST
30/10/2013	COFFEE/TEA			300.00	27.27
30/10/2013	LUNCH			900.00	81.82
30/10/2013	COFFEE/TEA			300.00	27.27

Transaction: ACC - ACCOMMODATION

Amount: ADV - ADV DEPOSIT REFUND

Comments: ADV - ADV DEPOSIT

ADP - AD CANCELLATION FEE

BRK - BREAKFAST

CAN - CANCELLATION FEE

CNA - COFFEE/TEA

Finalize Apply

Account Charges/Pmts Reservation Print Exit

357

Charges

To post a charge to a conference account, select the transaction type in the Transaction field, <tab> to the next field and enter in the amount of the transaction. If the transaction has GST this will be calculated automatically for you. Enter a comment if required and select Apply.

Payments

To post a payment select PAY in the Transaction field, <tab> to select the payment type then <tab> to the amount field, enter the amount and select Apply.

10.2.3 Conference Reservation

After completing the Conference Information details, select the Reservation button to make the booking. The following window will be displayed.

354

Arrival: enter the Arrival date of the Conference. (DDMMYYYY or double click to select from the calendar)

Departure: enter the Departure date of the Conference. (DDMMYYYY or double click to select from the calendar)

Nights: enter the number of nights for the conference.

Start time: enter the Start Time of the conference.

Finish time: enter the Finish Time of the conference.

Adults: enter the number of Adults attending the conference.

Children (U18): enter the number of Children under 18 attending the conference.

Children (U12): enter the number of Children under 12 attending the conference.

Conference: enter the Conference Package you wish to use. Refer to following [Package](#) ²⁴⁸ to setup.

Rate: enter the rate for the Conference.

Booked by: this will be the ID of the user logged in to Starfleet.

Comments: enter any comments about the Conference.

Source: select the Source of the booking. (Used for marketing purposes.)

Area: select the Area of the booking. (Used for marketing purposes.)

Seg: select the Segment of the booking. (Used for marketing purposes.)

Status: select the status of the Conference. Enquiry, Tentative, Confirmed, In Progress, Completed and Canceled.

Voucher: can be an order number provided by a company or a Travel Agents booking number.

10.2.3.1 Conference Activities

Conference Activities are setup by selecting the Reservation button then Conference Activities tab. To start select Add Line, enter the date, time to start, time to finish, the activity and the location by <tab> to the next field along the line. If there are Extra guests enter in the number and the amount per guest. Continue to add details as required along the line.

	Date	Time S	Time F	Activity	Description	Location	# Extra	\$ Extra	# Adult	\$ Adult	# Child
1	30/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA ...	CAFE	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
2	30/10/2013	1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	0	0.00	30	30.00	0
3	30/10/2013	1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA ...	CAFE	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
4	31/10/2013	1000	1020	MTEA	MORNING TEA ...	MEET	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
5	31/10/2013	1200	1300	LUNCH	LUNCH	REST	0	0.00	30	30.00	0
6	31/10/2013	1500	1520	ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA ...	MEET	0	0.00	30	10.00	0
7	30/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE ...	BOARD	0	0.00	30	0.00	0
8	31/10/2013	0900	1700	CONF	CONFERENCE ...	BOARD	0	0.00	30	0.00	0

348a

When the Activities amounts have been posted in Night Audit the entry is highlighted grey. These Activities can not be removed or changed. If an activity has been charged to an account incorrectly then this can be reversed. Go to Charges/Payments screen, select the correct transaction type, enter the amount with a -minus, select Apply.

10.2.3.2 Conference Extras

Extras can be added to the Reservation. These charges are setup in the Extras tab to post to the account with the Night Audit process. Refer to Front Office -> Guest Information -> [Guest Extras](#) ³⁵ to setup.

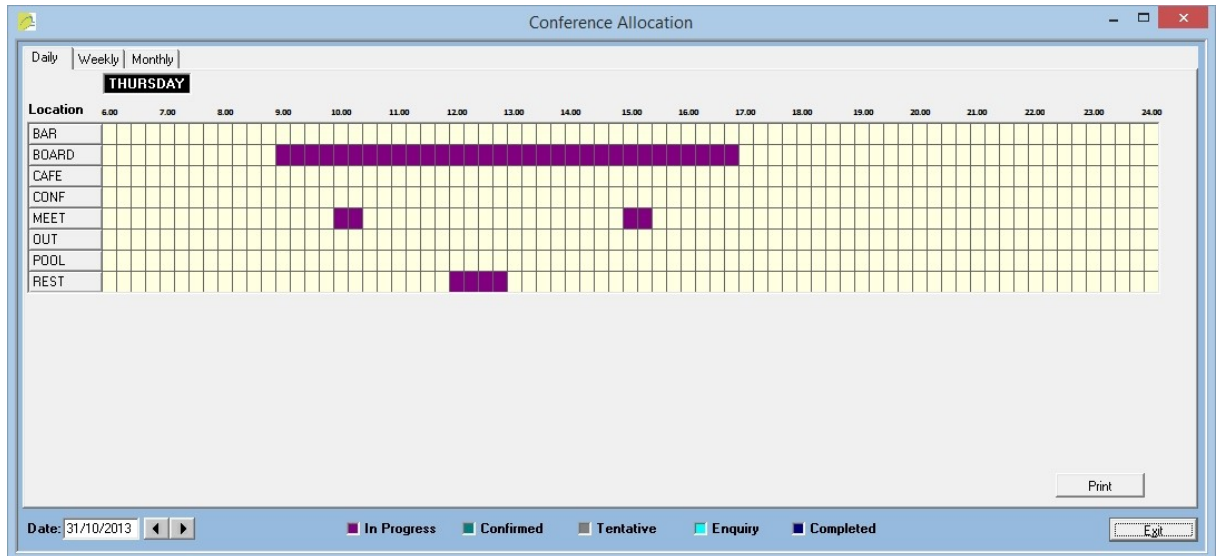
No	Start	Seq	Tran	Qty	Total Amt	GST	Comments	Print
1								
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								

358

10.3 Allocation

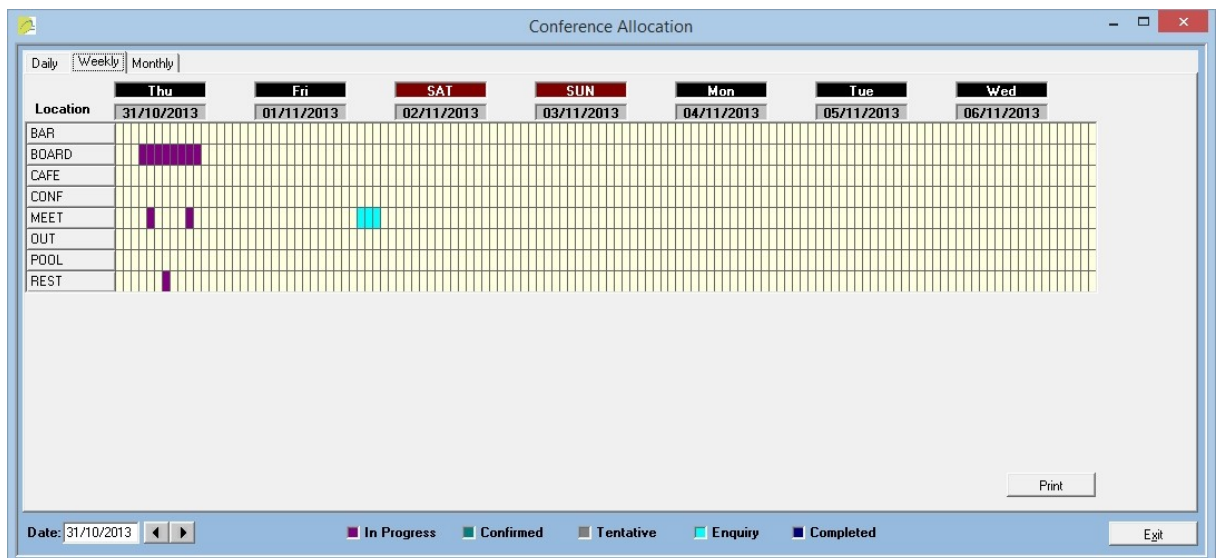
In this window all conferences are displayed for either a day, week or a month (28 days). Depending on what the status of the conference is (Enquiry, Tentative, Confirmed, In Progress or Completed), will depend on the colour displayed. You can move forward or back using the buttons with the arrows on them and depending on which tab you are on, the date will move either one day at a time, 7 days at a time or 28 days at a time. You can also double click on the date field and select a date from the calendar.

Daily tab, the following window will display.



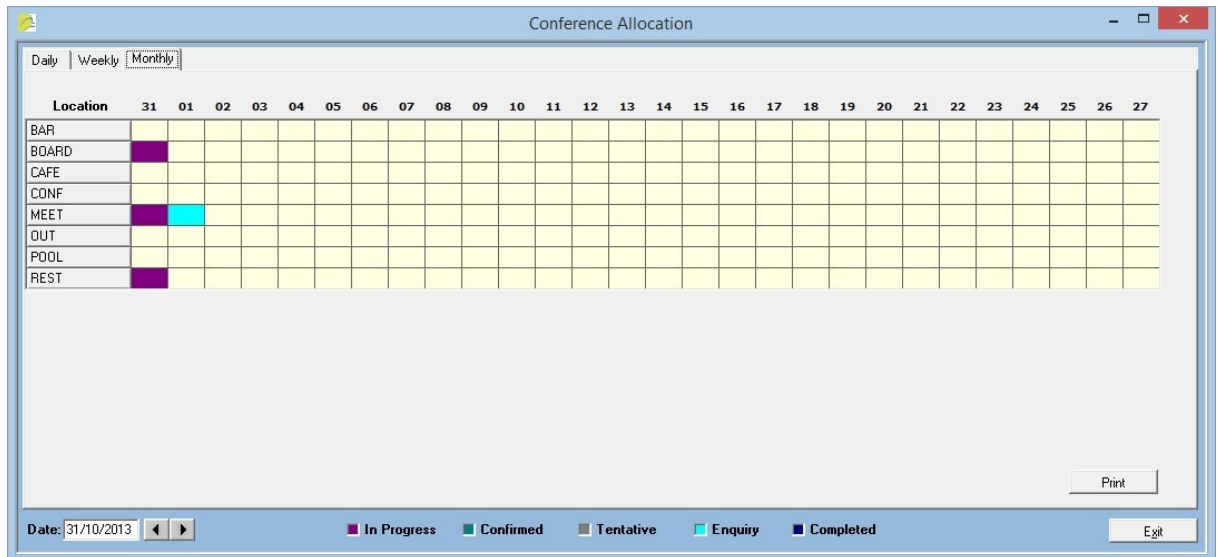
359

Weekly tab will display the following screen.



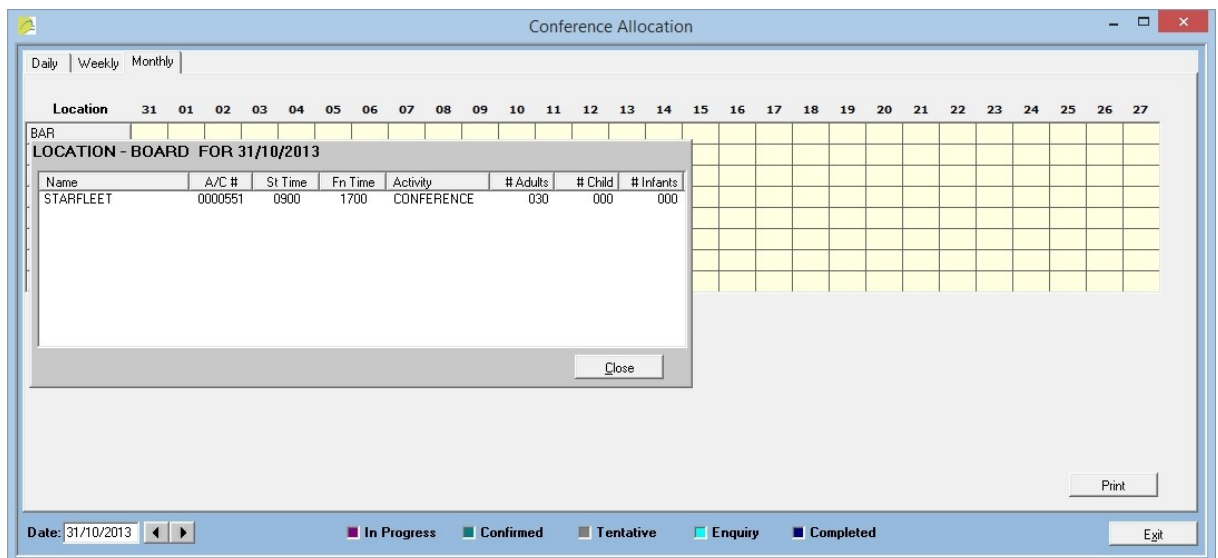
360

Monthly tab will display the following screen.



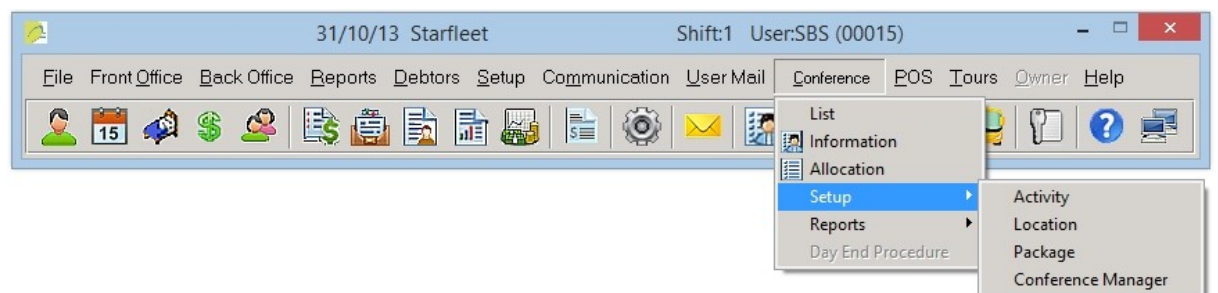
361

Click on one of the coloured fields to display a list of all the activities and locations for that day.



362

10.4 Setup



T

10.4.1 Activity

The following screen is the Activities table a list of Conference Activities.

Activity Code	Activity Name	Description	Per Person	Transaction Description
ARRIV	ARRIVAL	ARRIVAL	0.00	CON - CONFERENCE
ATEA	AFTERNOON TEA	AFTERNOON TEA	0.00	COA - COFFEE/TEA
BRK	BREAKFAST	BREAKFAST	0.00	BRK - BREAKFAST
COA	COFFEE/TEA	COFFEE/TEA	0.00	COA - COFFEE/TEA
CONF	CONFERENCE	CONFERENCE	0.00	CON - CONFERENCE
DINNER	DINNER	DINNER	0.00	DIN - DINNER
GOLF	GOLF	GOLF FULL DAY	20.00	
LUNCH	LUNCH	LUNCH	0.00	LUN - LUNCH
MEET	MEETING	MEETING	0.00	MEE - MEETING
MTEA	MORNING TEA	MORNING TEA	0.00	COA - COFFEE/TEA
PRED	PRE DINNER DRINKS	PRE DINNER DRINKS	0.00	
RMHIRE	ROOM HIRE	ROOM HIRE	0.00	RMH - ROOM HIRE
WED	WEDDING	WEDDING	0.00	WED - WEDDING

To change an activity, double click on the activity code.

Add Activity Exit

363

To add a new activity, click on the Add Activity button. The following window will be displayed. The yellow fields must be completed. Select the Trans Type description that the activity will be displayed by on the Conference account. (i.e. Activity Code: ATEA AFTERNOON TEA will display on the account as AFTERNOON TEA because the Trans Type description is ATE AFTERNOON TEA).

Add Activity									
Activity Code									
Activity Name									
Description 1									
Per Adult		Child U12		Child U5					
Max Adults	Min	Max U12	Min	Max U5	Min				
Activity available Sun ☒ Mon ☒ Tue ☒ Wed ☒ Thu ☒ Fri ☒ Sat ☒									
Between times		and		Trans Type					
Save Delete Exit									

364

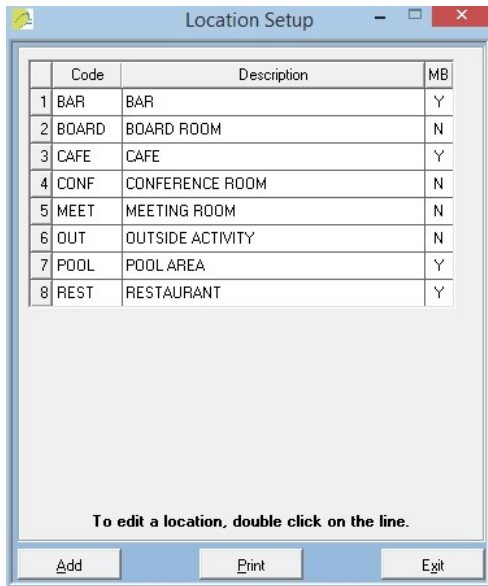
To edit an existing activity just double click on the activity in the table. The following window will be displayed. Edit any of the fields, then Save button. To delete an activity, select the delete button. Exit to return to the previous menu.

Edit Activity									
Activity Code		MEET							
Activity Name		MEETING							
Description 1									
Per Adult		Child U12		Child U5					
Max Adults	Min	Max U12	Min	Max U5	Min				
Activity available Sun ☒ Mon ☒ Tue ☒ Wed ☒ Thu ☒ Fri ☒ Sat ☒									
Between times		and		Trans Type					
Save Delete Exit									

365

10.4.2 Location

Location Set up for all Conferences.

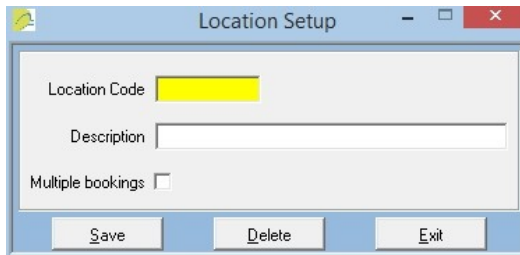


The screenshot shows a window titled "Location Setup" with a table containing 8 rows of location data. Below the table is a message: "To edit a location, double click on the line." At the bottom are three buttons: "Add", "Print", and "Exit".

	Code	Description	MB
1	BAR	BAR	Y
2	BOARD	BOARD ROOM	N
3	CAFE	CAFE	Y
4	CONF	CONFERENCE ROOM	N
5	MEET	MEETING ROOM	N
6	OUT	OUTSIDE ACTIVITY	N
7	POOL	POOL AREA	Y
8	REST	RESTAURANT	Y

366

To add select the Add button. The screen below will be displayed.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Location Setup" with input fields for "Location Code" (highlighted in yellow), "Description", and a checkbox for "Multiple bookings". At the bottom are three buttons: "Save", "Delete", and "Exit".

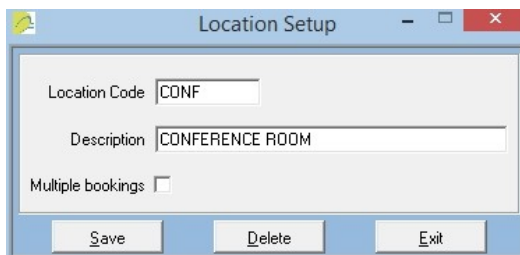
367

Location code i.e Barbecue Area would be BBQ

- Description of that Code.
- Tick multiple bookings - "Y" will appear on main menu. This will allow more than one booking in the location area.
- Untick multiple bookings - "N" will appear on main menu. Only one booking will be allowed in the location area.
- Click Save to save the location
- Exit to return the previous menu.

Change/Delete Location

To **change** or **delete** a location/s, double click on the code/description line. The following window will be displayed. Edit the fields as necessary or Delete then Save.

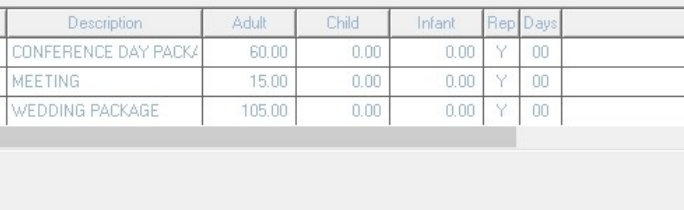


The screenshot shows a window titled "Location Setup" with input fields for "Location Code" (containing "CONF"), "Description" (containing "CONFERENCE ROOM"), and a checkbox for "Multiple bookings". At the bottom are three buttons: "Save", "Delete", and "Exit".

368

10.4.3 Package

The list of Conference Packages available once they have been setup.



Conference Template Maintenance

Code	Description	Adult	Child	Infant	Rep	Days	Package Code
CONF	CONFERENCE DAY PACKAGE	60.00	0.00	0.00	Y	00	
MEET	MEETING	15.00	0.00	0.00	Y	00	
WEDD	WEDDING PACKAGE	105.00	0.00	0.00	Y	00	

< >

To change a template, double click on the template code.

Print Add Package Exit

369

To add a package click on the Add Package button. The following window will display.

Conference Template Maintenance

Template Code Repetitive ☒ Number of Days

Description

Adult Child U12 Child U5

Description 1

Description 2

Description 3

Day	Entry	Time S	Time F	Activity	Description	Adult	Child	Infant

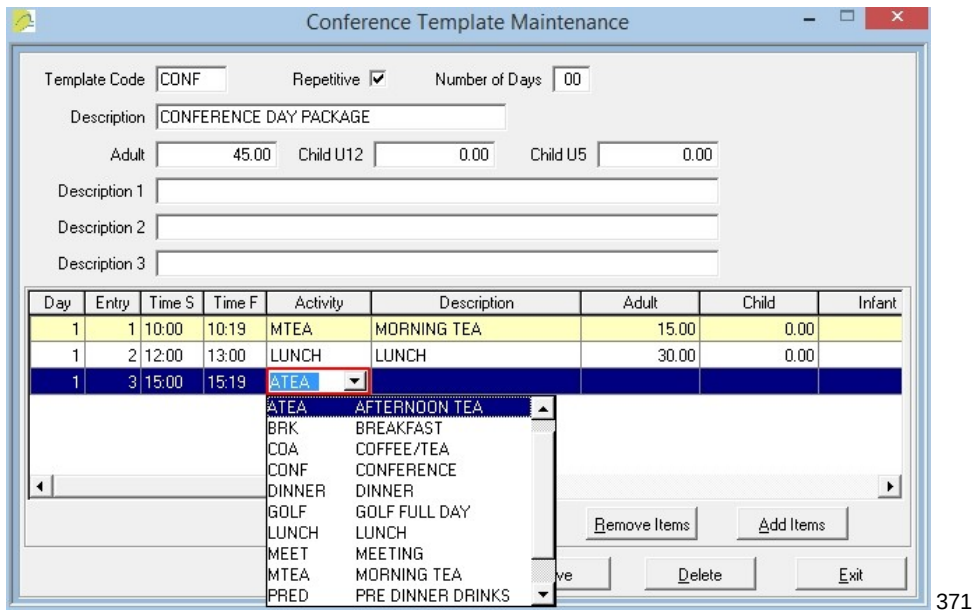
◀ ▶

Remove Items Add Items

Save Delete Exit

370

Enter the Template Code and Description, tick if Repetitive, Number of Days and number of adults/ children. Click on Add Items to enter the package items included in the package, see following screen.

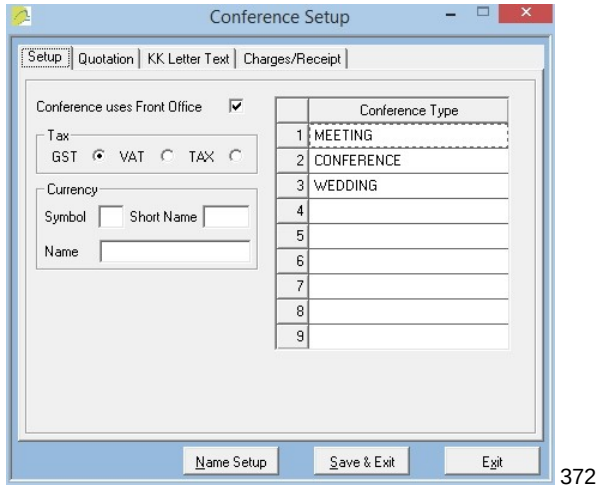


To edit/change package details, double click on the Description line. The details of the package will be displayed. Edit as required, then Save.

To delete a template, double click on the Description line. The details of the package will be displayed. Then click on the Delete button.

NOTE: Do **NOT** delete a package if there is a current guest using the package.

10.4.4 Conference Manager



Quotation: Add remarks on quotation, salutation on quotation and terms of quotation.

The screenshot shows the 'Conference Setup' window with the 'Quotation' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Windows controls. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with four tabs: 'Setup', 'Quotation', 'KK Letter Text', and 'Charges/Receipt'. The 'Quotation' tab is active, displaying three text input areas: 'Remarks on Quotation:', 'Salutation on Quotation:', and 'Terms on Quotation:'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Name Setup', 'Save & Exit', and 'Exit'.

373

Conf Letter Text: Click on the Add button to setup the Conf letter. Refer to the Front Office [Conf Letter](#) setup in System Configuration.

The screenshot shows the 'Conference Setup' window with the 'KK Letter Text' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Windows controls. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with four tabs: 'Setup', 'Quotation', 'KK Letter Text', and 'Charges/Receipt'. The 'KK Letter Text' tab is active, displaying an 'Options For KK Letter' section with a checkbox labeled 'Using Blank Paper'. Below this is a section titled 'Double click line to update KK Letter' containing a table with two columns: 'Code' and 'Description'. An 'Add' button is located at the bottom right of the table. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Name Setup', 'Save & Exit', and 'Exit'.

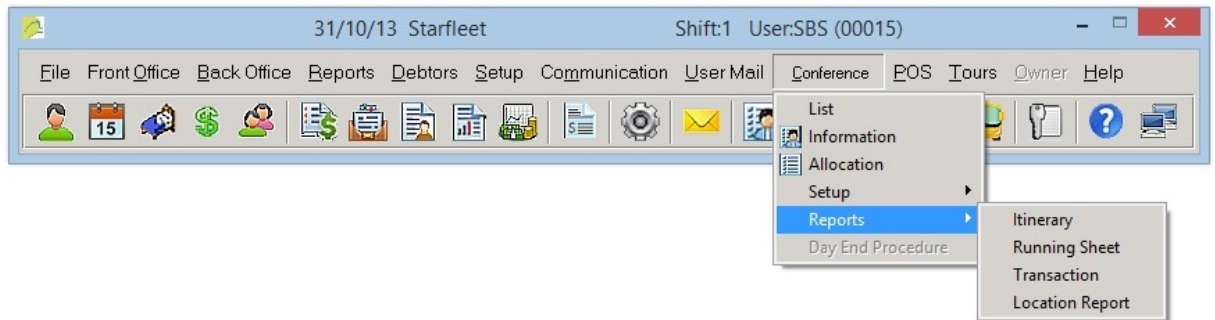
374

Charges/Receipt: Enter comments or Bank Account details to be displayed on the Conference Account.

The screenshot shows the 'Conference Setup' window with the 'Charges/Receipt' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Windows controls. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with four tabs: 'Setup', 'Quotation', 'KK Letter Text', and 'Charges/Receipt'. The 'Charges/Receipt' tab is active, displaying a section titled 'Comments for conference charges/receipt' with a note '(3 Lines, each 80 characters long)'. Below this are three numbered text input fields (1, 2, 3). At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Name Setup', 'Save & Exit', and 'Exit'.

375

10.5 Reports



U

10.5.1 Itinerary

The screenshot shows the 'Conference Itinerary' input form. It has two text input fields: 'Acc Number:' and 'Acc Name:'. Below these fields are two buttons: 'Display' and 'Exit'.

376

Enter the Account Number or Account Name of the conference. The report will be generated from the data that you originally entered into the booking. This report details the conference schedule for the entire conference following what you have entered. The more information entered to begin with means more information on the reports. Below is an example of the conference itinerary report.

The screenshot shows the 'Conference Itinerary' report output. The title bar indicates the name Conference Itinerary. The report content is as follows:

STARFLEET **Oct 31 2013**
 ACCOUNT No: 0000551
 RESERVATION No: 0000593

Contact:
 Phone: +61 3 9728 4333
 Mobile:
 Fax: +61 3 8640 0446

ARRIVE: Wednesday 30th October 20
 DEPART: Thursday 31st October 20

Wednesday 30th October 2013			
10:00AM	MORNING TEA	CAFE	30
12:00AM	LUNCH	RESTAURANT	30
03:00PM	AFTERNOON TEA	CAFE	30
Thursday 31st October 2013			

At the bottom right, there are 'Print' and 'Exit' buttons.

377

10.5.2 Running Sheet

378

Enter the Account Number or Account Name for the conference in the window above. Then click on the Display button. A running sheet will be generated from the data that you originally entered into the booking. An example of a running sheet is displayed in window below.

379

10.5.3 Transaction

380

To display the Conference Transaction Listing enter the following:

- Date Range From
- Date Range Until

Select one of the following

- Daily
- Monthly or
- Range

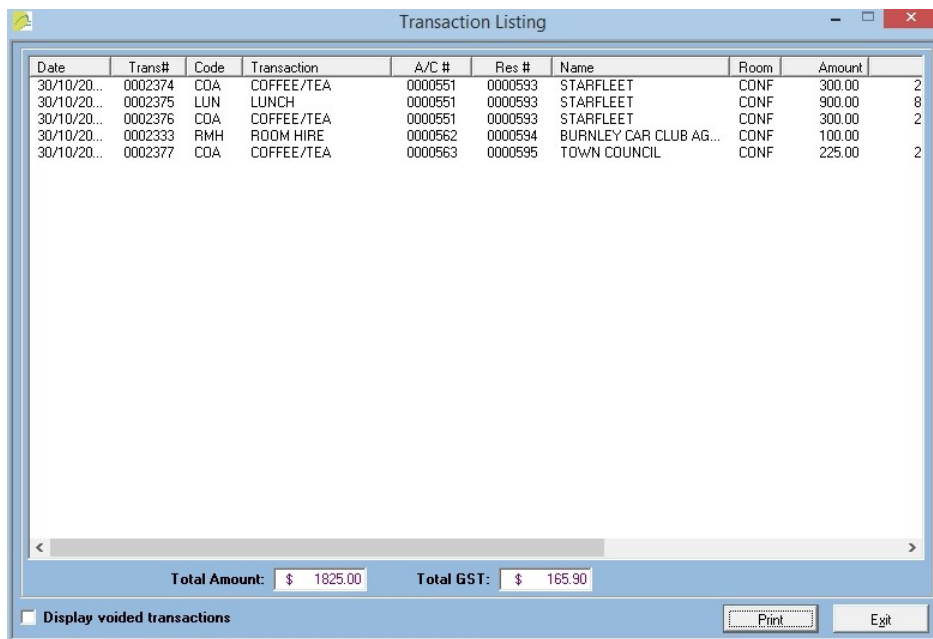
Report Type select one of the following

- Full Listing
- Totals only

Find matching

- Transaction
- Account
- User #
- Shift #
- Pay Type

Click on the screen button to display the report. The window below will be displayed.



Date	Trans#	Code	Transaction	A/C #	Res #	Name	Room	Amount	
30/10/20...	0002374	COA	COFFEE/TEA	0000551	0000593	STARFLEET	CONF	300.00	2
30/10/20...	0002375	LUN	LUNCH	0000551	0000593	STARFLEET	CONF	900.00	8
30/10/20...	0002376	COA	COFFEE/TEA	0000551	0000593	STARFLEET	CONF	300.00	2
30/10/20...	0002333	RMH	ROOM HIRE	0000562	0000594	BURNLEY CAR CLUB AG...	CONF	100.00	
30/10/20...	0002377	COA	COFFEE/TEA	0000563	0000595	TOWN COUNCIL	CONF	225.00	2

Total Amount: \$ 1825.00 Total GST: \$ 165.90

☐ Display voided transactions

381

10.5.4 Location Report



Conferenc... - [X]

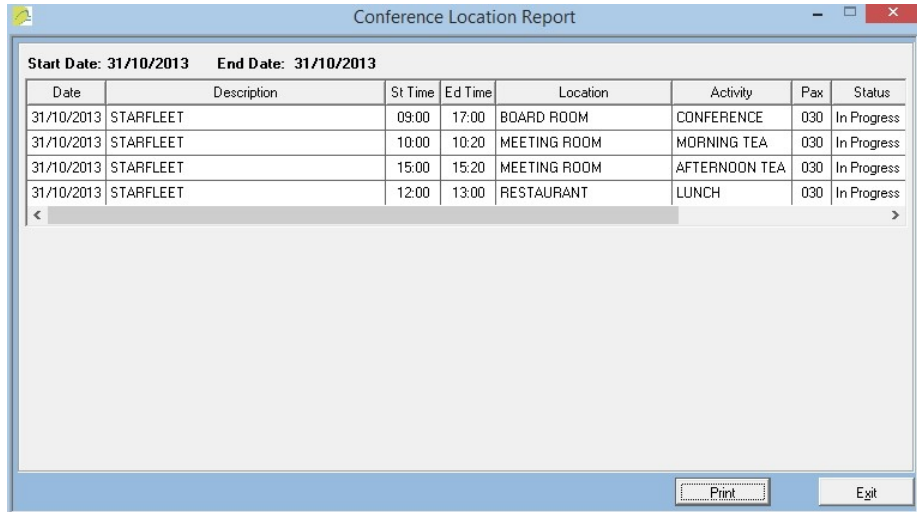
Start Date: 31/10/2013

End Date: 31/10/2013

Location: %ALL

382

Click on the Location Report, the window above will be displayed. Enter the Start Date and End Date. For Location select All or a specific location, then select Display. The following report will be displayed. Print for a hard copy and Exit to exit the window.



Conference Location Report							
Start Date: 31/10/2013				End Date: 31/10/2013			
Date	Description	St Time	Ed Time	Location	Activity	Pax	Status
31/10/2013	STARFLEET	09:00	17:00	BOARD ROOM	CONFERENCE	030	In Progress
31/10/2013	STARFLEET	10:00	10:20	MEETING ROOM	MORNING TEA	030	In Progress
31/10/2013	STARFLEET	15:00	15:20	MEETING ROOM	AFTERNOON TEA	030	In Progress
31/10/2013	STARFLEET	12:00	13:00	RESTAURANT	LUNCH	030	In Progress

383

DAY END PROCEDURES

This option is ONLY applicable if using the Conference Module as a stand alone option. Please contact Starfleet Software for information.

11 POS

Please contact Starfleet Software for separate Point of Sale Manual.

12 Tours

Please contact Starfleet Software for separate Tours Manual.

13 Owners

Please contact Starfleet Software for separate Owners Manual.

14 External POS links

Contact your Point of Sale supplier for specific configuration for your tills. Contact Starfleet Software for configuration and documentation of the Starfleet software link to your Point of Sale.

15 Help

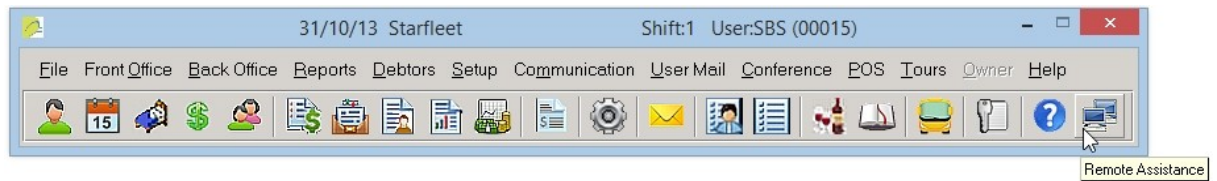
15.1 Help Topic

This is where the on line Manual is accessed.

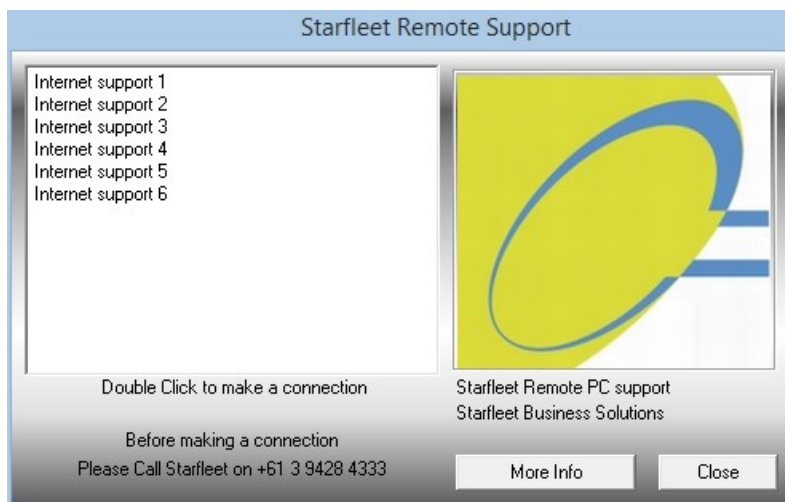
15.2 How To

A short presentation of most commonly used tasks of Starfleet.

15.3 Remote Assistance



If your property is on Software Support please contact Starfleet **BEFORE** attempting to remote connect. Click on Help in the Starfleet Menu, then Remote Assistance the following screen will display. Starfleet will advise you which Internet support number to double click on.



392

15.4 About Starfleet

Details about the software version.

16 Appendix A (Suggested Night Audit Procedures)

Click on the links below for more information.

- [Night Audit](#) 
- [Run Night Audit](#) 
- [Daily Backup](#) 
- [Night Audit Selected Reports](#) 
- [Screen Arrivals](#) 
- [Screen Departures](#) 
- [Print Booking List](#) 
- [Print In-House Guest List](#) 
- [Print Registration Slips](#) 
- [End of Day Procedure](#) 

16.1 End of Day Procedure

Please note this is only a sample end of day procedure check list. It is suggested that you change it for your specific requirements.

1. [Screen Arrivals](#) 
2. [Screen Departures](#)
3. [Print Booking List](#)
4. [Print In-House Guest List](#) 
5. [Backup](#)  This MUST be done.
6. [Night Audit](#)  The following reports can be printed.
 - Transaction List
 - Guest Account balances
 - Security Deposits
 - Arrivals for Next Day
 - Departures for Today
 - Housekeeping Report
 - Booking List
 - Daily Occupancy
 - Cancelled Reservations
 - Phone Calls
 - Daily Summary
 - Guest Notes
 - Notes for the day
 - Daily statistics
7. [Print Registration Slips](#) 

16.1.1 Night Audit

Night Audit is usually run **last** thing at night, although you can run it **first** thing in the morning if the property closes early and has no late arrivals.

Night Audit will automatically charge accommodation to all occupied rooms and produce a report detailing the room numbers, room rate charged and the current balance on these rooms. This will also change the system date to the next day and print the pre-selected reports. It will first show you a list of reports that you can alter (by ticking or un-ticking as required). A selection of Reports can also be set so these reports will automatically print with Night Audit. Select the reports in Setup -> System Configuration -> [Daily Update](#)^[205] -> **Day End** button to open the report selection.

NOTE: (1) If you have the PABX Link connected, any calls between midnight and when you run the Night Audit will be on yesterdays date, and (2) if you have POS then night audit should be run after the POS is finished for the night or before POS is started the next morning. All guests who have arrived **MUST** be checked in and all Guests who are departing **MUST** be checked out before you run Night Audit.

16.1.1.1 Run Night Audit

Back Office Menu -> Night Audit.

If you are ready to do a Night Audit, select Continue. You will be reminded to do the Daily Back Up. Select **OK**, Starfleet **AUTO BACK UP** Procedure will run. (**This is an internal backup done for rescue in case of emergency. Do not rely on this backup for your backup purposes**). Then select desired reports, and select **R**un Update. If there are guests who have not yet arrived, or guests who have not yet departed, an Arrivals / Departures report is displayed. Exit the report to correct any reservation before proceeding.

16.1.1.2 Daily Backup

Backup from the Starfleet Menu

To setup the Backup go to **F**ile -> **B**ackup. Enter the File/Folder to back up. Select the File to Backup to, or Browse. When entering the File to Back up to please ensure .zip is added on the end of the path or the backup will not run. Although there is an automatic backup run at Night Audit we do **not** recommend relying on this one alone for data backup. To ensure safe data backups we do recommend multiple manual backups to an external CD or USB device as instructed above. Ensure that you do a daily backup as applicable for your property. Refer to [Backup](#)^[14]

16.1.1.3 Night Audit Selected Reports

Night Audit brings up a list of user selectable reports. These are pre-defined by you or your manager in **Setup->System Configuration->**[Daily Update](#)^[205] -> **Day End**. You can tick or un-tick any of these as required in that night's Night Audit in particular and the next night's list will be unchanged.

- **Print Transaction Report**
Print a full daily transaction report (i.e. not a summary). This report will provide record of all transactions processed through the day as well as a summary of payments and revenue generated by each transaction code. Ensure transaction totals agree with restaurant charge dockets, bar dockets, mini bar dockets, etc.
- **Print Security (Advance) Deposit Report**
Print security deposit report as a permanent record of the current deposits held for Guests not yet arrived in the system.
- **Print Arrivals – (Not Yet Arrived)**
Print an arrivals report for the following day, and make specific room allocations if required.

- **Print Departures – (Not Yet Departed)**
Print a departures report for the following day. Check that folios are correct and all payment methods have correct authorization.
- **Print Housekeeping Report**
Print a housekeeping report in either room or alphabetical order for Housekeeping. On this report any special request for the following day. (e.g.: cot for room 210) will be listed.
- **Print Daily Occupancy Summary**
Print an occupancy report to provide a permanent record of the occupancy figures for your property.
- **Print Booking List**
Print a list of all Bookings made to review details.
- **Print Canceled Reservations**
Print a report of reservations canceled on the current date for review.
- **Print Phone Calls**
Print this report only if your PABX is connected to the motel system.
- **Print Daily summary**
Print the summary of the daily occupancy, revenue and receipts.
- **Print Guest Notes**
Print a report of Guest Notes which are to be printed as a reminder due today.

16.1.1.4 Screen Arrivals

Screen Arrivals Report for the current day and ensure there are no guaranteed or late arrivals which need to be checked in prior to posting room charges.

Reports Menu -> Reservation report.

Select Arrivals, Not yet arrived, All Guests, and Start Date and End Date as the current date.

16.1.1.5 Screen Departures

Screen Departures Report for the current day and ensure there are no remaining check outs. If there are, you need to extend or check the remaining rooms out prior to posting room charges.

Reports Menu -> Reservation Report

Select Departures, Not yet departed, All Guests and Start Date and End Date as the current date.

16.1.1.6 Print Booking List

Print a Booking List to provide a record of all reservations entered in the system today.

Reports Menu -> Reservation Report

Select Booking List and then Start Date and End Date as the current date.

16.1.1.7 Print In-House Guest List

Print an In-House guest list to provide a record of all guests in-house tonight.

Reports Menu -> Reservation Report

Select In House and then Start Date and End Date as the current date.

16.1.1.8 Print Registration Slips

Print Registration Slips for the arrival day. Ensure all arrivals have been allocated room numbers.

Front Office -> Reg Slip / Allocate Rooms -> Print Registration Slip.

Select the appropriate arrival date.

16.2 Quick Reference Guide

This documentation is only included as a 'Quick Reference'. For detailed explanation of the following topics, please refer to the User's Guide. Click on the following links for information.

[Front Office](#) ^[21]
[Guest Reservation - Quick](#) ^[30]
[Guest Information](#) ^[22]
[Advance Deposits](#) ^[36]
[Attach/Remove Group Booking](#) ^[38]
[Guest Confirmation Letter](#) ^[39]
[Guest Registration Slip](#) ^[42]
[Changing & Deleting a Guest Reservation](#) ^[43]
[Search for Existing Guest Details](#) ^[44]
[Guest Check In](#) ^[46]
[Guest Check Out](#) ^[48]
[Reinstate Checked In or Out Reservation](#) ^[50]
[Guest Account Invoice](#) ^[51]
[Guest Charges & Payments](#) ^[52]

16.2.1 Returning Guests

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**. Enter the first several characters of the Guest surname in the surname field. A list of similar names to select from will appear in the drop down field. Select the returning guest name. If not available this option can be turned on in **Set Up -> System Configuration -> Other -> Display name list on new accounts 'tick box'**.
2. **Alternatively**, if you have a Guest Information screen open, click on the search button next to the Account number box, and enter the first several characters of the Guest's name. Select the Guest from the search list. Refer to [Search for Existing Guest Details](#) ^[44]
3. When the guests name and information is displayed, select Book Room to create a reservation.
4. Enter the Guest's reservation details, then select Save.
5. If you have received a deposit, please refer to [Advance Deposits](#) ^[36]
6. **Alternatively**, go to **Front Office -> Room Allocation** and right click on the desired date / room number intersection and select Book room. Type in guest surname and select returning guest name from the list displayed. This new reservation will then be attached to the existing guest account.

Refer to: [Guest Information](#) ^[22]

16.2.2 New Reservation

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Select **New** to create a new account and then a reservation.
3. Enter the guests details beside each prompt, or **<Tab>** to leave fields blank.
4. Select **Book Room** to create a new booking.
5. Enter the Guest's reservation details, then select **Save**.
6. If you have received a deposit, please refer to [Advance Deposits](#) ³⁶
7. **Alternatively**, go to **Front office -> Room Allocation** and right click on the desired date / room number intersection and select Book Room.

Refer to: [Guest Reservation - Quick](#) ³⁰

16.2.3 Check In

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Key in the Guest's account number in Account, **<enter>**. Update any details if required.
3. Click on **Arrivals** button.
4. Select the relevant reservation if there is more than one.
5. If the correct room number is already allocated select **Check In**. If not allocate the room number then **Check In**.
6. If payment is received on arrival check the guest in and then post the amount as a Payment. (An Advance Deposit is paid to the guest account before Check In).
7. Alternatively go to Front Office -> Room Allocation and right click on the guest name arriving today then select Check In.

Refer to: [Guest Check In](#) ⁴⁶

16.2.4 Check Out

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Enter the Guest's room number in the 'Room' field and press **<enter>**. Alternatively, select the right or left arrows located to the right of the Room number, until the desired account is displayed.
3. Click on the **'Departures'** button.
4. Select the reservation, if more than one, to highlight it.
5. Select **'Transaction'** to process any charges or payments to that account (if applicable).
6. Select **'Guest Account'**, to print. (If required, select the appropriate transactions or folio).

7. Ask the guest to verify the charges on the account and make any necessary changes through Charges and Payments.
8. After posting the payment, reprint the account if required.
9. Select 'Check Out' to check the Guest out.
10. Alternatively, right click on the guest name in the Room Allocation screen. Select Check Out.

Refer to: [Guest Check Out](#) ⁴⁸

16.2.5 Security (Advance) Deposits

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Locate the Guest's account number, key it in to '**Account:**', then press <enter>. Update the Guest's details, if required.
3. Select '**C**harges/**P**mt'.
4. Select the reservation to process, by highlighting it (if it is not already highlighted).
5. Select '**T**ransaction' to process, and select the transaction type you use for Security deposits.
6. Key in the amount, and select '**A**pply'.
7. **Alternatively**, go to **Front Office -> Room Allocation** and right click on the desired guest and select **Charges/Payments**. Then select the transaction type you use for Advance Deposits and the payment type and amount and select '**A**pply'.

Refer to: [Advance Deposits](#) ³⁶

16.2.6 Charges

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Enter the Guest's room number beside the '**R**oom' prompt and <enter>. Alternatively, select the right or left arrows located to the right of the Room number, until the desired account is displayed. Or enter the Guest account number in the account field and <enter>.
3. Select the **Charges/Payment** button, highlight the reservation to process (if it is not already).
4. Select '**T**ransaction' to process, and select the transaction type you want to enter.
5. Select the folio (if it has not been set automatically in setup).
6. Key in the amount, and select '**A**pply'.
7. **Alternatively**, go to **Front Office -> Room Allocation** and right click on the desired guest and select payments. Then select the transaction type you wish to use, enter the amount and select '**A**pply'.

Refer to: [Guest Charges & Payments](#) ⁵²

16.2.7 Payments

1. Select menu item **Front Office -> Guest Information**.
2. Enter the Guest room number beside the 'Room' prompt and <enter>. Alternatively, select the right or left arrows located to the right of the Room number until the desired account is displayed. Or enter the Guest account number in the account field and <enter>.
3. Select the Charges/Payment button; highlight the reservation to process.
4. Select 'Payment' transaction to process, and select the transaction type you use for payment.
6. Key in the amount, and select 'Apply'.
7. **Alternatively**, go to Front Office -> Room Allocation and right click on the desired guest and select Charges/Payments. Then select the transaction type you wish to use. Enter the amount and select 'Apply'.

Refer to: [Guest Charges & Payments](#) ⁵²

16.2.8 Screen Color Legend



17 Troubleshooting

TROUBLESHOOTING	
Problem	Solution
1: Unable to Book Room - Room Type is Overbooked.	Use the Unallocated Booking Report to check if there is a reservation without a room number allocated. Allocate a room number or delete the reservation as required.
2: Room NOT AVAILABLE or ON MAINTENANCE when entering reservation.	When you are trying to enter a reservation a message pops up saying the room is on maintenance. Go to Setup -> Room. Find the room number; double click to open the information. Check the Status. Is it O-occupied or X-maintenance? These can be changed to the correct status by clicking on this field and changing to V (vacant). Now the booking can be entered and saved.
3: Reservation disappears from the screen when checked out.	This will happen when the Arrival & Departure dates are the same, effectively making this reservation a "Day Booking". (Day Bookings will show on the Room Allocation screen with a ~ before the name – until checked out. The number of nights will be 0 (zero). Find the Guest Account by using the Search option in Guest Info. Open the Reservation and if you need to re print an account this can still be done by going to Departures and selecting Guest Account. The reservation can then be 'checked back in' and extended if required (but only if there is not another booking in the way). The reservation may also have been checked out before Night Audit has been run for the end of the day.
4: Unable to find data path, check network.	This is a common error message you will get when logging into Starfleet on a network computer. This means that this computer is 'unable to find' the data folder on the server or 'main' computer. Sometimes Windows does not re-connect a previously configured network path (usually after a loss of power for example). Go to My Computer and see if there is a network path shown with a red cross against it. Double click on this to see if the path is restored. If this does not correct the situation, please refer to your IT department to check there is no problem with the network.
5: PABX not logging Phone calls.	Close the PABX link and restart. If this does not work then try rebooting the computer, always remember to check the PABX icon is visible in the lower right system tray. See also item 4 above. If this is not successful then please contact Starfleet. Note that if the problem is hardware or network related it's likely we won't be able to correct the problem.
6: Email MAPI error.	When installing Starfleet for the first time emailing of Confirmation letters or emailing Guest accounts might not work and return an error. If the email default settings are not set correctly, you will receive a "MAPI error" when you go to email a guest account or Conf letter out of Starfleet. You will need to make sure that default option for the email client you use is actually selected by going to Start Button -> Control Panel -> Default Programs -> Set your default

	program. Select the email client you are using and make sure all it's defaults are ticked. Note that this is in Windows 7 - for other versions of Windows this may be slightly different. If your computer is part of a domain, you might get a "MAPI error - Login invalid". If this is the case, your IT needs to make sure that the MAPI connection is actually pointing to your email program, and has permission to use this connection. Exit Starfleet and then log in back to apply the changes.
7: Back Up Errors	517 - Disk Full 503 - The zip file could not be opened or found. Tips: The path and filename provided to the ZipFilename property may be invalid. When trying to zip or update files in a zip file, this could mean that the zip file is already opened for reading or writing by another application. When unzipping files or listing the zip file's contents, this could mean the zip file is already opened by another application for writing.